

ENGLISH

FOR PREPARATORY SCHOOLS

20
26

الصف الثالث الإعدادي
الفصل الدراسي الأول



rd 3
PREP
FIRST TERM

دار غزة
للطباعة والنشر والتوزيع
ghazzahouse@gmail.com

• يقوم الطالب بتسميع المفردات بكتابة التسميع والواجب المنزلي



استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

identity = (ID) (n)	هوية شخصية	confidence (n)	ثقة بالنفس
personality (n)	شخصية	strengths (n)	نقاط قوة
power (n)	قوة/طاقة/قدرة	growth (n)	النمو
weakness (n)	نقطة ضعف	individuality (n)	فردية/ شخصية (تميز)
belief (n)	معتقد/اعتقاد	unique (adj)	لا مثيل/فريد
strength (n)	القوة/القدرة على التحمل	support (n) (v) (ed)	دعم/يدعم
self-discovery (n)	اكتشاف الذات	value (n) (v) (d)	قيمة/يقدر
self-respect (n)	احترام الذات		

Vocabulary



المفردات الإضافية

realness (n)	الواقعية	social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
certain way	أسلوب محدد/طريقة معينة	challenge (n)	تحدي
hard work	العمل الجاد/الشاق	experience (n)	تجربة
kindness (n)	الطيبة/اللطف	science fair	معرض العلوم
curiosity (n)	فضول/حب الاستطلاع	negative opinion	رأي سلبي
differences (n)	اختلافات	inspiring (adj)	ملهم/مشجع
character (n)	شخصية	patient (adj)	صبور
traditions (n)	تقليد/عرف	fixed (adj)	راسخ/ثابت
teen (n)	مراهق	encourage (v) (d)	يشجع
medicine (n)	طب	explore (v) (d)	يستكشف
heart surgeon	جراح قلب	shape (v) (ed)	يشكل/يكون
heart diseases	امراض القلب	believe (v) (ed)	يعتقد
heart problems	مشاكل في القلب	describe (v) (d)	يصف
quality (n)	سمة/صفة	influence (n) (v) (d)	يؤثر/تأثير
simple (adj)	بسيط (اجتماعيًا)	wonder (v) (ed)	يتعجب/يتساءل
popular (adj)	محبوب	celebrate (v) (d)	يحتفل
confident (adj)	واثق	remind (v) (ed)	يذكر
stressed (adj)	مضغوط نفسيًا - متوتر	mention (v) (ed)	يذكر/يشير إلى
strange (adj)	غريب		

Definitions

background (n)	نشأة إجتماعية	where someone comes from
identity (n)	هوية	who a person is
value (n)	يقدر كل التقدير	have a high opinion of someone or something
self-discovery (n)	اكتشاف الذات	learning more about who you are

Expressions & Prepositions

face a challenge	يواجه التحدي	remind myself	أذكر نفسي
solve problems	يحل مشكلات	grow into	يصير (تدريجياً) / ينضج إلى
save lives	ينقذ الارواح	stay in mind	يبقى عالق في الذهن
gain/build confidence	يكتسب/يعزز الثقة بالنفس	lead him to	يقوده إلى (مصدر)
fit in	ينسجم/يندمج/يتأقلم	believe in	يؤمن بـ
come from	يأتي من	realize my voice matters.	يدرك أهمية رأيي
shape character	يشكل الشخصية	die from	يموت من / بسبب
over time	مع مرور الوقت	beyond my looks	ما وراء مظهري أو الشكل الخارجي
15-year-old student	طالب عمره 15 عاماً		



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
personal	شخصي	individual		general	عام
stressed	مجهّد	worried / nervous		calm / relaxed	هادئ
popular	محبوب	well-known / liked		unpopular	غير محبوب
strange	غريب	unusual		familiar	مألوف
strength	قوة	power		weakness	ضعف (n)
kindness	الطيبة	goodness		cruelty	قسوة
value	يقدر	appreciate		neglect	يهمّل
support	يدعم	encourage		discourage	يثبط

Notes

- لاحظ الكلمات والعبارات المستخدمة في صيغة السؤال.
Synonym مرادف = The same meaning as = similar in meaning to
 = (be) replaced by = close in meaning to.
Antonym مضاد = opposite.

- لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية.

n = noun	→ اسم	v = verb	→ فعل
adj = adjective	→ صفة	adv = adverb	→ حال

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
dis-	تعطي العكس opposite	discovery
self	تضيف معنى الذات	self-respect
-ence	تحويل الصفة إلى اسم	confidence / difference
-ness	تحويل الصفة إلى اسم	kindness
-y	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	discovery
-th	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم، تعبر عن process	growth
-ing	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	listening
-ed	تحويل الفعل إلى صفة	fixed

Notes

- ملحوظة: غالباً ما يغير **Suffix** نوع ومعنى الكلمة الأصلية مثل:

sad (adj) حزين → **-ness** → sadness (n) حزن

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
think	يفكر	thought	thought
learn	يتعلم	learned/ learnt	learned/ learnt
know	يعرف	knew	known
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
find	يجد	found	found
grow into	يكبر	grew into	grown into
overcome	يتغلب	overcame	overcome



Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

① dress / wear / put on

• dress (it)

• يرتدى ملابس - فعل لازم لا يحتاج مفعول
(نوع ملابس)

Ex. I feel stressed from social media to change how I **dress**.

• put on (T)

• يرتدى / يلبس - فعل متعدي يحتاج مفعول
(نوع ملابس)

Ex. Akram **put on** his jacket and left quickly.

• wear (T)

• يرتدى - فعل متعدي يحتاج مفعول (نوع ملابس)
- تصف الشيء الذي ترتديه حالياً (ملابس، نظارة، ساعة...)

Ex. Amr is **wearing** a suit and tie now.

② experience / experience / experiment

• experience (n)

• خبرة في مجالات العمل (الطب / الهندسة)
اسم مفرد لا يعد

Ex. Do you have any **experience** in repairing computers?

• experience (v)

• يجرب / يشعر / يعاني

Ex. In Alexandria, we have the chance to **experience** life at sea.

• experiences (n)

• مواقف / تجارب حياتية (اسم يعد)

Ex. I had a bad **experience** with online shopping.

• experiment (n)

• تجربة علمية لإكتشاف وإثبات شيء

Ex. It's difficult to do **experiments** into how people learn languages.

③ gain / earn / win

• gain (v)

• يكتسب (شيء معنوي غالباً) (شيء نافع)
(love - experience - confidence - fame)

Ex. Reading books helped Habeeba **gain** confidence.

• earn (v) (money / a living)

• يكسب (مال / معيشة / قوت يومه)

Ex. Mr. Ahmed **earns** his living as an author and teacher.

• win (v)

(a match - a cup - a prize - a game - a competition)

Ex. Shimaa **won** a medal yesterday.

• يكسب / يفوز في لعبة

4 remind / remember:

• remember

• يتذكر من تلقاء نفسه، من ذاكرته، بدون مساعدة من أحد.

Ex. I **remember** my birthday.

• remind

• يذكر شخصاً آخر.

remind (شئ) to do (شئ)
remind (شئ) about/of (شئ)
remind (شخص) that (فاعل+فعل)

Ex. Please, **remind** me to take my keys.

5 character / personality / identity

• character

• الشخصية (السلوك الداخلي والأخلاق)

Ex. Shahd is honest and kind. She has a strong **character**.

• personality

• الشخصية (الأسلوب العام الظاهر في التعامل مع الناس)

Ex. His cheerful **personality** makes everyone feel comfortable.

• identity

• الهوية العميقة (الاسم/الوظيفة/الجنسية/الديانة/المعتقدات)

Ex. Culture and language are part of my **identity**.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Mesk always in front of the mirror.
a. wears b. puts on c. dresses d. gives
- He has ten years' teaching
a. experience b. experiences c. experiment d. expensive
- You need to more experience before you take your driving test.
a. win b. gain c. lose d. earn
- He the children to wash their hands.
a. remained b. reread c. remembered d. reminded
- Your name, language, and religion are part of your
a. identity b. personality c. character d. behavior

Reading

SB Page (14)

SB Page (14)

استمع إلى النصوص

Who I Am Beyond My Looks⁽¹⁾

At school, many students think they must look or act a **certain way**⁽²⁾ to **fit in**⁽³⁾. But I've learned that my **identity**⁽⁴⁾ isn't about what others see – it's about who I really am inside.

I'm Ahmed, 15 years old, and I live in Giza. My **background**⁽⁵⁾ is simple: I come from a family that values hard work and **kindness**⁽⁶⁾. These beliefs shape my **character**⁽⁷⁾ and help me know what's right. I may not be the loudest person in class, but I believe listening is one of my **strengths**⁽⁸⁾.



Sometimes, I feel **stressed**⁽⁹⁾ from social media to change how I act or dress. But I remind myself that being real is more important than being popular.

Through **self-discovery**⁽¹⁰⁾, I've found more confidence. I now know that being **unique**⁽¹¹⁾ doesn't mean being strange – it means being real. And with strength and **self-respect**⁽¹²⁾, I can grow into the person I want to be.

Reading Skill

ممارسة القراءة (الاجابة بالاسفل)

1. What is the main idea of the text?
2. According to the text, what is more important, being real or being popular?
3. Summarize the last paragraph in one sentence.

١. ما وراء مظهري / شكلي
٢. طريقة محددة
٣. ينسجم
٤. هوية
٥. خلفية إجتماعية
٦. اللطف
٧. شخصية
٨. نقاط القوة
٩. مضغوط / متوتر
١٠. اكتشاف الذات
١١. فريد
١٢. احترام الذات

Answers:

1. Personal identity.

2. Being real is more important.

3. Being myself gives me confidence and helps me grow.



Audio Script

SB Page (16)

" Self-discovery"

Host : Today, we're speaking with Leila, a 15-year-old student from Alexandria.

Leila has been on a journey of self-discovery – learning what **identity** ⁽¹⁾ means to her. Welcome, Leila!

Leila: Hi! I'm happy to **share** ⁽²⁾.

Host: So, how would you **describe** ⁽³⁾ your identity?

Leila: Well, I think identity is not just your name or where you're from – it's your **personality** , **values** , ⁽⁴⁾ and your **dreams** ⁽⁵⁾. I come from a big Egyptian family that values **traditions** , ⁽⁶⁾ but I also love reading, solving problems, and **volunteering** ⁽⁷⁾. That's part of who I am.

Host: Have your **beliefs** ⁽⁸⁾ changed over time?

Leila: Yes. When I was younger, I thought being quiet was a **weakness** ⁽⁹⁾ . But now I see it as a **strength** ⁽¹⁰⁾ – I'm a good listener and I think before I speak. That helps me build **confidence** ⁽¹¹⁾.

Host: What **influenced** ⁽¹²⁾ your **growth** ⁽¹³⁾ the most?

Leila: Honestly, my teachers. One encouraged me to enter a **science fair** ⁽¹⁴⁾, and that made me believe in my ideas. I **realized** ⁽¹⁵⁾ my voice matters.

Host: What does being real mean to you?

Leila: It means showing who I really am, even if I'm different. I've learned that **individuality** ⁽¹⁶⁾ is something to celebrate.

Host: Any advice for other **teens** ⁽¹⁷⁾ about exploring who they are?

Leila: Be **patient** ⁽¹⁸⁾ with yourself. Identity isn't fixed – it grows and your differences are your **power** ⁽¹⁹⁾ .

Host: Thank you, Leila. That was **inspiring** ⁽²⁰⁾.

١. الهوية
٢. يشارك
٣. يصف
٤. قيمك
٥. أحلامك
٦. التقاليد
٧. التطوع
٨. معتقدات
٩. نقطة ضعف
١٠. قوة
١١. الثقة
١٢. أثر
١٣. نموك
١٤. معرض العلوم
١٥. أدركت
١٦. التميز
١٧. مرافقين
١٨. صبور
١٩. قوتك
٢٠. ملهم



Audio Script

SB Page (16)

Dr. Magdi Yacoub was born in Egypt in 1935. When he was young, he enjoyed reading about science and **medicine** ⁽¹⁾. When his father's sister died from heart **disease**, ⁽²⁾ Magdi felt very sad. He began to **wonder** ⁽³⁾ how doctors could save people with heart problems.

This question stayed in his mind for years. He **decided** ⁽⁴⁾ to study medicine and learn everything about the heart.

His **search** ⁽⁵⁾ for answers led him to become a heart **surgeon** ⁽⁶⁾. By following his **curiosity**, ⁽⁷⁾ Magdi discovered his true **purpose** ⁽⁸⁾ to save lives.

His story shows that sometimes our goal comes from a question or a problem we want to solve.

١. الطب
٢. مرض
٣. يتساءل
٤. قرر
٥. بحث
٦. جراح
٧. شغف/حب المعرفة
٨. غرض/هدف

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

1. A/An _____ means where someone comes from.
a. underground b. background c. foreground d. ground
2. _____ means learning more about who you are.
a. Selfie b. Self-study c. Selfish d. Self-discovery
3. To _____ means to have a high opinion of someone or something.
a. value b. discourage c. explore d. remind
4. My background is simple. "Simple" here is similar in meaning to _____.
a. hard b. easy c. clear d. ordinary
5. My father was one of a kind. He was _____.
a. normal b. usual c. common d. unique

Synonyms and antonyms

6. His greatest strength is his ability to keep calm. "Strength" is opposite in meaning to _____.
a. power b. weakness c. stressed d. strong
7. "Strange" is similar in meaning to _____.
a. unusual b. usual c. normal d. familiar
8. The opposite of the word "kindness" is _____.
a. goodness b. gentleness c. cruelty d. helpfulness
9. I feel stressed from social media. The synonym of "stressed" is _____.
a. calm b. worried c. relaxed d. free

Prefixes and Suffixes

10. _____ is the noun from the adjective "strong".
 a. Width b. Height c. Strength d. Strongest
11. The prefix "_____" gives the opposite of the word "cover".
 a. dis- b. im- c. in- d. ir-
12. A good diet is very important for children's grow. To correct the underlined word we add the suffix _____.
 a. -ful b. -ed c. -th d. -y
13. The noun from the adjective "kind" is "_____".
 a. kindle b. kindness c. kindly d. unkind

Guess the meaning

14. So much homework usually makes students feel _____.
 a. relaxed b. free c. stressed d. happy
15. His _____ grew after he scored three goals in the final match.
 a. sadness b. growth c. confidence d. weakness
16. You need a lot of _____ to lift that box.
 a. sadness b. goodness c. kindness d. strength
17. People call him Zizo, but his _____ name is Abdel Aziz.
 a. fake b. real c. really d. wrong
18. The high cost is one of the sides of the project.
 a. good b. positive c. negative d. nice
19. Raghad's _____ is simple. She comes from a humble family.
 a. background b. backyard c. backward d. underground
20. Facebook and Instagram are forms of _____.
 a. books b. stories c. transport d. social media
21. When you value yourself and treat yourself with dignity, it is called _____.
 anger b. laziness c. fear d. self-respect
22. After spending time alone and thinking deeply, Kholod started a journey of _____.
 a. shopping b. laziness
 c. self-discovery d. fear
23. I value hard work. "Work" here is a/an _____.
 a. adjective b. verb c. adverb d. noun





Language

قواعد لغوية

The present perfect tense زمن المضارع التام

Form التكوين

Active مبنى للمعلوم

• يتكون زمن المضارع التام من:

I / We / You / They / اسم جمع	+ have ('ve)	+	p.p. التصريف الثالث للفعل
He / She / It / اسم مفرد	+ has ('s)	+	p.p. التصريف الثالث للفعل

Ex. They **have** ('ve) ridden a horse.

Ex. He **has** ('s) travelled by plane.

Negative النفي

• نفي زمن المضارع التام كالآتي:

I / We / You / They / اسم جمع	+ have not (haven't) / never + p.p.
He / She / It / اسم مفرد	+ has not (hasn't) / never + p.p.

Ex. I **have not** (haven't) played a musical instrument.

Ex. He **has never** driven a car.

Question السؤال

• السؤال بـ «هل»:

Have + (you / they / we / اسم جمع)	+ p.p. ...?
Has + (he / she / it / اسم مفرد)	+ p.p. ...?

Ex. **Have** you ever **been** to a football match?

Ex. **Has** she ever **ridden** a horse?

- Yes, she **has**.

للإجابة عن السؤال بـ «هل» تقول:

- No, she **hasn't**.

• السؤال بكلمة استفهام:

Have + (you / they / we / اسم جمع)	+ p.p. ...?	كلمة استفهام
Has + (he / she / it / اسم مفرد)	+ p.p. ...?	كلمة استفهام

Ex. A: **What have** you **read**?

B: **I've read** a story.

Passive مبنى للمجهول

• كيفية تغيير الجملة من المبني للمعلوم :

- ١ - المفعول به في جملة المعلوم يصبح الفاعل في جملة المجهول.
- ٢ - الفعل في جملة المعلوم يظل في نفس زمن الجملة الأصلية لكن يتغير إلى صيغة المجهول:
- ٣ - الفاعل في جملة المعلوم يصبح نائب الفاعل **agent** في جملة المجهول مسبقاً بـ **by** ويمكن أن يحذف:

	subject	verb	object
Active	Malak	has helped	me.
Passive	subject	verb	agent
	I	have been helped	(by Malak.)



الأفعال اللازمة (intransitive) لا تستخدم في المبني للمجهول.

Ex. Saleh **has gone** to France (intransitive verb).

Usage الاستخدام

• يستخدم المضارع التام في الحالات الآتية:

١- لوصف حدث تم في الماضي دون تحديد وقت حدوثه (تجارب حياتية في الماضي past experiences):

Ex. I **have visited** the zoo.

٢- للحديث عن أفعال بدأت في الماضي وما زالت مستمرة حتى الآن.

Ex. I **have lived** in Zagazig for 30 years.

٣- لوصف حدث تم في الماضي ولا يزال أثره موجود.

Ex. Ibrahim **has lost** his keys, so he can't open the door.

٤- لوصف حدث تم حديثاً «أي قبل قليل»

Ex. I **have just made** a cake.

• تأتي الكلمات الآتية عادة مع زمن المضارع التام:

- just	حالياً/تواً	- never	أبداً
- already	بالفعل	- for	لمدة
- yet	حتى الآن	- since	منذ
- lately	مؤخراً	- till now	حتى الآن
- recently	حديثاً	- so far	حتى الآن
- ever	سابقاً/من قبل		

just توا / حالا

• تدل على أن الحدث وقع منذ فترة قصيرة - وتستخدم مع الجمل المثبتة - وتوضع بعد الفعل المساعد **have / has** وقبل التصريف الثالث:

Ex. I **have just met** Ali at the supermarket.

• **just** تساوي **a short time / a moment ago** في المعنى ولكنهما يستخدمان مع زمن الماضي البسيط.

Ex. I **have just done** my homework = I **did** my homework a moment ago.

ever قبل / في أي وقت

١- تستخدم (**ever**) للسؤال عن الخبرات والتجارب السابقة.

Ex. Have **you ever met** an actor?

- توضع هنا بعد الفاعل وقبل التصريف الثالث.

٢- تستخدم (**ever**) بعد صيغة التفضيل.

Ex. Mona is the cleverest girl I **have ever known**.

٣- تستخدم (**ever**) بعد النفي (**haven't / hasn't**) للتأكيد ويمكن حذفها.

Ex. I **haven't (ever) seen** the Pyramids.

never أبدا / مطلقا

• تأتي في الجملة للدلالة على النفي - لا تأتي مع النفي.

Ex. I **have never spoken** Spanish.

• لنفي القيام بتجربة أو خبرة ما.

Ex. **A:** Have you **ever** been to Aswan? **B:** No, I **have never** been there.

Check up your understanding ✓

Complete the sentence with the correct form:

1. I (**has**) cleaned my room. It's clean now.
2. Why (**he has**) called the police?
3. I have (**ever**) played a musical instrument.
4. The park has (**visited**).

yet بعد / حتى الآن

١- تستخدم (**yet**) مع زمن المضارع التام في آخر الجملة المنفية:

Ex. Reem **hasn't** been to another country **yet**.

• الحدث لم يتم و لكن من المتوقع حدوثه قريباً.

٢- تستخدم (**yet**) في نهاية السؤال:

Ex. **Has** she learnt a musical instrument **yet**?

Unit 1 Personal Identity

already بالفعل

١- تستخدم (already) في الجملة المثبتة في آخر الجملة أو قبل الفعل الأساسي للجملة بمعنى مسبقاً / قبل الوقت المتوقع.

Ex. I have **already** done my homework.

Ex. Eman has written a book of stories **already**.

- في نهاية السؤال:

١- تستخدم (already) للتعبير عن التعجب والدهشة من سرعة إتمام الحدث قبل الوقت المتوقع.

Ex. Have you finished your homework **already**? -You are too fast!

٢- تستخدم (yet) للتعبير عن الضجر والضييق من التأخير تنفيذ شيء ما بعد الوقت المتوقع.

Ex. Have you finished your homework **yet**? -You are too slow!

Check up your understanding ✓

Complete the sentence with the correct form:

1. I haven't done my homework (just).

2. I have done my homework (yet).

3. Have you cleaned the room (ever)?

so far / till now حتى الآن

٢- تستخدم (so far / till now) في الأسئلة والجملة المثبتة:

Ex. I have written two stories **so far / till now**.

lately / recently حديثاً/ مؤخراً

١- تستخدم (lately / recently) في نهاية ووسط و أول الجملة المثبتة و المنفية و السؤال.

Ex. Has Ahmed scored goals **lately / recently**?

have / has been - have / has gone

١- لاحظ الفرق في الاستخدام بين التعبيرات التالية:

have / has been to	ذهب إلى مكان ثم عاد مرة أخرى
have / has gone to	ذهب إلى مكان ولم يعد بعد
have / has been in / at	موجود في مكان

• He **has been to** London. = (He went there and came back). ذهب إلى لندن وعاد

• He **has gone to** London. = (He is still in London). ذهب إلى لندن وما زال هناك

• He **has been in** Alexandria for 3 days. هو موجود الآن بالإسكندرية منذ ثلاثة أيام

• He **has been at** the stadium for five hours. هو موجود بالإستاد منذ خمس ساعات

٢- نسال بالصيغ السابقة مع **ever** كالتالي:

Ex. Have you **ever been to** a football match?

- Yes, I **have already been to** a football match.

ونجيب كالتالي:

- No, I **have never been to** a football match.

Check up ✓

Complete the sentence with the correct form:

1. I have drunk 3 cups of tea (now).
2. I have seen Hana (late).
3. He has (go) to London. He is still in London.

How long...? كم المدة.....؟

• نستخدم السؤال **How long....?** مع المضارع التام عندما نسأل عن أمر ما حدث في الماضي ومستمر حدوثه حتى الآن.

Ex. How long have you been married?

- I have been married **for ten years**.



- نسأل عن الماضي البسيط بـ **How long ago.....?**

Ex. How long ago did you join this club?

- I joined it **two years ago**.

- نستخدم **When** للسؤال عن الماضي البسيط ولا نستخدم المضارع التام.

Ex. When did you buy this car?

- I **bought** it two years ago.

Check up ✓

Complete the sentence with the correct form:

1. (How many) have you driven a car?
2. **A:** How long has Mahmoud had a mobile phone?
B: She has had a mobile phone (last) a year.

since / for لمدة / منذ

• يستخدم زمن المضارع التام مع **since** (ويأتي بعدها تعبير زمني يدل على توقيت بداية الحدث)

• وكذلك يستخدم مع **for** (ويأتي بعدها المدة الزمنية التي استغرقها الحدث حتى وقت الكلام):

Ex. I have lived in Tanta since 2010.

Ex. I have lived in Tanta for 12 years.

since	for
Friday - yesterday الأيام - أمس	a day - two days - a week - 3 weeks
August - 2010 الشهور - السنين	a month - two months - a year - 2 years
2 o'clock الساعات	an hour - four hours..... etc.
last (week - month - year...) السابق ...	the last (week - month - year.....)
..... he went	a short time - a long time
then منذ ذلك الحين	ages لمدة طويلة
winter فصول السنة	a century قرن
his birth / childhood منذ الميلاد/ الطفولة (حدث في الماضي)	three seasons ثلاث مواسم
the age of..... السن / العمر	
the 18 th century القرون	

يمكن أن يأتي بعد **since** جملة في زمن الماضي البسيط.

Ex. I **have lived** in the same house **since** I **was born**.

Ex. Your mum and dad **have lived** in that house **since** 2008.



- لاحظ التركيب:

ماضي بسيط + فاعل + **since** + مدة زمنية + **It's**

Ex. It's **a long time** **since** I **visited** my friend

- لاحظ المعنى الآخر للكلمة **because = since**

Ex. He didn't come **since** he was sleeping.

Check up ✓

Complete the sentence with the correct form:

- I have lived here (**for**) childhood.
- I have lived here (**since**) ages.

جزء لتدريب الطالب على حل سؤال Rewrite

1. Someone has broken into the house (been) .
 - من خلال الكلمة داخل الأقواس (been) يتضح أن المطلوب استخدام المبني للمجهول (has been broken)
 - لا تستخدم by لأن الفاعل (Someone)
- The house has been broken into .
2. Samira hasn't finished the projects yet. (haven't) .
 - الجملة في المبني للمعلوم في حالة النفي (hasn't finished)
 - مطلوب استخدام (haven't) فنبدأ بالمفعول كغائب فاعل (the projects) و تحول إلى مبني للمجهول باستخدام (hasn't been) .
- The projects haven't been finished (by Samira) yet.
3. Mai has just arrived home. (a moment ago) .
 - نلاحظ أن الجملة في زمن المضارع التام باستخدام كلمة (just) أما المطلوب هو استخدام (a moment ago) وهو ما يعنى التحويل إلى الماضي البسيط .
- Mai arrived home a moment ago.
4. Ibrahim has lived in Zagazig since 2010. (for) .
 - هنا المطلوب على الطالب إدراك الفرق بين استخدام (since) و (for) مع المضارع التام.
 مدة زمنية كاملة = for + بداية مدة الحدث + since
- Ibrahim has lived in Zagazig for 15 years.
5. No, Adham has never visited Aswan. (ever...?) .
 - هنا المطلوب من الطالب الفرق بين استخدام (ever) و (never) مع المضارع التام .
- Has Adham ever visited Aswan?

Exercises on Language

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB Exercises

1. I (finished) my homework already.
2. They have (never be) to Alexandria.
3. He (just leave) the room.
4. I (see) that movie yet.
5. My sister has (break) her phone again.
6. Have you (never) been to Aswan?
7. She (study) English since she was a child.
8. I've spoken English (in) 1992.
9. She (has supported) by her friends.
10. My car (repaired) lately.

Bit by Bit Exercises

11. The reports (been written).
12. Oh! I (break) my mobile. What can I do?
13. He is not hungry since he (eat) a big lunch.
14. (She has) done her home work yet?
15. (She has) done her homework yet.
16. I haven't used my camera since I (be) in Aswan.
17. I haven't seen the new film (just).
18. I've (yet) moved house twice this year.
19. Mona isn't at home. I think she has (been) shopping.
20. No, I have (ever) been to a football match.
21. **A:** Have you sent the letters? **B:** Yes, I (have sent) it yesterday.
22. It's the most exciting match I have (never) seen.
23. Dahab has been a popular destination (on) the 1960s.
24. (When) I started my job; I have worked with hundreds of computers.

2 Rewrite the following using the words in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. Have you bought the book? (been)
2. Mahmoud hasn't sent the letters yet. (have)
3. Mr. Ahmed has worked as a teacher for 15 years (since)
4. How long have you lived in Aswan? (How long ago)
5. My Mom cleaned the room a short time ago. (just)
6. Ezzat went to France in 2020. Now he lives there. (has been)
7. It began to rain three hours ago. (for)
8. I last ate fish when I was in Alex. (since)

Speaking

Ask and answer questions about Your Personality.

• إسال و جواب الأسئلة عن شخصيتك.

Question	Answer
1. What qualities make you a good person? ما هي الصفات التي تجعلك شخصا جيدا؟	1. I'm honest, kind to others, and always try to help أنا صادق و لطيف مع الآخرين، ودائما أحاول المساعدة
2. What three words describe your personality? ما الثلاث كلمات التي تصف شخصيتك؟	2. Confident, friendly, and hard working واثق، ودود، ومجتهد
3. How do you show kindness to others? كيف تظهر اللطف تجاه الآخرين؟	3. I listen to people, support them and speak politely. استمع للناس، أساندهم واتكلم بآداب
4. Do you think personality is more important than appearance and why? هل تعتقد أن الشخصية أهم من المظهر ولماذا؟	4. Yes, because personality shows who you really are inside. نعم، لأن الشخصية تظهر من أنت حقاً من الداخل.

General Exercises



on Lessons 1 & 2

1 Complete the following dialog:

Two friends are talking about personality.

Mai : Hi, Aya! Can I ask you some questions?

Aya : ①

Mai : ② ?

Aya : I think being kind, helpful, and honest make you a good person.

Mai : Nice! And how would you describe your own personality?

Aya : I'm friendly, calm, and I like helping others.

Mai : ③ ?

Aya : Yes, your personality is more important than your appearance.

Mai : ④ How do you show your good personality at school?

Aya : ⑤

Mai : Thank you for your time.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

inside - gained - identity - confidence - has gained - outside

Mr. Ahmed asked his students about experiences that helped shape their characters. Zeyad ① knowledge since he decided to start reading books. Ali's ② has grown since he scored three goals in the final match. Moustafa has learned that his ③ isn't about what others see – It's about who he really is on the ④

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- People usually those who do something useful like scientists. **SB**
 a. discourage b. value c. hate d. miss
- Your differences are your
 a. powder b. flour c. power d. flower
- I may not be the loudest person, but I believe listening is one of my **SB**
 a. story b. strange c. length d. strengths
- My parents always encourage me. This means they me.
 a. kill b. force c. support d. stop
- The car is for your "personal" use only. "Personal" here means
 a. public b. individual c. common d. general
- My children always dress quickly. The word "dress" here is a/an
 a. verb b. noun c. adverb d. adjective
- Reading, writing, listen, and speaking are skills. Add the correct suffix to correct the underlined word.
 a. -er b. -ing c. -ed d. -ly
- Self means learning more about who you are.
 a. discover b. invite c. discovery d. cover

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- The movie (watched) already. **SB**
- Lunch (hasn't cooked) yet. **SB**
- She (just finish) her work. **SB**
- He has never (saw) snow. **SB**

5. The pyramids have (visited)
6. I haven't met the manager (just). I will met him soon.
7. Amazing! Have you done your homework (yet)?

5 Find the mistake and correct it:

1. The house has painted recently. (.....)
2. Have you been drawn this picture? (.....)
3. Where has Omar go? (.....)
4. The dishes haven't been washed already. (.....)
5. I lose my pen. Can you lend me yours? (.....)

6 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Your personal identity"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

- What makes you unique as a person?

- Is identity any about how you look?

- جمل تساعدك في كتابة الفقرة:

- Identity is not only your name, but also your values.

- Shape your personal identity.



استمع إلى المفردات

المفردات الإضافية

Key Vocabulary

strong (adj)	قوي	worth (adj)	جدير بالاهتمام/ يستحق العناية
confident (adj)	واثق	adjust (v) (ed)	يعدّل / يضبط
curious (adj)	فضولي / يحب الاستطلاع	strength (n)	قوة / مصدر قوة
honest (adj)	أمين / صادق	values (n)	قيم
depressing (adj)	محزن / لا يدعو للتفاؤل	honesty (n)	صدق / أمانة
proud (adj)	فخور	mirror moment	لحظة المرأة (لحظة اكتشاف الذات / مواجهة النفس)

Vocabulary



المفردات الإضافية

beauty (n)	الجمال	concrete (n)	أسمنت / خرسانة
identity map (n)	خريطة تحديد الهوية	hand-drawn (adj)	مرسوم يدوياً
challenge (n)	تحدي	creative (adj)	مبدع
colorful posters (n)	ملصقات ملونة	gray (adj)	رمادي (كثيب / عديم الحياة)
portrait (n)	لوحة/صورة لوجه انسان	mind (n)	عقل / ذهن
row (n)	صف	student (n)	طالب
thumbs-up (n)	إعجاب / موافقة (برفع الإبهام)	unlike (prep)	بخلاف / على عكس
outgoing (adj)	اجتماعي / منفتح	benefit (n)	فائدة / منفعة
perfect (adj)	مثالي	confused (adj)	مرتبك
preparatory school	مدرسة إعدادي	introduce (v) (d)	يقدم
assignment (n)	واجب / تكليف	include (v) (d)	يشمل / يتضمن
Grade 9	الصف الثالث الإعدادي	create (v) (d)	يخلق / يبنئ
blazer (n)	سترة/جاكيت	panic (v) (ked)	يصاب بهلع مفاجئ
curls (n)	خصلات شعر مجعدة	click (v) (ed)	يدرك فجأة / ينفتح في الذهن فجأة
comfort (n)	الراحة	notice (v) (d)	يلاحظ
sketchbook (n)	دفتر الرسم	seem (v) (ed)	يبدو
playground (n)	ملعب / فناء	imagine (v) (d)	يتخيل
fake (adj)	مزيف	care (v) (d)	يهتم / يكثرث



Definitions

curious (adj) فضولي	interested in discovering new things	١. مبادئ ٢. يرشد/يقود ٣. قدرات ٤. صفات ٥. مجهود ٦. نجاح ٧. يقول الحقيقة
values (n) قيم	the beliefs and principles ⁽¹⁾ that guide ⁽²⁾ how we live	
adjust (v) يعدل/يضبط	changing something a little to make it better	
confident (adj) واثق	feeling sure about your abilities ⁽³⁾ , qualities ⁽⁴⁾ , or decisions	
worth it (adj) جدير بالعناء/الاهتمام	good enough to deserve the time, effort ⁽⁵⁾ , or money	
proud (adj) فخور	feeling good about success ⁽⁶⁾	
depressing (adj) محزن	something that makes you feel sad	
honest (adj) أمين	always telling the truth ⁽⁷⁾	

Expressions & Prepositions

on the first day	في اليوم الأول	go through	يتصفح سريعاً/يقبّل
in front of	أمام	look surprised	يبدو مندهش
for the fifth time	للمرة الخامسة	adjust to (sth)	يتأقلم مع/يتعود على
feel too big	يبدو وانه أكبر من اللازم	stand before	يقف أمام
sit right	مرتّب/بشكل صحيح	a way to	طريقة لـ
stand out	يبرز/يتميز	in mind all day	عالق في الذهن طول اليوم
keep to herself	تميل للعزلة (تعتزل عن نفسها)	bring the school together	لتجميع المدرسة معاً/توحيد أفراد المدرسة
give a thumbs-up	يرفع إبهامه/يُعَبّر عن الإعجاب	show honesty	يظهر الأمانة
blend into the background	تجلس في خلفية الفصل منعزلة عن الجميع	look around	ينظر حول (مكان)



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلّمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
adjust	يعدل	change		disarrange	يبعثّر
outgoing	اجتماعي	sociable		shy	خجول
panicked	خائف	frightened		relaxed	هادئ
creative	خيالي / مبدع	imaginative		unimaginative	غير مبدع
gray	كئيب	dull / lifeless		colorful	زاهي الألوان
honest	أمين	fair / just		dishonest	غير أمين

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
un-	تعطي معنى العكس	unlike
-ful	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	colorful
-ed	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	surprised
-ive	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	creative

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
stand	يقف	stood	stood
begin	يبدأ	began	begun
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
throw	يرمي	threw	thrown
keep	يحافظ	kept	kept
show	يوضح	showed	shown

Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 the + صفة

- يمكن وضع (the) مع بعض الصفات لتشير إلى اسم جمع بوجه عام + فعل جمع:

poor → the poor (الفقراء) = poor people

rich → the rich (الأغنياء) = rich people

Ex. We should help the poor.

2 proud (adj) فخور

proud of + (ing-فعل / شيء / شخص)

Ex. They are very proud of their parents.

proud to + (inf. مصدر)

Ex. I am proud to be a teacher.

proud that + (فاعل + فعل)

Ex. Eman was proud that her son had talents.

3 imagine تخيل

imagine + (شخص/شيء) + v-ing

Ex. She **imagined** students being proud of the place.

4 maybe / may be

maybe (adv)

كلمة واحدة بمعنى: (ربما/قد)
- تأتي عادة في بداية أو وسط الجملة للتعبير عن
الاحتمال:

Ex. **Maybe** it will rain tomorrow.

may be (adv)

كلمتين بمعنى: (قد يكون/ربما يكون)
- يأتي بعدها اسم/صفة:

Ex. Omnia **may be** tired after the trip.

5 shy / ashamed

shy (adj)

خجول بطبيعته (صفة الحياء)/ قليل التحدث مع الآخرين

Ex. He is **shy** and doesn't like speaking in public.

ashamed (adj)

شعور بالخجل والعار على فعل شيء قمت به (سيئ)

Ex. She felt **ashamed** for lying to her friend.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. should be encouraged to follow their dreams.

- a. The young b. Young people c. a and b d. The younger

2. Mohammed is proud winning the competition.

- a. to b. of c. in d. at

3. Mai imagined her friends lunch among flowers.

- a. eat b. ate c. to eating d. eating

4. we can meet for lunch next week.

- a. May be b. Maybe c. a and b d. May

5. She felt after breaking her mother's vase.

- a. shy b. ashamed c. happy d. excited



استمع إلى النصوص

Read the following text. What does Leila think about Nour's portraits?



SB Page (18)

The Mirror Moment

On the first day of Grade 9, Nour stood in front of the mirror, **adjusting**⁽¹⁾ her blazer for the fifth time. Her curls didn't **sit right**⁽²⁾, and her glasses felt too big. "Why can't I just fit in?" she thought.

At school, Nour stayed quiet, **blending into the background**⁽³⁾. Unlike the **confident**⁽⁴⁾, **outgoing**⁽⁵⁾ students around her, she kept to herself, finding comfort only in her sketchbook. She loved drawing faces-not perfect ones, but real ones. She saw **beauty**⁽⁶⁾ where others didn't.

Then one day, Ms. Hanan introduced a project: "Create your **Identity Map**⁽⁷⁾. Show us who you are - your dreams, **values**⁽⁸⁾, and challenges."

Nour panicked. "Who am I?"

That night, **going through**⁽⁹⁾ her old sketches, something clicked. She began drawing again - this time, herself. The following week, while others shared colorful posters, Nour stood before the class with a board of **hand-drawn**⁽¹⁰⁾ portraits. At the center: her own face, glasses and curls included. Around it, she wrote: Strong. Creative. **Curious**⁽¹¹⁾.

When she finished, the class clapped. Even Leila, the girl in the front row, gave her a **thumbs-up**⁽¹²⁾.

After class, Ms. Hanan said, "You didn't just share who you are - you showed us that being different is your **strength**⁽¹³⁾." And Nour believed her.

١. التعديل
٢. بشكل مرتب
٣. منعزلة في آخر
- الفصل
٤. واثق
٥. اجتماعي
٦. جمال
٧. خريطة تحدد الهوية
٨. قيم
٩. يفتش/ يقلب
١٠. مرسوم يدوي
١١. فضولي
١٢. علامة الإعجاب
١٣. قوة/ ميزة



Zeina was a new student at a preparatory school. She was always **curious**⁽¹⁾ and liked to **notice**⁽²⁾ everything around her. On her first day, she looked around the school playground. It was large but empty and **gray**⁽³⁾. The ground was all **concrete**⁽⁴⁾, and there were just a few old benches. Students threw their **trash**⁽⁵⁾ on the ground, and no one seemed to care.

"This place could be so much better," Zeina thought. She had an idea, but she didn't know if anyone would listen to a new student.

At lunch, she sat with her new friend Nancy, who was kind and always **honest**⁽⁶⁾ about how she felt.

"I don't like this area," Nancy said. "It's a little depressing."

"What if we changed it?" Zeina asked. "What if we planted a garden?"

Nancy looked **surprised**⁽⁷⁾.

"A garden? Do you know how to grow plants?"

"Not really," Zeina said, showing honesty. "But I want to learn. We could learn together."

The idea stayed in Zeina's mind all day.

She **imagined**⁽⁸⁾ students eating lunch among flowers, plants, and maybe even vegetables. She imagined students being proud of the place.

She knew the idea wasn't easy. It would need time, hard work, help, and even money maybe. But something inside her said it was **worth it**⁽⁹⁾.

Maybe, just maybe, this garden could be more than just a place. It could be a way to **bring the school**⁽¹⁰⁾ together.



١. فضولي
٢. تلاحظ
٣. كئيب
٤. خرسانة
٥. قمامة
٦. أمين
٧. مندهش
٨. يتخيل
٩. مستحق العناية
١٠. يوحد كل أفراد الأسرة

1 Answer the following questions:

SB questions

1. Why did Zeina feel sad when she saw the playground?
 ا. لماذا شعرت زينة بالحزن عندما رأت الملعب؟
 - Zeina felt sad when she saw the playground because it was empty and gray.
 - شعرت زينة بالحزن عندما رأت الملعب لأنه كان فارغًا وكئيب.
2. What idea did Zeina have?
 ٢. ما الفكرة التي خطرت ببال زينة؟
 - Zeina's idea was to plant a garden in the playground.
 - كانت فكرة زينة زراعة حديقة في الملعب.
3. Why wasn't Zeina sure anyone would listen to her?
 ٣. لماذا لم تكن زينة متأكدة من أن أحدًا سيستمع إليها؟
 - Because she was a new student at the school.
 - لأنها كانت طالبة جديدة في المدرسة.
4. What did Nancy think of the garden idea?
 ٤. ما رأي نانسي في فكرة الحديقة؟
 - Nancy was surprised and asked Zeina if she knew how to grow plants.
 - فوجئت نانسي وسألت زينة إن كانت تعرف كيف تزرع النباتات.
5. How did Zeina show honesty?
 ٥. كيف أظهرت زينة أمانتها؟
 - When she admitted to Nancy that she didn't really know how to grow plants.
 - عندما اعترفت لنانسي بأنها لا تعرف حقًا كيف تزرع النباتات.
6. What are some small actions students can take to improve their school environment?
 ٦. ما هي بعض الإجراءات الصغيرة التي يمكن للطلاب القيام بها لتحسين بيئتهم المدرسية؟
 - Students can take several small actions to improve their school environment, such as:
 • Picking up trash and using trash cans and recycling bins.
 • Organizing a cleanup day for the school grounds.
 • Encouraging others to take care of the school.
 • Starting a club focused on making the school more beautiful and clean.
 - يمكن للطلاب القيام بعدة إجراءات صغيرة لتحسين بيئتهم المدرسية، مثل:
 • جمع القمامة واستخدام صناديق القمامة وصناديق إعادة التدوير.
 • تنظيم يوم تنظيف لساحة المدرسة.
 • تشجيع الآخرين على الاهتمام بالمدرسة.
 • إنشاء نادي يُعنى بجعل المدرسة أكثر جمالًا ونظافة.

Critical thinking questions

7. Why do you think Zeina wanted to improve the playground?

١- لماذا ابرايك ارادت زينة تحسين الملعب؟

- Because it was empty and dull. She wished to make it more beautiful and enjoyable.

- لأنه كان فارغاً وباهتاً. أرادت أن تجعله أكثر جمالاً وممتعاً.

8. How can small ideas, like planting a garden, lead to bigger changes in a community?

٢- كيف يمكن لأفكار صغيرة، مثل زراعة حديقة، أن تحدث تغييرات أكبر في المجتمع؟

- Small ideas like planting a garden can inspire people, create teamwork, and gradually transform the community into a better place.

- أفكار صغيرة مثل زراعة حديقة يُمكن أن تُلهم الناس، وتعزز روح العمل الجماعي، وتُحوّل المجتمع تدريجياً إلى مكان أفضل.

Bit by Bit questions

1. How was the playground when Zeina saw it on her first day?

١- كيف كانت حالة الفناء عندما رأت زينة أول يوم في المدرسة؟

- It was large but empty and gray.

- الفناء كان كبير المساحة لكن خال وعديم الروح وكئيّب.

2. What was Zeina like?

٢- كيف كانت شخصية زينة؟

- She was curious and observant. She noticed details around her.

- كانت فضولية ومنتبهة لكل شيء حولها. لاحظت التفاصيل.

3. What did Zeina imagine?

٣- ماذا تخيلت زينة؟

- She imagined students eating lunch among flowers, plants, and maybe even vegetables.

- تخيلت الطلاب يتناولون الغذاء بين الزهور والنباتات أو ربما حتى الخضروات.

4. Describe Zeina's first impressions of the school playground?

٤- صف انطباعات زينة الأولى عن فناء المدرسة؟

- Zeina thought the playground was boring and not fun.

- زينة وجدت الفناء ممل وغير ممتع.

5. What are some possible benefits, besides improving the playground, that planting a garden could bring to the school community.

٥- ماهي الفوائد المحتملة بالإضافة إلى تحسين الفناء، التي يمكن أن تجلبها زراعة الحديقة لمجتمع المدرسة؟

- It can teach students responsibility, teamwork, and care for the environment.

- يمكن أن يعلم الطلاب المسؤولية والعمل الجماعي والعناية بالبيئة.

Exercises on lessons 3&4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

1. The mean the beliefs and principles that guide how we live.
a. vans b. values c. talents d. benefits
2. means feeling sure about your abilities and decisions.
a. Shy b. Nervous c. Confident d. Curious
3. means to be interested in discovering new things.
a. Curious b. Confident c. Ashamed d. Talented
4. To means to change something a little to make it better.
a. adapt b. awake c. advert d. adjust
5. means something that makes you feel sad.
a. Dressing b. Pressing c. Depressing d. Losing
6. To be is when you always tell the truth.
a. horse b. honest c. hour d. shy
7. means feeling good about success.
a. Brain b. Bride c. Proud d. Poor

Synonyms and antonyms

8. Hana is always outgoing. The opposite of the word "outgoing" is
a. ashamed b. shy c. sociable d. rich
9. The synonym of "fit in" is
a. stand out b. stand up c. blend in d. take out
10. I panicked when I saw smoke come from the kitchen. The antonym of "panicked" here is
a. relaxed b. scared c. frightened d. feared
11. Adjust and change are
a. opposites b. antonyms c. synonyms d. adverbs
12. "Creative" is similar in meaning to
a. unimaginative b. dull c. uninspired d. imaginative
13. Confident and insecure are
a. synonyms b. similar c. antonyms d. the same

Prefixes and suffixes

14. I am like my brother. To get the opposite of the word "like" here you can add the prefix "_____".
 a. dis- b. un- c. in- d. im-
15. To change the word "color" into an adjective we add the suffix "_____".
 a. -ly b. -er c. -ful d. -ence
16. The view of the playground was depress. To correct the word "depress" we add _____.
 a. -ing b. -er c. -ness d. -able
17. To change the word "create" into an adjective we omit "e" and add _____.
 a. -ful b. -ly c. -ence d. -ive
18. Shahd panicked when she saw the dog. The word "panicked" here is a / an _____.
 a. adverb b. verb c. adjective d. noun.

Guess the meaning

19. The child was _____ about how the toys work.
 a. interesting b. curious c. asleep d. awake
20. After failing the exam, she stayed _____ and studied harder.
 a. indifferent b. weak c. strong d. happy
21. It took me a while to _____ to the new school.
 a. imagine b. compare c. seem d. adjust
22. Climbing the mountain was hard, but the view at the top was _____ it.
 a. north b. wealth c. worth d. health
23. Mona showed great _____ in overcoming her fears.
 a. weakness b. width c. length d. strength
24. _____ is telling the truth and not lying.
 a. Honesty b. Negative c. Cheating d. Stealing

1 Finish the following dialog:

Two friends are talking about a school project.

Jana : Why do you look so upset?

Malak : It's this playground; it just looks gray.

Jana : Oh! ①

Malak : We could make it so much better!

Jana : Really! ②

Malak : We can paint the pavement and plant some trees.

Jana : That's sounds amazing! Can I help?

Malak : ③

Jana : How about telling all our friends and teachers?

Malak : ④

Jana : So when do we start?

Malak : ⑤ _ It'll be our big project!

Jana : The mid-year holiday will be perfect time.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

decorates - posters - notice - decorated - depressing - colorful

Zeina was a new student at our school. She liked to ① everything around her. The classroom was gray and ② No one seemed to care. She decided to make ③ and add colors. Our teachers thanked her, and she was very proud. The classroom has looked cheerful since she ④ it.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- She studied every night for the exam, and her high grade made it
a. useless b. in vain c. boring d. worth
- After winning the competition, Samira felt very of herself.
a. proud b. angry c. shy d. sad
- The art gallery was full of beautiful of famous people.
a. mountains b. portraits c. schools d. parks

4. Shaimaa is tough, which means she is and can adapt well to challenging situations.
 a. tired b. weak c. strong d. lazy
5. The new student is, but her sister is very shy.
 a. bold b. tall c. happy d. outgoing
6. To make the word "comfort" an adjective we add the suffix "....."
 a. -able b. -ful c. -er d. -ment
7. The means the beliefs and principles that guide how we live.
 a. planes b. veins c. values d. trees
8. When Mr. Ahmed liked my project, he gave me a
 a. make-up b. thumbs-up c. get up d. look up

4 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Your identity map"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

- What makes someone real or fake?

- What makes you unique?

- جمل تساعدك في كتابة الفقرة:

- It's Important for me to fit in.

- I'm proud of my skills and talents.



استمع إلى المفردات
المفردات الإضافية

Key Vocabulary

self-respect (n)	احترام الذات	supportive (adj)	داعم / مساند
fairness (n)	عدل / إنصاف	confident (adj)	واثق
strength (n)	قوة / صلابة	notice (v) (d)	يلاحظ / يدرك
honesty (n)	الأمانة		

Vocabulary



المفردات الإضافية

personal identity	هوية شخصية	kindness (n)	اللطيف / الطيبه
challenges (n)	تحديات / صعوبات	self-discovery (n)	اكتشاف الذات
understanding (n)	إدراك / فهم	responsibility (n)	المسؤولية
eye contact	التواصل البصري	classmate (n)	زميل الدراسة / العمل
body language	لغة الجسد	actions (n)	الأفعال
weaknesses (n)	نقاط ضعف	daily choices	الاختيارات اليومية
advice (n)	نصيحة	task (n)	مهمة / وظيفة
respect (n) (v) (ed)	احترام / يحترم	people's lives (n)	حيوات الناس
trust (n) (v) (ed)	ثقة / يثق	value (n) (v) (ed)	قيمة / يقدر
special (adj)	خاص / مميز	change (n) (v) (d)	تغيير / يغير
positive (adj)	إيجابي	accept (v) (ed)	يتقبل
true (adj)	حقيقي	face (v) (d)	يواجه
accepted (adj)	مقبول	support (v) (ed)	يدعم
caring (adj)	مهتم / عطوف	copy (v) (ied)	ينسخ / يقلد
absent (adj)	غائب	complete (v) (d)	يكمل / ينهي
brave (adj)	شجاع	exactly (adv)	تمامًا / بالضبط
super = very (adv)	جداً / للغاية	improve (v) (d)	يطور / يحسن

Expressions & Prepositions

face challenges	يواجه التحديات	stand for	يرمز / يمثل / يؤيد
in (their) own way	بطريقته / أسلوبهم الخاص	have a talk	يتحدث
go through a lot of self-discovery	يمر بالكثير من اكتشاف الذات	focus on	يركز
make changes	يجري تغييرات	work on	يعمل على تطوير
act with	يتصرف وفقاً	build trust	يبني الثقة
know how to	يعرف كيف	share notes with	يشارك الملاحظات مع
in your opinion	في رأيك	make a difference	يحدث فرقاً



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
positive	إيجابي	optimistic / hopeful		negative	سلبى
supportive	داعم	caring / helpful		discouraging	محبط
notice	يدرك / يلاحظ	observe		ignore	يتجاهل
accept	يقبل / يوافق	agree		refuse	يرفض
teach	يُدرس	educate		learn	يتعلم

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-y	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	discovery
-ive	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	supportive
-al	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	personal
-ness	تحول الصفة إلى اسم	kindness / fairness
-ence	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	difference
-ly	تحول الصفة إلى حال	exactly

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
show	يُظهر	showed	shown
teach	يُعَلِّم / يُدَرِّس	taught	taught
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
build	يبني	built	built

Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 everyone

- يُعتبر من الضمائر الغير محددة التي يأتي بعدها فعل مفرد لكن يعوض عنها بضمير جمع.

Ex. Everyone is special in their own way.

2 also / too

- الكلمتان بمعنى أيضًا، والفرق الوحيد بينهما هو مكان استخدامهما في الجملة.

• also

أيضًا

- تستخدم also بعد الفعل المساعد وقبل الأفعال الرئيسية أو في بداية الجملة.

Ex. I have also started to feel more confident.

• too

أيضًا

- في الغالب تستخدم too في نهاية الجملة.

Ex. I think I need to work on my self-discovery too.



Linking Words

- Linking words are words that connect sentences. أدوات الربط هي كلمات تربط بين الجمل.

"And"

- تستخدم للإضافة وتربط بين عناصر أو جمل متشابهة.

- We painted the wall and (we) planted trees.

"Because"

سبب + because + نتيجة

- تستخدم لتوضيح السبب. يأتي بعدها جملة كاملة (فاعل + فعل).

- We stayed inside because it was raining.

- لاحظ الفرق مع (because of) حيث يأتي بعدها اسم.

- We stayed inside because of the rain.

"So"

سبب + so + نتيجة

- تستخدم لتوضيح النتيجة.

- It was late, so we went home.

"Also"

- تستخدم كظرف إضافة:

1- الموقع الأوسط (الأكثر شيوعًا):

- بعد (verb to be).

- بعد الفعل المساعد.

- قبل الفعل الرئيسي.

2- بداية الجملة (للتأكيد).

- Islam is also ready.

- They can also help.

- We also need posters.

- Also, we should ask Mr. Ahmed.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Everyone was happy. ----- were playing tennis.
a. He b. She c. It d. They
2. Hana not only sings; she ----- plays the piano.
a. too b. also c. as well d. but
3. We visited the park ----- played football.
a. and b. also c. so d. because
4. Remas stayed home ----- it was raining.
a. and b. also c. so d. because
5. Abdullah was hungry, ----- he made a sandwich.
a. and b. also c. so d. because
6. Ganat is kind. She is ----- very helpful.
a. and b. also c. so d. because

Reading SB Page (22)

SB Page (22)

Respecting Personal Identity

Hala : Hi Omar! Have you ever learned about **personal identity**⁽¹⁾?

Omar : Yes, I have. I've learned that everyone is different and **special**⁽²⁾ in their **own way**⁽³⁾.

Hala : That's right! I've gone through a lot of **self-discovery**⁽⁴⁾ this year. It has helped me feel more **confident**⁽⁵⁾.

Omar : That's great! I've also started to feel more confident. I think my **self-respect**⁽⁶⁾ has improved because I've learned to accept myself.

Hala : Me too. And **I've noticed**⁽⁷⁾ that people who have faced **challenges**⁽⁸⁾ in a positive way have shown a lot of **strength**⁽⁹⁾.

Omar : Yes, and many students have been helped by teachers who **support**⁽¹⁰⁾ them. A lot of good changes have been made in our school.

١. الهوية الشخصية
٢. مميز
٣. بطريقته الخاصة
٤. اكتشاف الذات
٥. واثق
٦. احترام الذات
٧. لاحظت
٨. تحديات
٩. قوة
١٠. يساعد

استمع إلى النصوص



Hala : I agree. I've also seen how important it is to **act with honesty**⁽¹¹⁾. When someone has stayed true to who they are, people respect them.

١١. تتصرف بأمانة
١٢. تجارب حياتية
١٣. تنمو الثقة
١٤. مساند

Omar : That's true. Respecting personal identity means understanding that we all have different **experiences**⁽¹²⁾.

Hala : Exactly! When people feel accepted, their **confidence grows**⁽¹³⁾. That's why it's important to always be kind and **supportive**⁽¹⁴⁾.



SB Page (23)

Student A: Hi! You look happy today.

Student B: Yes! I've learned something new about myself.

Student A: That's cool! What did you learn?

Student B: I've learned that I know how to be different and strong.

Student A: That's great. You've shown a lot of strength.

Student B: Thank you! I feel more confident now.

Student A: I can see that. You always have good self-respect.

Student B: And I always try to act with honesty.

Student A: That's really important. I'm super happy for you!



SB Page (23)

Mariam : Hi Salma! You look really happy today.

Salma : Hi! Yes, I had a great talk with my teacher yesterday.

Mariam : Oh wow! What did you talk about?

Salma : She helped me understand what personal identity means.

Mariam : Personal identity! That sounds interesting. What did you learn?

Salma : I learned that it's okay to be different. Everyone is different in their own way.

Mariam : True. My teacher said that being proud of who you are is a big part of your identity.

Salma : Exactly! Being yourself is more important than trying to copy others.

Mariam : What else did the teacher say?

Salma : Yes. She said I should focus on my strengths and accept my weaknesses.

Mariam : That's good advice. I think I need to work on my self-respect, too.



SB Page (24)

What I Stand For

Topic Sentence

I **stand for**⁽¹⁾ kindness, honesty, and **responsibility**⁽²⁾, and these **values**⁽³⁾ have **shaped**⁽⁴⁾ my personal identity.

Explanation

I believe that showing respect and being **caring**⁽⁵⁾ have helped me **build trust**⁽⁶⁾ with others. These **actions**⁽⁷⁾ have also shown that I **value fairness**⁽⁸⁾ in my daily choices.

Evidence / Example

For example, I have helped my **classmates**⁽⁹⁾ with their work, and I have shared my notes with friends who have been **absent**⁽¹⁰⁾. I have been trusted by my teachers because I have always completed my tasks **honestly**⁽¹¹⁾. Many experiences have taught me that being **brave**⁽¹²⁾ and kind can make a difference in people's lives.

Ending Sentence

These actions and choices have been important in my life, and they have shown that **kindness**⁽¹³⁾ and honesty are strong parts of my identity.

١. ادعم
٢. المسؤولية
٣. القيم
٤. شكلت
٥. مراعاة / مهتم
٦. بناء الثقة
٧. الافعال
٨. أقدر العدل
٩. زملاء الفصل
١٠. غائب
١١. بأمانة
١٢. شجاع
١٣. الطيبة



Speaking skills

Stimuli and response about friendly phrases

السؤال والإجابة عن العبارات الودية.

- When you're talking with friends, use friendly phrases:

- عندما تتحدث مع أصدقائك، استخدم عبارات ودودة.

Stimuli

Honesty and respect shape our personal identity.

الأمانة والالتزام يشكلون هويتنا الشخصية.

I have just created my own identity map.

لقد أنشأت للتو خريطة لهويتي الخاصة بي.

I try to be honest and fair with everyone.

أحاول أن أكون أميناً وعادلاً مع الكل.

Helping people makes me feel proud of my identity.

مساعدة الناس تجعلني أشعر بالفخر تجاه شخصيتي.

Response

That makes sense!

هذا منطقي.

That is cool!

هزار رائع!

I can see that!

أرى ذلك!

I am super happy for you.

أنا مسرور جداً لأجلك.

Writing skill

Before you write:

١. استخدم زمن المضارع التام في المبني للمعلوم لوصف الاحداث والخبرات التي شكلت هويتك الشخصية.

Ex. I have helped many people.

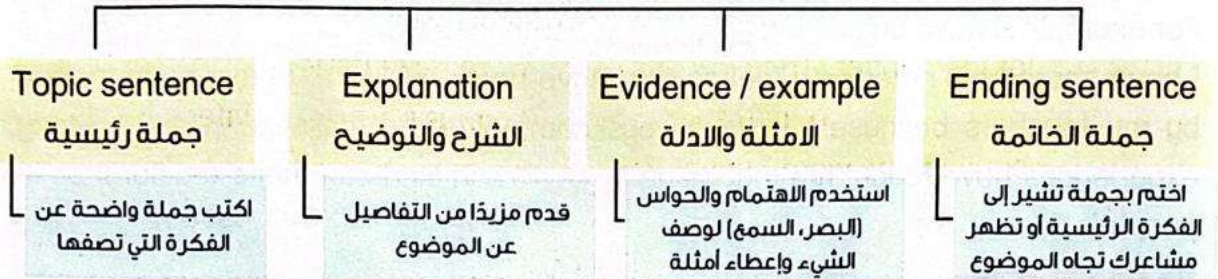
٢. استخدم زمن المضارع التام في المبني للمجهول لوصف الاحداث التي تعرض لها الشخص.

Ex. I have been trusted by my friends.

٣. استخدم كلمات الربط لربط الافكار:

(and, because, so, also)

الفقرة الوصفية Descriptive Paragraph



لاحظ الفرق بين الفقرتين

• أولاً: فقرة عادية إخبارية (بدون وصف دقيق) كلمات واضحة، لكن بدون مشاعر.

I had a problem in school last week. I didn't understand the science lesson. The teacher explained it, but I still couldn't answer the questions. I didn't study well at home. In the exam, I didn't do well. I felt bad. After that, I decided to study more. My teacher helped me, and now I understand better. It was a hard time, but I learned that I must work harder in school.

• ثانياً: فقرة وصفية (غنية بالتفاصيل والمشاعر) لتجعل القارئ قادر على التخيل.

Last week, I sat in class feeling lost as a fish out of water. The teacher's words sounded like another language. My heart beat like a drum, my hands were as cold as ice. The book looked at me with a face full of questions. In the exam, my pen felt heavy, and the clock ran faster than usual. After that, I talked to my teacher. He smiled and explained it again. Now I feel stronger.

Exercises on lessons 5&6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary

1. After many failures, Mahmoud stood up again and tried harder. This shows

a. laziness

b. fear

c. strength

d. weakness

2. My best friend always listens to me and helps when I have problems. She is very _____.
a. rude b. supportive c. selfish d. unkind
3. Truth and _____ are important when teachers deal with students..
a. sadness b. laziness c. fairness d. anger
4. She was so focused on her work that she didn't _____ the time passing.
a. forget b. miss c. ignore d. notice
5. Having high _____ helps students feel more confident and successful.
a. self-respect b. homework c. playground d. classroom
6. Raghad felt _____ before giving her class a presentation. She did a great job.
a. bad b. hungry c. tired d. confident

Synonyms and antonyms

7. He accepted the offer. The opposite of the word "accept" is _____.
a. agree b. nod c. refuse d. infer
8. The synonym of the word "teach" is _____.
a. learn b. educate c. make d. escape
9. She is supportive. The opposite of the word "supportive" is _____.
a. helpful b. caring c. encouraging d. discouraging
10. "Notice" and "ignore" are _____.
a. similar b. antonyms c. the same d. adjective

Prefixes and suffixes

11. The prefix "dis" in discover means _____.
a. full of b. after c. not d. one
12. To make the adjective "kind" into a noun we add the suffix _____.
a. -ly b. -er c. -ing d. -ness
13. We add the suffix "_____ " to change the verb "discover" into a noun.
a. -y b. -ful c. -ly d. -ment
14. When we add the suffix "-ence" to the verb "differ", it changes into a/an _____.
a. adjective b. noun c. adverb d. pronoun

Guess the meaning

15. He stands for honesty and kindness. This means he _____ honesty and kindness.
a. dislikes b. supports c. hates d. refuses
16. He always sits next to me at the desk. He is my _____.
a. enemy b. manager c. classmate d. principal
17. I should focus on my strengths and accept my _____.
a. powers b. weaknesses c. sickness d. kindness



1 Finish the following dialog:

Two friends are talking about self-discovery.

Jana : Hi, Mirna! You look happy today.

Mirna : ①

Jana : ②?

Mirna : I have learned how to be different and strong.

Jana : ③?

Mirna : I mean I can face challenges in a positive way.

Jana : That's cool! Can you help me to be the same?

Mirna : ④ I have a book about self-discovery.

Jana : That's interesting! Can I borrow it?

Mirna : ⑤

Jana : Thank you very much!

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. To get the opposite of the verb "cover" we add the prefix

- a. un- b. dis- c. a and b d. im

2. His friends were very when his father died.

- a. shy b. supportive c. lazy d. weak

3. Respecting personal identity means that we all have different experiences. **SB**

- a. ignoring b. refusing c. calling d. understanding

4. Being yourself is more important than trying to others. **SB**

- a. book b. copy c. paste d. kill

5. Kindness and honesty have my personal identity.

- a. washed b. killed c. chopped d. shaped

6. Mr. Ahmed makes me love English very much, which makes a/an in my exam grades.

- a. importance b. appearance c. difference d. failure

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. He is smart. He is _____ (and) hardworking.
2. She was tired, _____ (because) she went to bed early.
3. I stayed home _____ (so) of the heavy rain.
4. I like apples _____ (but) I like bananas.

4 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"The values that are important to you"

Blank lined paper with horizontal ruling lines.

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What do you stand for?
- What do you believe in?
- Why are values important?

- جمل تساعدك في كتابة الفقرة:

- have shaped my personal identity.
- are strong parts of my identity.

Review on Unit 1

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

personality (n)	شخصية	fairness (n)	عدل/إنصاف
identity = (ID) (n)	هوية شخصية	confidence	ثقة بالنفس
power (n)	قوة/طاقة/قدرة	strenghts (n)	نقاط قوة
weakness (n)	نقطة ضعف	growth (n)	النمو
belief (n)	معتقد/اعتقاد	individuality (n)	فردية/شخصية (تميز)
strength (n)	القوة/القدرة على التحمل	unique (adj)	لا مثيل/فريد
self-discovery (n)	اكتشاف الذات	support (n) (v) (ed)	دعم/يدعم
self-respect (n)	احترام الذات	value (n) (v) (d)	قيمة/يقدر كل التقدير
strong (adj)	قوي	worth (adj)	جدير بالاهتمام/ يستحق العناء
confident (adj)	واثق	adjust (v) (ed)	يعذل/يضبط
curious (adj)	فضولي/ يحب الاستطلاع	honesty (n)	صدق/أمانة
honest (adj)	أمين/صادق	mirror moment	لحظة المرآة (لحظة اكتشاف الذات/ مواجهة النفس)
depressing (adj)	محزن/لا يدعو للتفاؤل		
proud (adj)	فخور	supportive (adj)	داعم/مساند
self-respect (n)	احترام الذات	notice (v) (d)	يلاحظ/يدرك



Language

قواعد لغوية

The present perfect tense زمن المضارع التام

Form التكوين

Active مبنى للمعلوم

• يتكون زمن المضارع التام من:

I / We / You / They / اسم جمع	+ have ('ve)	+	p.p. التصريف الثالث للفعل
He / She / It / اسم مفرد	+ has ('s)	+	p.p. التصريف الثالث للفعل

Ex. They have ('ve) ridden a horse.

Ex. He has ('s) travelled by plane.

Negative النفي

• نفي زمن المضارع التام كالآتي:

I / We / You / They / اسم جمع	+ have not (haven't) / never	+ p.p.
He / She / It / اسم مفرد	+ has not (hasn't) / never	+ p.p.

Ex. I have not (haven't) played a musical instrument.

Ex. He has never driven a car.

Question السؤال

• السؤال بـ «هل»:

Have + (you / they / we / اسم جمع)	+ p.p. ...?
Has + (he / she / it / اسم مفرد)	+ p.p. ...?

Ex. Have you ever been to a football match?

Ex. Has she ever ridden a horse?

- No, she hasn't.

- Yes, she has.

للإجابة عن السؤال بـ «هل» تقول:

• السؤال بكلمة استفهام:

Have + (you / they / we / اسم جمع)	+ كلمة استفهام	+ p.p. ...?
Has + (he / she / it / اسم مفرد)	+ كلمة استفهام	+ p.p. ...?

Ex. A: What have you read?

B: I've read a story.

Unit 1 Personal Identity

Passive مبنى للمجهول

• كيفية تغيير الجملة من المبني للمعلوم :

١ - المفعول به في جملة المعلوم يصبح الفاعل في جملة المجهول.

٢ - الفعل في جملة المعلوم يظل في نفس زمن الجملة الأصلية لكن يتغير إلى صيغة المجهول:

٣ - الفاعل في جملة المعلوم يصبح نائب فاعل **agent** في جملة المجهول مسبقاً بـ **by** ويمكن أن يحذف:

Active	subject	verb	object
	Malak	has helped	me.
Passive	subject	verb	agent
	I	have been helped	(by Malak.)

Usage الاستخدام

• يستخدم المضارع التام في الحالات الآتية:

١- لوصف حدث تم في الماضي دون تحديد وقت حدوثه (تجارب حياتية في الماضي past experiences):

Ex. I **have visited** the zoo.

٢- للحديث عن أفعال بدأت في الماضي و ما زالت مستمرة حتى الآن.

Ex. I **have lived** in Zagazig for 30 years.

٣- لوصف حدث تم في الماضي ولا يزال أثره موجود.

Ex. Ibrahim **has lost** his keys, so he can't open the door.

٤- لوصف حدث تم حديثاً «أى قبل قليل»

Ex. I **have just made** a cake.

• تأتي الكلمات الآتية عادة مع زمن المضارع التام:

- just	حالا / توأ	- never	أبداً
- already	بالفعل	- for	لمدة
- yet	حتى الآن	- since	منذ
- lately	مؤخراً	- till now	حتى الآن
- recently	حديثاً	- so far	حتى الآن
- ever	سابقاً / من قبل		

How long...? كم المدة.....؟

• نستخدم السؤال **How long....?** مع المضارع التام عندما نسأل عن أمر ما حدث في الماضي ومستمر حدوثه حتى الآن.

Ex. **How long have you been married?**

- I have been married **for ten years.**



- نسال عن الماضي البسيط بـ **How long ago.....?**

Ex. How long ago **did** you **join** this club?

- I joined it **two years ago**.

- نستخدم **When** للسؤال عن الماضي البسيط ولا نستخدم المضارع التام.

Ex. **When** did you **buy** this car?

- I **bought** it two years ago.

لمدة / منذ **since** / **for**

• يستخدم زمن المضارع التام مع **since** (ويأتي بعدها تعبير زماني يدل على توقيت بداية الحدث)

• وكذلك يستخدم مع **for** (ويأتي بعدها المدة الزمنية التي استغرقها الحدث حتى وقت الكلام):

Ex. I **have lived** in Tanta **since** 2010.

Ex. I **have lived** in Tanta **for** 12 years.

Speaking

Ask and answer questions about Your Personality.

• إسال و جاوب الأسئلة عن شخصيتك.

Question

1. What qualities make you a good person?

ما هي الصفات التي تجعلك شخصا جيدا؟

2. What three words describe your personality?

ما هي الكلمات التي تصف شخصيتك؟

3. How do you show kindness to others?

كيف تظهر اللطف تجاه الآخرين؟

4. Do you think personality is more important than appearance and why?

هل تعتقد أن الشخصية أهم من المظهر ولماذا؟

Answer

1. I'm honest, kind to others, and always try to help

أنا صادق و لطيف مع الآخرين، ودائما أحاول المساعدة

2. Confident, friendly, and hard working

واثق، ودود، ومجتهد

3. I listen to people, support them and speak politely.

أستمع للناس، أساند هم وأتكلم بأدب

4. Yes, because personality shows who you really are inside.

نعم، لأن الشخصية تظهر من أنت حقاً من الداخل.

Paragraphs & Emails

فقرات إنشائية وإرسال بريد إلكتروني عن موضوعات هويتك الشخصية

Lessons 1 & 2

My personal identity shows me who I am. It includes my name, my family, and the values I believe in. I am honest and respectful, and I always try to help others. My hobbies, like reading and playing football, also shape my identity. These things make me unique and special among my friends.

Lessons 3 & 4

My identity map shows the important parts of my life. It includes my family, my friends, and my school. I am proud of my culture and the values I follow, like honesty and kindness. Since I was young, I have learned that respecting others is part of my identity. My dreams for the future, like being a doctor, also shape my identity. All these things together make my identity special.

Lessons 5 & 6

The values that are important to me guide my life every day. I believe honesty helps people trust each other. Kindness makes the world a better place, and respect keeps strong relationships. These values also give me confidence to face challenges. When I follow them, I feel proud of myself and I can make a difference in my community.

Al-Azhar Test

I am a student in grade nine. I like reading stories and playing football with my friends. I am kind and respectful to others. Sometimes I feel shy, but I am also confident when I try new things.

Test on Unit 1

I stand for kindness, honesty, and responsibility, and these values have shaped my personal identity. I believe that showing respect and being caring have helped me build trust with others. These actions have also shown that I value fairness in my daily choices.

For example, I have helped my classmates with their work, and I have shared my notes with friends who have been absent.

These actions and choices have been important in my life, and they have shown that kindness and honesty are strong parts of my identity.

Al Azhar

Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Mai is happy about her talk with her teacher

Salma : Hi Salma! You look really happy today.

Mai : Hi Mai! Yes, I had a great talk with my teacher.

Salma : ① ?

Mai : ②

Salma : Personal identity! ③ ?

Mai : I learned that it's Okay to be different.

Salma : True. Everyone is different in their own way.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

outgoing - discovered - for - kindness - since

my cousin was born in a small village in Zagazig. He has liked being alone
① he was a young child. His parents ② that he didn't enjoy being
with people. He isn't ③ or sociable. There are some values he should
learn, such as ④, strength and honesty.

3 Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

We were having lunch. The food smelled good and tasted fantastic. There were also sweets to eat in the end. My four-year old sister was sitting next to mum. Mum wanted to help her but she wanted to depend on herself. Suddenly, a small cat came into the room. We didn't know how it came in. It jumped up into the table near my sister who was frightened and dropped the jug of water. The jug broke and the water ran and wet our clothes. But the cat didn't care. It strangely took part in the meal. Mum stood up and gave it some food to eat. Then, the cat went away and we put our things right.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What was the meal like?

.....

2. Where did the little girl sit?

.....

3. Why did the mother sit next to her daughter?

.....

Unit 1 Personal Identity

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "herself" refers to the
a. meat b. cat c. mother d. little sister
5. The writer's sister was
a. three b. four c. five d. six

4 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. A journalist needs to be to look for new news.
a. lazy b. kind c. curious d. identity
2. Sama's helps her overcome different situations.
a. weakness b. curious c. strength d. popular
3. Kindness and honesty have my personal identity.
a. shaped b. chopped c. killed d. deleted
4. I for kindness and honesty.
a. make b. eat c. stand d. look
5. Being a talented programmer, Haneen soon became..... in the world of digital technology.
a. self-esteem b. unpopular c. unknown d. popular

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. They (just finish) the science project.
2. We (live) in this city since 2017.
3. Has she (start) her new job yet?
4. The car (repair) already.

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Who I am"

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

.....

.....

.....

Test on Unit 1

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Two friends are playing a guessing game.

Akram : Do you have some free time?

Amr : Yes, I do.

Akram : ①

Amr : Great! That sounds fun. What does he or she do?

Akram : He is a famous doctor.

Amr : Interesting! ②

Akram : He was born in Bilbis.

Amr : And. ③

Akram : He was born in 1935.

Amr : Do you think he is a surgeon?

Akram : ④ You are getting closer!

Amr : Oh, then it must be Dr. Magdi Yacoub!

Akram : ⑤ You are very smart!

2 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

When - Since - died - problems - history - science

Dr. Magdi Yacoub was born in Egypt in 1935. ① he was young, he enjoyed reading about ② and medicine. When his father's sister ③ from heart disease, Magdi felt very sad. He began to wonder how doctors could save people with heart ④

3 Read the following text then answer the questions:

Once upon a time, there was a boy who became bored while he was watching the village sheep on the hillside. To get some fun, he shouted, "Wolf! Wolf! It is chasing the sheep. When the village people came quickly to help him, they found no wolf and the boy laughed at them. They advised him not to do that again.

But later, there was a real wolf which came to attack the sheep. When the boy screamed for help, nobody went to help him. The sheep were eaten. When he asked them why they didn't come for help. They told him "Nobody believes a liar."

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea of the passage is that

a. We shouldn't lie.

b. It's no problem to lie.

c. We should have fun.

d. How to look after sheep?

2. In the end, the sheep

a. were returned safely

b. were sold

c. were eaten by the wolf

d. grew in number

B. Answer the following questions

3. What do you think of the boy?

4. Summarize the last paragraph in one sentence of your own words.

5. Why do you think the village people didn't go to help the boy the second time?

6. What does the underlined word "him" refer to?

4 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

- _____ is the noun from the adjective "strong".
a. Strength b. Stranger c. Strongly d. Strengthen
- It's important to be always kind and _____.
a. ugly b. selfish c. supportive d. negative
- To get the noun of the word "confident", we add the suffix _____.
a. -ty b. -ment c. -ence d. -y
- The antonym of "respect" is _____.
a. esteem b. support c. help d. disrespect
- My manager asked me to finish what he said. This means he asked me to complete the _____.
a. tasks b. desks c. benches d. seats
- To form an adjective from the verb "support" we add the suffix _____.
a. -er b. -ly c. -ing d. -ive

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- Jana _____ (not see) that movie yet.
- Have you ever _____ (ride) a horse?
- The homework _____ (do) yet.
- Have you finished your lunch _____ (just)? You are fast!
- Habiba and Shahd _____ (go) to the market. You can join them there.

6 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

(مجاوب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"The values you stand for"

• يقوم الطالب بتسميع المفردات بكتابة التسميع والواجب المنزلي



استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

communicate (v-d)	يتواصل	bond (n)	رابطة
communication (n)	تواصل	relationship (n)	علاقة
miscommunication (n)	سوء اتصال	close (adj)	قريب
siblings (n)	إشقاء	texting (n)	إرسال الرسائل النصية
connection (n)	اتصال	resolve (v-d)	يحل / يسوي
misunderstand (v)	يسيء فهم	create (v-d)	يخلق / يبنئ
respectful (adj)	محترم	affect (v-ed)	يؤثر على
supportive (adj)	مساند / داعم	include (v-d)	يشتمل على

Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

tone (n)	نبرة الصوت	serious (adj)	جاد / خطير
voice (n)	صوت بشري	conflict (n)	صراع / خلاف
facial expression (n)	تعبير الوجه	trust (n)	ثقة
body language (n)	لغة الجسد	forgive (v)	يسامح
simple (adj)	بسيط	thoughtful (adj)	مراعٍ لشعور الآخرين
smile (n)	ابتسامة	daily (adv)	يوميًا
text message (n)	رسالة نصية	submit (v-ed)	يقدم
honest (adj)	أمين / مخلص	support (v-ed)	يساعد / يدعم / يساند
distance (n)	مسافة / بعد	strengthen (v-ed)	يقوي
stressed (adj)	متوتر	care (v-d)	يهتم
upset (adj)	مكتئب	solve (v-d)	يحل
member (n)	عضو	ignore (v-d)	يتجاهل
calm (adj)	هادئ	argue (v-d)	يجادل
meaningful (adj)	ذو معنى	avoid (v-ed)	يتجنب

Definitions

misunderstanding (n)	سوء فهم	failure to understand correctly
connection (n)	اتصال	a relationship or link between people
bond (n)	رابطة	a strong connection between people
siblings (n)	أشقاء	brothers and sisters
respectful (adj)	محترم للآخرين	showing care and regard for others
supportive (adj)	مساند	giving help or encouragement
communicate (v)	يتواصل	to share thoughts, feelings or ideas
resolve (v)	يحل	to find a solution to a problem

Expressions & Prepositions

make time for	يجد وقت لـ	feel heard and respected	يشعر أنه مسموع و محترم
in person	شخصيا		
stay in touch	يبقى على اتصال	move forward	يتحرك للأمام
lead to	يؤدي الى	to sum up	باختصار
point of view	وجهة نظر	face-to-face	وجها لوجه
build trust	يبنى ثقة	car ride	جولة بالسيارة

Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
forward	للأمام	ahead		backward	للخلف
connection	اتصال	link		disconnection	انقطاع الاتصال
upset	منزعج	bothered		pleased	مسرور
honest	أمين	sincere		dishonest	غير أمين
calm	هادئ	quiet		noisy	صاخب
late	متأخر	delayed		early	مبكر
serious	خطير	dangerous		unserious	غير خطير

Unit 2 Communication with Family and Friends

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-mis	تحول الاسم أو الفعل الى عكسه	misunderstand miscommunication
-ful	تحول الاسم أو الفعل الى صفة	respectful
ly	تحول الصفة الى حال	polite ^{ly}

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
lead	يقود	led	led
build	يبنى	built	built
show	يوضح/ يظهر	showed	shown

Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 every day / everyday

• every day

كل يوم (ظرف يأتي في أول الجملة أو آخرها)

Ex. We don't go school **every day**.

Ex. **Every day**, Heba helps her mom with the housework.

• everyday

يومي (صفة تأتي فقط قبل الاسم الموصوف)

Ex. The book is written in a simple **everyday** language.

2 rule / role

• rule

قاعدة/ قانون

Ex. Do you know the **rules** of the game?

• role

دور

Ex. Mothers play an important **role** in our success.

3 safe / save

• safe

امان/ خزنة

Ex. It isn't **safe** to play with a knife.

• save

ينقذ/ يوفر

Ex. The fisherman jumped in the water and **saved** the child.

Ex. We **save** money to buy a present for our mom.

4) another / other / others

• **another** آخر (يأتي بعدها اسم مفرد)

Ex. Is there **another** train to Aswan?

• **other**

آخر (يأتي بعدها اسم مفرد أو اسم جمع)

Ex. I can't find my **other** shoe.

Ex. Have you any **other** questions?

• **Others = other + plural noun** آخرون (لا يأتي بعدها اسم)

Ex. Some people like tea. **Others** (**other people**) like coffee.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. They are discussing the problems of _____ life
 a. everything b. everyday c. every day d. everyone
2. You should know the _____ of the game first.
 a. roles b. rolls c. rulers d. rules
3. Do you want _____ cup of coffee?
 a. another b. else c. others d. other
4. Is it _____ for children to play here?
 a. save b. safe c. safely d. safety

Reading

SB Page (28)

استمع إلى النصوص

Read the following text. How can we create stronger relationships?



SB Page (28)

Good **communication**⁽¹⁾ is the key to strong **relationships**⁽²⁾. Whether it's with your parents, **siblings**⁽³⁾, or friends, the way you talk and listen **affects**⁽⁴⁾ your **connection**⁽⁵⁾ with others. Communication isn't only about words - it **includes**⁽⁶⁾ your **tone of voice**⁽⁷⁾, **facial expressions**⁽⁸⁾, and **body language**⁽⁹⁾. Even a simple smile or a text message can show someone you **care**⁽¹⁰⁾.

In today's fast world, many young people find it hard to **make time**⁽¹¹⁾ for **meaningful conversations**⁽¹²⁾. Social media and **texting**⁽¹³⁾ make it easy to **stay in touch**⁽¹⁴⁾, but sometimes messages are **misunderstood**⁽¹⁵⁾. **Miscommunication**⁽¹⁶⁾ can lead to **conflict**⁽¹⁷⁾ or **distance**⁽¹⁸⁾ between people.

Having open and **respectful**⁽¹⁹⁾ conversations helps to solve problems and build trust. If you're feeling **stressed**⁽²⁰⁾ or upset, talking to a friend or a family member can help. It's important



to listen carefully and try to understand the other person's **point of view**⁽²¹⁾. Being honest and **supportive**⁽²²⁾ also helps to strengthen the **bond**⁽²³⁾ between people.

Sometimes, conflicts happen even **in close**⁽²⁴⁾ relationships. The best way to **resolve**⁽²⁵⁾ them is through calm, honest discussion. When people feel heard and respected, they are more likely to **forgive**⁽²⁶⁾ and move forward. Communication is not just about speaking - it's about listening and caring, too.

To **sum up**⁽²⁷⁾, strong communication creates stronger relationships. Taking time to connect with others through kind words, active listening, and **thoughtful**⁽²⁸⁾ messages helps you feel closer and more supported in your daily life.

١. تواصل
٢. علاقات
٣. أشقاء
٤. يؤثر على
٥. اتصال
٦. يشتمل على
٧. نبرة صوت
٨. تعبيرات الوجه
٩. لغة الجسد
١٠. تهتم
١١. يوفر وقت
١٢. محادثات ذات معنى
١٣. الرسائل النصية
١٤. يبقى على اتصال
١٥. يساء فهمها
١٦. سوء الفهم
١٧. خلاف
١٨. البعد
١٩. محترم
٢٠. متوتر
٢١. وجهة نظر
٢٢. مساعد
٢٣. الرابطة
٢٤. قرينة
٢٥. يحل
٢٦. يسامح
٢٧. باختصار
٢٨. رصين / مراعى للشعور

Reading Skill

مهارة القراءة

Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the text?
2. What helps in building trust and solving problems?
3. How can we resolve conflicts?

Answers:
1-Good communication is the key to strong relationships.
2-Having open and respectful conversations.
3-Through calm, honest discussion.



Audio Script SB Page (30)

Host : Hi everyone! Today, we're joined by Mariam, a 15-year-old student who's here to talk about communication with family and friends. Welcome, Mariam!

Mariam : Hi! Thanks for having me⁽¹⁾.

Host : So let's start with your family. How do you usually communicate with your parents?

Mariam : We mostly⁽²⁾ talk at dinner or in the car. I try to be honest⁽³⁾ with them, even when it's hard. I think that helps us become closer⁽⁴⁾. I've learned that listening is just as important as talking.

Host : Great point. And what about your friends?

Mariam : We text a lot, but when something's serious⁽⁵⁾, I always prefer to talk face-to-face⁽⁶⁾. Last year, I had a misunderstanding⁽⁷⁾ with a friend over a group project⁽⁸⁾. We kept messaging, and it got worse. But when we finally talked in person⁽⁹⁾, it was easier to understand each other and solve the problem.

Host : Sounds like you've learned some great lessons.

Mariam : Yeah, I think communication is really about respect⁽¹⁰⁾, whether with family or friends. Listening, being honest, and staying calm really helps.

Host : Thank you, Mariam! That's great advice for all of us.

١. استضافتي
٢. غالبا
٣. أمين/مخلص
٤. أقرب
٥. جاد/هام
٦. وجهها لوجه
٧. سوء تفاهم
٨. مشروع
٩. شخصا
١٠. احترام

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

1. _____ is failure to understand correctly.
a. Connection b. Communication c. Expression d. Misunderstanding
2. A relationship or link between people is a/an _____.
a. disconnection b. connection c. question d. attention
3. A _____ is a strong connection between people.
a. failure b. bond c. tone d. sibling
4. I have three _____ : two brothers and a sister.
a. tools b. bonds c. siblings d. traditions
5. Showing care and regard for others means you are _____.
a. useless b. respectful c. impolite d. lazy
6. To be _____ means giving help or encouragement.
a. upset b. funny c. useless d. supportive
7. To _____ means to share thoughts, feelings, or ideas.
a. misunderstand b. communicate c. research d. disappear
8. To _____ is to find a solution to a problem or conflict.
a. deserve b. resolve c. research d. save

Synonyms and antonyms

9. There is a connection between pollution and the death of trees. The synonym of the word "connection" is _____.
a. strength b. link c. wire d. division
10. Omar was late for school. The antonym of "late" here is _____.
a. relaxed b. early c. delayed d. feared
11. Upset and pleased are _____.
a. similar b. antonyms c. synonyms d. adverbs
12. At least he was honest with you. "Honest" is similar in meaning to _____.
a. pleased b. dishonest c. delayed d. sincere

Prefix and suffixes

13. The prefix " _____ " gives the opposite of the word "understand".
 a. dis- b. im- c. in- d. mis
14. To get the adverb from "polite", we add the suffix " _____".
 a. -er b. -ing c. -ly d. -ed
15. To get the adjective from the verb "respect" we add the suffix " _____".
 a. -tion b. -ness c. -ly d. -ful

Guess the meaning

16. We _____ by talking.
 a. connect b. ignore c. include d. communicate
17. Good _____ helps people understand each other.
 a. fight b. communication c. expression d. distance
18. Miscommunication can lead to _____ or distance between people.
 a. happy b. conflict c. hungry d. strong
19. My _____ are my brothers and sisters
 a. friends b. siblings c. teachers d. neighbors
20. If I _____, I do not get what you say.
 a. understand b. misunderstand c. mismanage d. know
21. A _____ person is kind and polite.
 a. rude b. respectful c. loud d. lazy
22. A good _____ is when two people care about each other.
 a. distance b. relationship c. texting d. expression



Read and complete the text with the words from the list:

member - argue - respectful - forgive - conflict - affect

A miscommunication can cause a ❶ _____ between people. For example, two siblings might ❷ _____ about something that happened. When we are stressed or angry, it is easy to say things we don't mean. This can ❸ _____ the trust in our relationship. To solve this, we need to be thoughtful and ❹ _____. We should not ignore the problem. Instead, we should talk openly. We can apologize and forgive each other. This helps to make the bond strong again.



Language

قواعد لغوية

The Third Conditional

الحالة الثالثة للشرط

- تستخدم الحالة الثالثة للشرط للتعبير عن شيء لم يحدث في الماضي:

Form التكوين

If + past perfect (had+ P.P) - would have + PP

١- تستخدم الحالة الثالثة للشرطية للتعبير عن:

- موقف خيالي ونتيجة مختلفة كان من الممكن أن تحدث في الماضي لكن لم تحدث:

Ex. If they **had scored** one more goal, they **wouldn't have lost** the match.

Ex. If I **had gone**, I **would have met** her.

- الندم والفرص الضائعة:

Ex. If he **had told** me, I **would have helped**.

- الأعذار:

٢- يمكن أن تأتي (if) في وسط الجملة فيكون شكل الجملة كآلاتي:

past perfect (had+ P.P) + فاعل + would have + PP + فاعل

Ex. We **would have won** the match **if** we **had trained** well.

Ex. Our class **would have gone** on a picnic **if** the weather **had been** nice.

٣- يمكن أن يكون جواب الشرط سؤال فتكون الجملة كآلاتي:

Would + فاعل + have + p.p + if + have + p.p ?

Ex. What **would you have bought** if you **had won** the DREAM prize?

Ex. **Would you have gone** to the party if they **had invited** you?

Remember



The First Conditional

الحالة الأولى للشرط

- The first conditional is used for a real or possible situation in the future.

If + present simple, will + Inf.

- الحالة الأولى للشرط تُستخدم للتحدث عن موقف حقيقي أو محتمل في المستقبل.

Ex. If it **rains**, I **will stay** at home.

Ex. If she **studies**, she **will pass** the exam.

The Second Conditional

الحالة الثانية للشرط

- The second conditional is used for an unreal or imaginary situation in the present or future.

If + past simple, would + Inf.

- القاعدة الثانية للشرط تُستخدم لموقف غير حقيقي أو خيالي في الحاضر أو المستقبل.

Ex. If I **won** the lottery, I **would travel** around the world.

Ex. If he **were** taller, he **would be** a basketball player.

= (He's not tall, so he can't be a basketball player.)

زمن الماضي التام The Past Perfect

Usage الاستخدام

- We use it to talk about something that happened before another past action or time.
- نستخدمه للحديث عن شيء حدث قبل فعل أو وقت آخر في الماضي.

Affirmative الإثبات

→ Subject + **had** + past participle

Ex. I **had finished** my homework when my friend called.

1. First event (earlier): You finish your homework. (Past Perfect)

الحدث الأول (سابقاً): انتهيت من واجبك المنزلي. (الماضي التام).

2. Second event (later): Your friend calls. (Simple Past)

الحدث الثاني (لاحقاً): يتصل بك صديقك. (الماضي البسيط).

Negative النفي

→ Subject + **had** + not + past participle (had not = hadn't)

Ex. They **hadn't left** when we got there.

Question السؤال

A. Yes-No questions

السؤال الذي يبدأ بفعل مساعد

→ Had + subject + past participle?

- Had you **finished** your homework when your friend called?

B. Wh- questions

السؤال الذي يبدأ بأداة استفهام

→ (كلمة استفهام) + had + subject + past participle?

- What **had** Mona **done** when her mother arrived?

Example: - **First:** The train had left (Past Perfect).

- **Second:** We arrived at the station (Simple Past).

- When we **arrived** at the station, the train **had already** left.

Exercises on Grammar

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. If she _____ late, she would have caught the train.
a. had left b. is leaving c. has studied d. leaves
2. We _____ have gotten lost if we had brought the map.
a. won't b. must c. can't d. wouldn't
3. If I _____ my umbrella, I wouldn't have gotten wet.
a. have brought b. bring c. had brought d. am bringing
4. If Ahmed _____ more, he would have passed the exam.
a. studies b. studying c. has studied d. had studied
5. If we had left earlier, we _____ the bus.
a. would have caught b. may catch c. had caught d. will catch
6. We wouldn't have gone out if it _____.
a. had rained b. has rained c. rained d. rain
7. If he had driven carefully, he _____ the accident.
a. would avoid b. would have avoided
c. had avoided d. will avoid
8. If we had gone to the museum, we _____ the new exhibition.
a. would see b. saw c. see d. would have seen
9. If she _____ the instructions, she wouldn't have done them incorrectly.
a. had read b. would have read c. reads d. read

Bit by Bit Exercises

10. If I had known you were sick, I _____ to see you.
a. will come b. come c. came d. would have come
11. If they had taken the map, they _____ a wrong way.
a. wouldn't have taken b. won't take
c. hadn't taken d. didn't take

12. What would you have done if you the money?
 a. find b. had found c. found d. have found
13. We wouldn't have missed the bus if we earlier.
 a. had left b. left c. would leave d. leave
14. If he had asked me, I him the truth.
 a. would have told b. will tell c. told d. am telling
15. They the game if their best player hadn't been hurt.
 a. might have won b. win c. had won d. are winning
16. If you had told me about the party, I there!
 a. would have been b. was c. am d. will be

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If he had called me, I (answered).
 2. We (will go) to the park if it hadn't rained.
 3. If you (listen), you wouldn't have made that mistake.
 4. She wouldn't have been late if she (leave) earlier.
 5. He (buy) the car if he had had enough money.
 6. If I (see) the movie, I would have told you about it.
 7. If he (ask) for help, we would have helped him.
 8. They would have won the game if they (practice) more.
 9. If I (see) him, I would have said hello.
 10. She would have been angry if she (know) the truth.
 11. If you (not forget) your keys, you could have gotten in.
 12. We would have taken a taxi if it (rain).
 13. If the movie (not be) interesting, we would have seen it.
 14. He wouldn't have slipped if he (be) more careful.

3 Find the mistake and correct it:

1. If she has woken up earlier, she wouldn't have missed the bus. (.....)
 2. If it had been sunny, we would had gone to the beach. (.....)
 3. If he had practiced more, he will have won the game. (.....)
 4. If they had saved their money, they will have bought a new car. (.....)

Speaking

Ask and answer questions about Your Personality.

إسأل و جاوب الأسئلة عن شخصيتك.

Question	Answer
Are you good at solving problems? هل أنت بارع في حل المشكلات؟	Yes, I am. نعم
What problem did you face? ما المشكلة التي واجهتها؟	I had a misunderstanding with a friend over a group project. حدث سوء تفاهم بيني وبين صديق خلال مشروع جماعي
How did you solve it? كيف حللتها؟	We talked in person , it was easier to understand each other and solve the problem. . تحدثنا شخصيًا، وكان من الأسهل علينا التفاهم وحل المشكلة.
What did you learn? ماذا تعلمت؟	I learned that communication is really about respect, whether with family or friends. تعلمت أن التواصل يعتمد في جوهره على الاحترام، سواءً مع العائلة أو الأصدقاء. Listening, being honest, and staying calm really helps. الإنصات، والصدق، والهدوء أمورٌ مفيدةٌ جدًا.

General Exercises

on Lessons 1 & 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

- The club is to the school.
a. far b. remote c. close d. away
- Sad movies can my mood.
a. watch b. affect c. play d. meet
- Please, me in the game.
a. complete b. include c. play d. speak
- Her of voice sounded happy.
a. tone b. tool c. pool d. call

5. Raise your I can't hear you.
a. noise b. sound c. voice d. mail
6. Your expression shows how you feel.
a. medical b. facial c. social d. mental
7. Body language includes how you
a. stand or move b. sing c. eat quickly d. read
8. The question was I understood it quickly.
a. hard b. simple c. long d. boring
9. A smile means someone is
a. angry b. happy c. tired d. scared

Language

10. If you me, I would have helped you.
a. ask b. asked c. had asked d. will ask
11. He would have known if you him.
a. tell b. told c. had told d. will tell
12. If they the warning, they would have stayed home.
a. hear b. heard c. had heard d. will hear
13. I would have remembered if you me.
a. remind b. reminded c. had reminded d. will remind
14. If he the job, he would have moved to London.
a. gets b. got c. had gotten d. will get
15. You wouldn't have fallen if you carefully.
a. walk b. walked c. had walked d. will walk
16. If the weather better, we would have gone swimming.
a. is b. was c. had been d. will be
17. She would have been on time if she the earlier train.
a. takes b. took c. had taken d. will take

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

avoid - expressions - misunderstood - create - miscommunication - resolve

Sometimes, ① happens between siblings. For example, a simple text message can be ② because you cannot hear the person's voice or see their facial ③ The message's tone can be read wrong, which can ④ a small conflict. When this happens, it is important to talk about it honestly.

ad th



A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- B. Answer the following questions**

- الممسوحة ضوئياً بـ CamScanner

5 Rewrite the following using the words in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. You didn't call me so, I didn't help you.
(If)
2. We got lost because we didn't bring a map .
(If)
3. She didn't wear a coat. That's why she got cold.
(If)
4. Ali didn't listen to the teacher, so he didn't understand the lesson.
(If)
5. The food was so expensive in the restaurant so, we didn't eat there.
(If)

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN words on the following:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الكتاب)

"Arguments and misunderstanding in a family and how to resolve them"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

- What can happen in any family between siblings?
- How can we solve the conflict?

- جمل تساعدك في كتابة الفقرة:

- Sometimes arguments and misunderstanding can happen in any family between siblings.
- A calm discussion will help you find a good solution and solve the conflict.

5 Rewrite the following using the words in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. You didn't call me so, I didn't help you.
(If)
2. We got lost because we didn't bring a map .
(If)
3. She didn't wear a coat. That's why she got cold.
(If)
4. Ali didn't listen to the teacher, so he didn't understand the lesson.
(If)
5. The food was so expensive in the restaurant so, we didn't eat there.
(If)

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN words on the following:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الكتاب)

"Arguments and misunderstanding in a family and how to resolve them"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

- What can happen in any family between siblings?
- How can we solve the conflict?

- جمل تساعدك في كتابة الفقرة:

- Sometimes arguments and misunderstanding can happen in any family between siblings.
- A calm discussion will help you find a good solution and solve the conflict.

استمع إلى المفردات



المفردات الرئيسية

Key Vocabulary

silence (n)	صمت	frank (adj)	صريح
silent (adj)	صامت	comment (n)	تعليق
distant (adj)	بعيد	determination (n)	تصميم/اصرار
initiative (n)	مبادرة	empowered (adj)	متمكن
awkward (adj)	مخرج	challenge (n)	تحدي
distraction (n)	تششتت	courage (n)	شجاعة
frustrated (adj)	محبط	reconnect (v - ed)	يعيد الاتصال
meaningful (adj)	ذو معنى	research (v - ed)	يبحث
gesture (n)	إشارة	deserve (v - d)	يستحق
proposal (n)	عرض		

Vocabulary



المفردات الإضافية

fork (n)	شوكة	traditions (n)	تقاليد
across (adv)	عبر	discipline (n)	نظام
lately (adv)	مؤخرا/حديثا	embarrassing (adj)	مخرج
stress (n)	توتر	uncomfortable (adj)	غير مريح
argument (n)	جدال	student council (n)	مجلس الطلاب
plate (n)	طبق	individuality (n)	الشخصية الفردية (تميز)
softly (adv)	بهدوء	talent (n)	موهبة
conversation (n)	محادثة	tools (n)	أدوات
speech (n)	حديث	unique (adj)	مميز/فريد
honest (adj)	أمين/مخلص	push (v - ed)	يدفع
act (n)	تصرف	disappear (v - ed)	يختفي
distracted (adj)	مششتت	miss (v - ed)	يفتقد/يفوت
trip (n)	رحلة	fix (v - ed)	يصلح
cafeteria (n)	كافتريا	nod (v - ded)	يوميء بالموافقة
biology (n)	أحياء	shout (v - ed)	يصيح
Ms. (n)	استاذة/سيدة	shake (v)	يرج/يهتز
laughter (n)	الضحك		

Definitions

gesture (n)	إشارة	a movement or action that shows emotion
frustrated (adj)	محبط	feeling annoyed and upset
meaningful (adj)	ذو معنى	having purpose or deep importance
silence (n)	صمت	the absence of sound
reconnect (v)	يعيد الاتصال	to build a relationship again after distance
distraction (n)	تشيت	something that stops you paying attention.
proposal (n)	عرض	plan or suggestion for others to consider
research (v)	يبحث	Looking for information about something
determination (n)	تصميم	Not giving up until achieving something
courage(n)	شجاعة	The ability to do something different or when you are not afraid
shared (adj)	مشارك	Given or used by more than one person
deserve (v)	يستحق	To be worthy of something because of what you did
talent (n)	موهبة	A natural ability to do something well

Expressions & Prepositions

across from	عبر / بالمقابل	from that night on	من تلك الليلة فصاعدا
filled with	مملوء بـ	move to	ينتقل الى
used to	اعتاد ان	believe in	يؤمن بـ
instead of	بدلا من	feel hurt	يشعر بالأذى
take responsibility for	يتولى مسؤولية	show respect	يظهر الاحترام
at that moment	في تلك اللحظة	feel empowered	يشعر بالقوة و التمكين
not through	ليس من خلال	no longer	لم يعد



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
meaningful	ذو معنى	important		meaningless	بلا معنى
disappear	يختفي	vanish		appear	يظهر

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
dis-	تحول الكلمة لعكسها	disappear / dishonest
un-	تحول الكلمة لعكسها	uncomfortable
-ful	تحول الاسم أو الفعل لصفة	meaningful

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
speak	يتكلم	spoke	spoken
shake	يرج	shook	shaken
break	يكسر	broke	broken
become	يصبح	became	become
put	يضع	put	put

Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 Mr. / Miss / Ms / Mrs

• Mr. السيد تستخدم قبل اسم الرجل لإظهار الاحترام Ex. Mr. Smith is the head teacher	• Mrs السيدة تستخدم قبل اسم المرأة المتزوجة لإظهار الاحترام Ex. Mrs. Davis is my English teacher.
• Miss الأنسة تستخدم قبل اسم البنت الغير متزوجة إذا لم تكن نعرف اسمها أو لإظهار الاحترام Ex. Excuse me, miss, you've dropped your umbrella.	• Miss الأستاذة تستخدم قبل اسم المدرسة Ex. I know the answer, Miss.
• Ms الاستاذة / السيدة تستخدم "Ms" قبل اسم عائلة المرأة عندما لا ترغب في أن تُنادى بـ "السيدة" أو "الآنسة"، أو عندما لا تعرف ما إذا كانت متزوجة أم لا Ex. Ms George is visiting the school next week.	

2) plate / dish

• plate طبق صغير

Ex. The plates were filled with rice.

• dish صحن / طبق كبير / وجبة

Ex. There is a large dish of spaghetti on the table.

Ex. Spaghetti is my favourite Italian dish.

3) used to + Inf.

اعتاد أن + مصدر (تعبر عن عادة في الماضي ولا تحدث الآن)

Ex. A year ago, Omar and his parents used to laugh together at dinner.

4) Adverbs (quietly / softly / slowly)

الظرف (الحال) هو كلمة تصف الفعل وتتبعه وأحياناً تأتي قبله

Ex. Instead of eating quietly, he spoke.

Ex. "You are right." She said softly..

Ex. Their dinners slowly became filled with laughter again.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He _____ to wake up late but now he doesn't.

- a. use b. using c. used d. uses

2. This _____ can be served hot or cold.

- a. plane b. dish c. plate d. pan

3. We moved _____ until we got out of the room.

- a. quiet b. quite c. quietly d. quietness

Reading

SB Page (32)

SB Page (32)

استمع إلى النصوص



Read the following text. What can families do to stay connected?

Omar sat at the dinner table, **pushing**⁽¹⁾ his food around with a **fork**⁽²⁾. His parents were sitting **across from**⁽³⁾ him, quietly eating. The room was filled with **silence**⁽⁴⁾—that strange, heavy kind of silence that made everything **feel awkward**⁽⁵⁾.

It wasn't always like this. A year ago, Omar and his parents **used to**⁽⁶⁾ laugh together at dinner. But lately, things had changed. **Due to**⁽⁷⁾ school stress, phone **distractions**⁽⁸⁾, and **arguments**⁽⁹⁾ over small things, communication had almost **disappeared**⁽¹⁰⁾. Everyone seemed frustrated, but no one said why.



That night, Omar decided to try something different.

Instead of⁽¹¹⁾ eating quietly, he spoke.

"I miss how we used to talk," he said, looking at his plate. "I feel like we've all been **strangers**⁽¹²⁾ lately."

His words **surprised**⁽¹³⁾ his parents. His mother put down her fork. "You're right," she said softly. "We all have been too busy or tired to talk."

His father **nodded**⁽¹⁴⁾ his head. "Let's fix that."

It wasn't a long conversation, no big **speeches**⁽¹⁵⁾, just a few honest words and a meaningful **gesture**⁽¹⁶⁾. At that moment, the silence broke. It was the start of something better.

That small act of **communication**⁽¹⁷⁾ helped them reconnect—not through shouting or long messages, but by simply choosing to speak and listen. And from that night on, their dinners slowly became filled with **laughter**⁽¹⁸⁾ again.

١. يدفع
٢. شوكة
٣. مقابل
٤. صمت
٥. يشعر بالحرج
٦. اعتاد أن
٧. بسبب
٨. تشتت
٩. جدال
١٠. اختفى
١١. بدلا من
١٢. غرباء
١٣. أدهشت
١٤. أومأ برأسه
١٥. خطب
١٦. إيماءة
١٧. تواصل
١٨. الضحك

Reading Skill

Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the text?
2. Why did communication disappear in the family?
3. What helped the family reconnect?

مهارات القراءة

Answers:

- 1- Communication is the key to strong relationships.
- 2- Due to school stress, phone distractions, and arguments over small things.
- 3- That small act of communication Omar did.

Zeina decided to take **responsibility**⁽¹⁾ for her idea. She **researched**⁽²⁾ school gardens online and wrote a simple **proposal**⁽³⁾. She explained both the good and the difficult sides.

The next week, she showed **courage**⁽⁴⁾ by speaking at the **student council**⁽⁵⁾ meeting. Her hands were **shaking**,⁽⁶⁾ but she believed in her plan.

"I want to create a garden behind our school," she said. "It would be a beautiful place to eat lunch, and we could grow vegetables for the cafeteria. But I need help."

Some students laughed.

"You're just a new student," one said. "Why should we listen to you?"

Zeina **felt hurt**,⁽⁷⁾ but she **ignored**⁽⁸⁾ the comment.

"This is my school too. Everyone **deserves**⁽⁹⁾ a nice place to learn and enjoy breaks."

Ms. Hoda, the biology teacher, liked Zeina's **determination**⁽¹⁰⁾. She helped Zeina speak to different students.

Zeina soon found that many students had special **talents**⁽¹¹⁾: Nancy was good with tools, Noha loved painting, Amal was strong, and Sarah was very **organized**⁽¹²⁾.

Zeina helped everyone **feel confident**⁽¹³⁾ about their talents. The garden was no longer just her idea—it became their **shared project**⁽¹⁴⁾.



١. مسؤولية
٢. بحثت
٣. عرض
٤. شجاعة
٥. مجلس الطلاب
٦. ترتجف
٧. شعرت بالحرج
٨. تجاهلت
٩. يستحق
١٠. عزيمة
١١. مواهب
١٢. منظمة/مرتبة
١٣. يشعر بالثقة
١٤. مشروع مشترك

Answer the following questions:

SB questions

1. How did Zeina prepare to share her idea?

١- كيف استعدت زينة لمشاركة فكرتها؟

- By researching school gardens online. She then wrote a simple proposal that outlined both the benefits and the challenges of her idea.

- بحثت عن حدائق المدارس عبر الإنترنت، ثم كتبت مقترحاً بسيطاً بين فوائدها وتحدياتها.

2. What happened at the student council meeting?

٢- ماذا حدث في اجتماع مجلس الطلاب؟

- Zeina bravely presented her idea for a school garden.

- قدمت زينة بشجاعة فكرتها لإنشاء حديقة مدرسية.

3. How did Zeina react when students laughed at her?

٣- كيف كان رد فعل زينة عندما سخر منها الطلاب؟

- Zeina felt hurt by the laughter and the negative comments. However, she ignored the comment.

- شعرت زينة بالألم من الضحك والتعليقات السلبية، لكنها تجاهلت التعليق.

4. What role did Ms. Hoda play?

٤- ما دور الأستاذة هدى؟

- She helped Zeina speak with different students to help them with the project.

- ساعدت زينة في التحدث مع طلاب مختلفين لمساعدتهم في المشروع.

5. What skills did the other students bring to the project?

٥- ما المهارات التي أضافها الطلاب الآخرون إلى المشروع؟

- The other students brought a variety of useful skills to the project:

- قدّم الطلاب الآخرون مهارات مفيدة متنوعة للمشروع:

• Nancy was good with tools.

• كانت نانسي بارعة في استخدام الأدوات.

• Noha loved painting.

• كانت نهي تحب الرسم.

• Amal was strong.

• كانت أمل قوية.

• Sarah was very organized.

• كانت سارة منظمّة للغاية.

Critical thinking questions

1. What do you think made Zeina brave when she spoke?

١- ما الذي تعتقد أنه جعل زينة شجاعة عندما تحدثت؟

- I believe Zeina's bravery came from her strong belief in her idea. She felt that the garden was a good project that would benefit everyone.

- اعتقد أن شجاعة زينة نابعة من إيمانها الراسخ بفكرتها. فقد شعرت أن الحديقة مشروع جيد سيفيد الجميع.

2. Do you think Zeina's idea will succeed? Why/Why not?

٢- هل تعتقد أن فكرة زينة ستنجح؟ لماذا/لماذا لا؟

- Yes, I think Zeina's idea will succeed. She recognized and valued the different talents of other students, turning her idea into a shared project.

- نعم، اعتقد أن فكرة زينة ستنجح. لقد أدركت مواهب الطلاب الآخرين وقدرتها، فحوّلت فكرتها إلى مشروع مشترك.

Bit by Bit questions

1. What did Zeina want to build at her school? ماذا أرادت زينة أن تبني في مدرستها؟
- Zeina wanted to build a garden behind the school.
- أرادت زينة بناء حديقة خلف المدرسة.
2. What are two good things Zeina said the garden would be for?
٢- ما هما الشيئان الجيدان اللذان قالت زينة إن الحديقة ستكون لهما؟
- She said it would be a nice place to eat lunch and they could grow vegetables for the cafeteria.
- قالت إنه سيكون مكانًا جميلًا لتناول الغداء، ويمكنهم زراعة الخضراوات للكاتيريا.
3. How did some of the students act when Zeina spoke?
٣- كيف تصرف بعض الطلاب عندما تحدثت زينة؟
- Some students laughed at her and said she was just a new student.
- ضحك بعض الطلاب عليها وقالوا إنها مجرد طالبة جديدة.
4. Who helped Zeina with her plan?
٤- من ساعد زينة في خطتها؟
- Ms. Hoda, the biology teacher, helped her. ساعدها الأستاذة هدى، معلمة الأحياء.
5. What special talent did Amal have?
٥- ما هي الموهبة المميزة التي كانت تتمتع بها أمل؟
- Amal was strong. كانت أمل قوية.
6. How did the garden project change at the end?
٦- كيف تغير مشروع الحديقة في النهاية؟
- It changed from being Zeina's idea to being a shared project for many students.
- لقد تطور الأمر من فكرة زينة إلى مشروع مشترك للعديد من الطلاب.
7. Why do you think Zeina's hand was shaking when she was speaking at the student council meeting?
٧- لماذا تعتقد أن يد زينة كانت ترتجف عندما كانت تتحدث في اجتماع مجلس الطلاب؟
- I think this was Zeina's first time to speak in front of a lot of people.
- أعتقد أن هذه كانت المرة الأولى التي تتحدث فيها زينة أمام عدد كبير من الناس.

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

1. A plan or suggestion for others to consider is a
a. tone b. bond c. gesture d. proposal
2. Looking for information about something means to
a. appear b. ignore c. research d. deserve
3. Not giving up until achieving something means
a. determination b. connection
c. misunderstanding d. success

Unit 2 Communication with Family and Friends

4. The ability to do something different or when you are not afraid means

- a. weakness b. failure c. gesture d. courage

5. Given or used by more than one person means

- a. talented b. known c. shared d. frustrated

6. To be worthy of something because of what you did means to

- a. deserve b. leave c. reconnect d. understand

7. A natural ability to do something well means

- a. bond b. talent c. illness d. tone

Synonyms and antonyms

8. Life is not meaningful without work. The synonym of " meaningful " is

- a. distracted b. different c. meaningless d. important

9. The sun disappeared behind a cloud. The synonym of " disappear " here is

- a. show b. vanish c. appear d. fear

Prefixes and suffixes

10. The prefix " " gives the opposite of the word " appear".

- a. dis- b. im- c. in- d. mis

11. To get the opposite from " comfortable", we add the prefix " ".

- a. ir- b. im- c. un- d. mis

12. To get the adjective from the word " meaning" we add the suffix "

- a. -tion b. -ness c. -ly d. -ful

Guess the meaning

13. A quiet room is full of

- a. noise b. laughter c. silence d. music

14. The cat was and didn't make a sound.

- a. noisy b. loud c. fast d. silent

15. Her strong helped her finish the race.

- a. laziness b. determination c. fear d. confusion

16. The star is very and hard to see.

- a. near b. close c. distant d. big

17. He felt and didn't know what to say.

- a. comfortable b. calm c. awkward d. happy

18. My phone is a big when I am trying to study.
a. help b. distraction c. tool d. friend
19. He felt because he couldn't fix the toy.
a. happy b. frustrated c. calm d. excited
20. The book has a message about friendship and honesty.
a. meaningless b. bad c. funny d. meaningful
21. The student made a small with his hand to say hello.
a. noise b. picture c. gesture d. song
22. We with old friends at the party.
a. disconnected b. reconnected c. mended d. brought
23. I made a to my boss about a new project.
a. gift b. mistake c. proposal d. call
24. I the topic online before writing the essay.
a. researched b. asked c. copied d. received

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

discipline - empowered - determination - challenge - frustrated - distraction

Learning to play the guitar was a big ① At first, my fingers felt awkward. I got ② often, and there were many moments of failure. But I had strong ③ I knew I had to show respect for the process. My teacher gave a small, encouraging gesture. This made me feel ④ I realized I deserved to succeed if I kept working hard.

General Exercises



on Lessons 3 & 4

1 Finish the following dialogue:

There was a misunderstanding between Sarah and her Mom

Sarah : Mom, Is lunch ready?

Mom : ① You didn't tell me you are hungry.

Sarah : I did. I told you an hour ago.

Mom : Oh, I am sorry. I didn't hear you.

Sarah : ② !

Mom : What about ③ ?

Sarah : It's okay. ④ ?

Mom : Yes, I like pizza. Let's order your favorite pizza.

Sarah : ⑤

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. To be _____ with you, I don't think that is a good idea.
a. dishonest b. happy c. frank d. quiet
2. You _____ a good grade because you studied hard.
a. don't deserve b. earned c. deserved d. didn't want
3. It took a lot of _____ for her to speak in front of everyone.
a. fear b. sadness c. worry d. courage
4. We heard a lot of _____ coming from the next room.
a. depression b. silence c. laughter d. misunderstanding
5. My family has many special _____ for the holidays.
a. habits b. traditions c. roles d. problems
6. She has good _____ and always finishes her homework on time.
a. laziness b. mistakes c. discipline d. excuses
7. _____, I have been feeling tired.
a. Yesterday b. Lately c. Early d. Never
8. It was _____ when I slipped and fell in front of everyone.
a. clever b. great c. embarrassing d. exciting
9. I feel a lot of _____ before a big test.
a. madness b. happiness c. stress d. excitement
10. The chair was _____ because it was too hard.
a. uncomfortable b. soft c. comfortable d. new
11. We had a small _____ about what movie to watch.
a. agreement b. argument c. party d. conversation
12. The city _____ met to talk about new rules.
a. king b. council c. students d. children
13. He shows his _____ by having a unique style.
a. laziness b. anger c. individuality d. sadness
14. She has a great _____ for drawing.
a. mistake b. road c. talent d. hobby
15. You are _____, that's exactly what I was thinking.
a. wrong b. right c. different d. bad

3 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

sadness - frank - laughter - proposal - respect - argument

Our family dinner traditions are very important. We all sit at the big table. Tonight, we talked about a new ① _____ for our community council. There was a mix of serious talk and much ② _____. My dad was very ③ _____. He always says what he thinks. It's important to show ④ _____ for everyone's ideas. After the meal, we reconnected by telling old stories.



استمع إلى المفردات

المفردات الرئيسية

Key Vocabulary

awkward (adj)	مخرج	communicate (v-d)	يتواصل
gesture (n)	إيماءة / إشارة	reconnect (v-ed)	يعيد التواصل
frustrated (adj)	محبط	close (adj)	قريب / مقرب
meaningful (adj)	ذو معنى	face-to-face	وجها لوجه
proper (adj)	مناسب / صحيح	resolve (v-d)	يحل
honest (adj)	أمين		

Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

openly (adv)	بصراحة	tough (adj)	سيء / قاس
rebuild (v)	يعيد بناء	guy (n)	زميل / صاحب
honestly (adv)	بأمانة	fight (n)	قتال / شجار
alright (adv)	حسنا	feelings (n)	مشاعر
cousin (n)	ابن / بنت العم / الخال	courage (n)	شجاعة



Definitions

awkward (adj)	مخرج	feeling upset due to a difficulty
gesture (n)	إيماءة / إشارة	sign or action that shows feeling or intent
reconnect (v)	يعيد التواصل	to build a relationship again
frustrated (adj)	محبط	emotionally uncomfortable or strange
meaningful (adj)	صحيح / ذو معنى	full of importance or feeling

Expressions & Prepositions

at all	إطلاقا	end up upset	ينتهي بنا الحال مكتئبين
I totally agree	أوافق تماما	things get mixed up	اختلفت الامور
sort it out	يقوم بحل الموضوع	due to	بسبب
turn into a big deal	يتحول إلى موضوع كبير	that's good to hear	من الجيد سماع هذا

That's cool I totally get that For sure Honestly Right? absolutely	هذا رائع فهمت ذلك حقا بالتأكيد بأمانة حقا اطلاقا	that's nice I completely understand no doubt to be real don't you agree? Yes, I agree
---	---	--



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
close	قريب	near		far	بعيد
strong	قوي	powerful		weak	ضعيف
supportive	مساعدة	helpful		useless	غير مفيد
courage	شجاعة	bravery		cowardice	جبن
true	حقيقي	factual		false	مزيف

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ly	تحول الصفة إلى حال	honest ly / absolut ely
-ive	تحول الاسم أو الفعل إلى الصفة	support ive
re-	تعطي معنى يعيد	rebuild- re connect

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
rebuild	يعيد بناء	rebuilt	rebuilt
keep	يحافظ	kept	kept
take	ياخذ	took	taken

Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 communicate / connect

• **communicate** يتواصل

Ex. I often **communicate** with my cousin in London by e-mail.

• **connect** يوصل

Ex. Click here to **connect** to the internet.

2) once

• once (تستخدم بمعنى (عندما)

Ex. Once people talk openly, it's easier to rebuild the bond.

• once ذات مرة

Ex. Once, I saw a crocodile in the zoo.

• once مرة واحدة

Ex. We go to the cinema once a month.

• at once في الحال / توا

Ex. Go upstairs at once and clean your room!

3) either / too

• either أيضا: مع الجمل المنفية

Ex. Ali can't swim and I can't either.

• too أيضا: مع الجمل المثبتة

Ex. I want to keep our strong bond too.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- You've got my phone number if you need to
a. connect b. write c. communicate d. remember
- I haven't seen the movie and my brother hasn't
a. too b. either c. also d. else
- When I saw him I recognized him
a. at once b. on once c. for once d. to once
- Can you the speakers to the CD player, please?
a. connect b. deliver c. communicate d. tie

Speaking

Conversation Tip

1 Listen first. Then talk

When you have a problem, listen carefully before you answer. This shows you care and can stop the problem from getting bigger. People will talk more when they feel you listen.

عندما تواجه مشكلة، استمع جيدا قبل الإجابة. هذا يظهر اهتمامك، ويمكن أن يمنع تفاقم المشكلة. يتحدث الناس أكثر عندما يشعرون بأنك تلتصت.

• استمع أولا، ثم تحدث:

2 Using conversational Language

استخدام لغة المحادثة:

Use simple, friendly phrases to make your speech sound natural and easy. Here are some common chatty phrases and what they mean:

That's cool : That's good = I like that

هذا رائع : هذا جيد = يعجبني ذلك

I totally get that : I understand completely

أنا أفهم ذلك تمامًا : أنا أفهم تمامًا



Reading



SB Page (36-37)

استمع إلى النصوص



Now, read the conversation in pairs. What do we need most to keep good relations ?



SB Page (36)

مهارات التواصل الجيد Proper Communication Skills

Mona : Hi Naglaa, you seemed sad yesterday. Everything okay?

Naglaa : Yes, I'm all right now. Just had a little **misunderstanding**⁽¹⁾ with my cousin, Noha, last weekend.

Mona : Oh, that's **tough**⁽²⁾. Did you solve the problem ?

Naglaa : We did. Honestly, if we had communicated better, we wouldn't have **argued**⁽³⁾ at all.

Mona : I totally agree. If I had been more honest with my sister last week, we wouldn't have **ended up upset**⁽⁴⁾ with each other either.

Naglaa : Right? It's like one small thing turns into a **big deal**⁽⁵⁾. But we talked yesterday, and it helped us solve everything.

Mona : That's good to hear. Once people talk openly, it's easier to **rebuild the bond**,⁽⁶⁾ you know?

Naglaa : For sure. I feel like we've finally **reconnected**⁽⁷⁾. It just took a real conversation.

Mona : So true. It's amazing how much better things go when we just say what we're feeling.

Naglaa : Absolutely. Communication **makes such a big difference**⁽⁸⁾.



١. سوء تفاهم
٢. قاس
٣. تجادلنا
٤. انتهينا مكتئبين
٥. موضوع كبير
٦. يعيدو بناء الرابطة
٧. اعدنا التواصل
٨. يحدث فارق كبير

Read and identify the following model.



SB Page (37)

Role A: Hey, I've been thinking about **our fight**⁽¹⁾. Honestly, if we had communicated better, it wouldn't have happened.

Role B: I totally **get that**⁽²⁾. Sometimes things just **get mixed up**⁽³⁾. It's important to be honest with each other.

Role A: For sure! I really want to resolve this and **keep our bond strong**⁽⁴⁾.

Role B: That's **cool**!⁽⁵⁾ I want that too. Let's work on it together.

Role A: Great! I'm glad we can reconnect after all this.

Role B: So true. Talking helps a lot, right?

Role A: Right! Thanks for listening.

١. شجارنا
٢. فهمت ذلك
٣. تختلط الامور
٤. نحافظ على قوة
- الرابطة
٥. هذا رائع



Writing skill

Opinion Paragraph: فقرة الرأي

1- Introduction(opening sentence): -المقدمة (جملة افتتاحية):

Start with the experience or the topic you are giving your opinion on.

ابداً بالتجربة أو الموضوع الذي تُبدي رأيك فيه.

2- Describe the experience.

٢- صف التجربة.

3- Briefly explain what happened.

٣- اشرح بإيجاز ما حدث.

4- Personal feelings and thoughts:

٤- مشاعرك وأفكارك الشخصية:

Share what you felt during the experience.

شارك ما شعرت به خلال التجربة.

5- Lesson learned:

٥- الدرس المستفاد:

Explain what you learned or how the experience changed you.

اشرح ما تعلمته أو كيف غيرتك التجربة.

6- Closing sentence:

٦- جملة ختامية:

End with a sentence that shows why this experience is important.

اختتم بجملة تُبين أهمية هذه التجربة.

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Synonyms and antonyms

- Susan sat on a chair close to the window. The synonym of "close" is.....
a. near b. different c. distant d. far
- He did not have the courage to tell the truth. The antonym of "courage" is.....
a. bravery b. difference c. cowardice d. kindness
- Honestly, it's a true story. The antonym of "true" is.....
a. right b. false c. fact d. away

Prefixes and suffixes

- The suffix "....." gives the adjective of the word "support".
a. -tion b. -ness c. -ive d. -ful
- The prefix "....." Gives the meaning of doing something again.
a. ir- b. re- c. un- d. mis
- To get the adverb from the word "absolute" we add the suffix ".....".
a. -tion b. -ness c. -ly d. -ful

Guess the meaning

- We with our friends by talking.
a. sleep b. communicate c. run d. eat
- I like talking with my mom.
a. face-to-face b. loudly c. slowly d. angrily
- It is important to be and tell the truth.
a. honest b. funny c. lazy d. shy-

General Exercises on Lessons 5&6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- It's important to have a conversation to avoid any misunderstanding.
a. loud b. proper c. quick d. short
- When you have a problem with a friend, you should try to it quickly.
a. ignore b. write c. resolve d. remember
- The best way to fix a misunderstanding is to directly and clearly.
a. communicate b. rebuild c. connect d. fight

4. To have a good with someone, you need to be open and honest.
a. secret b. bond c. house d. rope
5. After a long time away, it's a good idea to with old friends.
a. fight b. rebuild c. reconnect d. forget
6. When you disagree with someone, you should share your opinion
a. hardly b. carelessly c. openly d. secretly
7. It takes to admit when you are wrong and say you are sorry.
a. fear b. courage c. quickness d. sadness
8. It can be a problem to solve when two friends stop talking.
a. tough b. happy c. slow d. exciting
9. We need to our trust after a big argument.
a. destroy b. rebuild c. forget d. buy

2 Finish the following dialog:

Eman is back from school and her mother is opening the door.

Mother : Hi, Eman. How was your day at school!?

Eman : ①

Mother : ② ?

Eman : Because my best friend, Fayrouz felt ill suddenly.

Mother : ③ ?

Eman : During the science lesson.

Mother : What made her feel ill?

Eman : ④

Mother : Bad food! You should visit her and you can buy her some flowers.

Eman : ⑤

3 Read the following text then answer the questions

"My cousin, Ali, and I haven't been talking much," said Ahmed. "It's a tough situation. We just don't have a strong connection anymore. We don't talk at all."

"Oh, that's not alright," replied Mia. "He's a good guy. You should try to reconnect with him. Maybe you can sort it out."

"I know," said Ahmed. "I think we need to talk face-to-face. Texting isn't great in this situation. It's easy for things to get mixed up."

"Absolutely," Mia agreed. "It's important to communicate with family. You have to be honest to fix things. You need to rebuild that trust. It's the only way to have a close relationship again."

"For sure," Ahmed said. "I'll give him a call tonight and see if we can meet up. I really want to resolve this."

"That's cool," Mia said. "I'm sure you'll feel so much better once you've talked."

Unit 2 Communication with Family and Friends

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c , or d:

1. What is the main problem between Ahmed and his cousin Ali?
 - a. They live too far away.
 - b. They don't have a strong connection anymore.
 - c. Ali is a bad person.
 - d. They had a big fight.
2. According to Mia, what is the only way to have a close relationship again?
 - a. To stop texting each other.
 - b. To talk on the phone every day.
 - c. To be honest and rebuild trust.
 - d. To have a face-to-face conversation.

B. Answer the following questions

3. What is the main idea of the passage?
.....
4. What does the underlined pronoun "He" refer to?
.....
5. What does Ahmed decide to do to fix the situation with his cousin?
.....
6. Why does Mia think Ahmed will feel better after he talks to Ali?
.....

4 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN words on the following:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الكتاب)

"The importance of communication"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What is communication?
- How does good communication help us?
- What can we use to make our ideas known?

- جمل تساعدك في كتابة الفقرة:

- Communication is how we share our thoughts.
- Good communication helps us solve problems.
- We can use words, gestures, or even writing.

Review on Unit 2

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

communicate (v-d)	يتواصل	honest (adj)	أمين
communication (n)	تواصل	bond (n)	رابطة
miscommunication (n)	سوء اتصال	relationship (n)	علاقة
siblings (n)	اشقاء	close (adj)	قريب
connection (n)	اتصال	texting (n)	إرسال الرسائل النصية
misunderstand	يسيء فهم	resolve (v-d)	يحل / يسيو
respectful (adj)	محترم	create (v-d)	يخلق
supportive (adj)	مساند	affect (v-ed)	يؤثر على
silence (n)	صمت	include (v-d)	يشتمل على
silent (adj)	صامت	frank (adj)	صريح
distant (adj)	بعيد	strength (n)	قوة
initiative (n)	مبادرة	determination (n)	تصميم / اصرار
awkward (adj)	مخرج	empowered (adj)	متمكن
distraction (n)	تشيت	challenge (n)	تحدي
frustrated (adj)	محبط	courage (n)	شجاعة
meaningful (adj)	ذو معنى	reconnect (v - ed)	يعيد الاتصال
gesture (n)	إشارة	research (v - ed)	يبحث
proposal (n)	عرض	deserve (v - d)	يستحق
awkward (adj)	مخرج	reconnect (v-ed)	يعيد التواصل
meaningful (adj)	ذو معنى	close (adj)	قريب / مقرب
proper (adj)	مناسب / صحيح	resolve (v-d)	يحل



Language

قواعد لغوية

The Third Conditional

الحالة الثالثة للشرط

- تستخدم الحالة الثالثة للشرط للتعبير عن شيء لم يحدث في الماضي:

Form التكوين

If + past perfect (had+ P.P) - would have + PP

- تستخدم الحالة الثالثة للجمل الشرطية لتعبير عن:

- موقف خيالي ونتيجة مختلفة كان من الممكن أن تحدث في الماضي لكن لم تحدث:

Ex. If they **had scored** one more goal, they **wouldn't have lost** the match.Ex. If I **had gone**, I **would have met** her.

- الندم و الفرص الضائعة:

Ex. If he **had told** me, I **would have helped**.

- الأعداء:

٢- يمكن أن تأتي (if) في وسط الجملة فيكون شكل الجملة كآلاتي:

فاعل + would have + PP+ If + فاعل + past perfect (had+ P.P)

Ex. We **would have won** the match **if** we **had trained** well.Ex. Our class **would have gone** on a picnic **if** the weather **had been** nice.

٣- يمكن أن يكون جواب الشرط سؤال فتكون الجملة كآلاتي:

Would + فاعل + have + p.p + if + had + p.p ?

Ex. What **would you have bought** if you **had won** the DREAM prize?Ex. **Would you have gone** to the party if they **had invited** you?

Remember



The First Conditional

الحالة الأولى للشرط

- The first conditional is used for a real or possible situation in the future.

If + present simple, will + Inf.

- الحالة الأولى للشرط تُستخدم للتحدث عن موقف حقيقي أو محتمل في المستقبل.

Ex. If it **rains**, I **will stay** at home. Ex. If she **studies**, she **will pass** the exam.

The Second Conditional

الحالة الثانية للشرط

- The second conditional is used for an unreal or imaginary situation in the present or future.

If + past simple, would + Inf.

- القاعدة الثانية للشرط تُستخدم لموقف غير حقيقي أو خيالي في الحاضر أو المستقبل.

Ex. If I **won** the lottery, I **would travel** around the world.Ex. If he **were** taller, he **would be** a basketball player.

=(He's not tall, so he can't be a basketball player.)

زمن الماضي التام The Past Perfect

Usage الاستخدام

- We use it to talk about something that happened before another past action or time.
- نستخدمه للحديث عن شيء حدث قبل فعل أو وقت آخر في الماضي.

Affirmative الإثبات

→ Subject + had + past participle

Ex. I **had finished** my homework when my friend called.

1. First event (earlier): You finish your homework. (Past Perfect)

الحدث الأول (سابقًا): انتهيت من واجبك المنزلي. (الماضي التام).

2. Second event (later): Your friend calls. (Simple Past)

الحدث الثاني (لاحقًا): يتصل بك صديقك. (الماضي البسيط).

Negative النفي

→ Subject + had + not + past participle (had not = hadn't)

Ex. They **hadn't left** when we got there.

Question السؤال

A. Yes-No questions

السؤال الذي يبدأ بفعل مساعد

→ Had + subject + past participle?

- Had you **finished** your homework when your friend called?

B. Wh- questions

السؤال الذي يبدأ بأداة استفهام

→ (كلمة استفهام) + had + subject + past participle?

- What **had** Mona **done** when her mother arrived?

Example: - **First:** The train had left (Past Perfect).

- **Second:** We arrived at the station (Simple Past).

- When we **arrived** at the station, the train **had already** left.

Paragraphs & Emails

Lessons 1 & 2

Sometimes arguments and misunderstanding can happen in any family between siblings, but how you resolve them is what is important. When people argue, they may say things they don't mean. Being a good listener is the key. It's important to be respectful and to try and understand the other person's point of view. A calm discussion will help you find a good solution and solve the conflict. Being able to forgive each other and move on is a sign of a strong relationship. Family members who can communicate well, even during disagreements, will have a lasting bond and great trust.

Lessons 5 & 6

Communication is very important. It's how we share our thoughts and feelings with others. When we talk, listen, and understand each other, we build strong relationships. Good communication helps us solve problems and avoid misunderstandings. In school or at work, it helps us work together as a team to get things done. It can be as simple as a smile or a friendly "hello." When we communicate clearly, we make the world a more connected and peaceful place. We can use words, gestures, or even writing to make our ideas known. So, always try your best to communicate openly and honestly.

Al-Azhar Test

For my school project, I want to help clean up the school and make it a better place for everyone. The plan is simple: I'll start by talking to the principal to get permission. Then, I'll organize a school-wide cleanup day. We'll get students and teachers to help pick up trash and make the grounds look nice.

My main goal is to get a bin for every single classroom. This will make it easy for everyone to throw away their trash without having to go far. It will help keep our classrooms tidy and reduce waste making our learning environment much cleaner and more organized.

Test on Unit 2

Good communication is key to having good relations with others. When we communicate well, we speak clearly and listen carefully. This helps us to understand what people think and feel. Good communication can prevent misunderstandings and arguments. We can use words, facial expressions, and body language to show how we feel. Being honest and respectful is very important. It shows that we value the other person. Good communication helps us to build trust and a strong bond. This makes our relationships with family and friends happy and healthy.

Al Azhar

Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed is talking to Doctor Khaled about his job.

Ahmed : Good morning. ①

Dr Khaled : Yes, I do. I like my job because I like helping people.

Ahmed : ②

Dr Khaled : At six in the morning. I start work at half-past seven.

Ahmed : Where do you work? In a hospital or a clinic?

Dr Khaled : Both. I work in the hospital in the morning and a clinic in the afternoon.

Ahmed : What do you do in hospital?

Dr Khaled : ③

Ahmed : ④

Dr Khaled: You are welcome.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

reconnected - traditions - silent - laughter - ignored

During dinner, Emma's family followed their ① They passed the plate of food across the table and laughed at old stories. But when Emma dropped her fork, the room fell ② She felt embarrassed, but her brother's ③ made her smile. Later, they ④ by sharing frank opinions.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

There have been hotels for hundreds of years, but they might be different in the future.

Usually there are friendly people who write your name and address, carry your bags to your room and give you breakfast in the morning. In Japan, there is a hotel where there are no people working at all: all the work there is done by robots.

When you first arrive at the hotel to check in, a robot tells you what to do: you should enter information about yourself on a computer. The robot is able to communicate in lots of different languages. You don't need a key for your room because a computer in the door will recognize you. There is even a robot in each room who is able to turn lights on and off and answer simple questions!

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why are there no people working in this hotel?

.....

Unit 2 Communication with Family and Friends

2. Why don't you need a key for your room?

3. What does the robot tell you?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. "Check in" means _____

- a. report that you have arrived
- b. sleep
- c. wake up
- d. park your car

5. The underlined word "there" refers to _____

- a. the hotel
- b. Japan
- c. the robot
- d. the future

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He was _____ because he lost his favorite toy.

- a. upset
- b. happy
- c. excited
- d. sleepy

2. Every _____ of the team has to work hard to win.

- a. animal
- b. member
- c. boat
- d. idea

3. Adel wouldn't have crashed if he _____ carefully.

- a. drive
- b. drove
- c. had driven
- d. will drive

4. If she hadn't missed the bus, she _____ on time.

- a. would have been
- b. would be
- c. has been
- d. will be

5. Too much noise can be a _____ when you're studying.

- a. reconnection
- b. distraction
- c. strength
- d. talent

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I _____ (be) so happy if I had gotten that job.

2. She would have gone to the party if they _____ (invite) her.

3. If it _____ (not be) windy, we would have had a picnic.

4. If she hadn't taken the umbrella, she _____ (not get) wet.

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN words on the following:

"A school project you want to do."

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

Test on Unit 2

1 Finish the following dialogue:

There was a misunderstanding between Ameera and Riham

Ameera : Can we talk about last night? I think ①

Riham : Yes. I felt ②

Ameera: I wasn't angry. I was just very stressed and needed to be alone.

Riham : I understand now. ③ ?

Ameera: It's okay. Good communication helps us resolve these issues.

Riham : I agree. When we talk, ④

Ameera: ⑤ ?

Riham : Yes. We should communicate more to strengthen our relationship.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

trust - supportive - bond - communication - resolve - create

Good ① is the most important part of any family. It helps a family create a strong ② and a better relationship. When we communicate, we listen to each other and share our feelings. A close family will be ③ of one another. We can talk about both happy and sad things. Talking to each other and being respectful helps a family ④ any problems.

3 Read the following text then answer the questions:

It was Omar's 16th birthday. He invited his friends to a restaurant at 7 o'clock in the evening for a birthday dinner. Omar reached the restaurant at 7 o'clock. He looked around for any of his friends, but no one came. So he decided to wait outside. A lot of customers came, but no one of them was Omar's friend. At 7:30 he phoned his friends, but nobody answered.

At 8 o'clock, Omar went home. He thought his friends had forgotten his birthday, so he was sad. He opened the front door and walked into the dark house. The living room was closed. "How strange!" he thought as he always left it open. Suddenly, the lights were turned on and all his friends shouted, "Surprise". So they hadn't forgotten, they gave him nice presents. In the end, it was the best birthday ever that made him happy.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The main idea of the passage is
a. bad friends b. presents c. a restaurant d. a birthday surprise
- He thought his friends had forgotten his birthday. The opposite of "forgotten" is
a. understood b. realized c. remembered d. reminded

B. Answer the following questions:

- How old was Omar?
.....

- How was Omar when he left the restaurant?
.....

- Was the end of the story happy? Why?
.....

- Why didn't Omar's friends come to the restaurant?
.....

4 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

- To is to find a solution to a problem.
a. ignore b. lose c. resolve d. communicate
- A is a movement or action that shows emotion.
a. gesture b. bond c. connection d. silence
- They were very supportive and kind." Supportive" is the antonym of
a. powerful b. helpful c. useless d. careless
- He was honest with you. "Honest" is the synonym of
a. sincere b. dishonest c. useless d. careless
- The bus was, so I missed my class.
a. early b. on time c. late d. fast
- A strong means you know someone well.
a. connection b. misunderstanding c. tone d. argument

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- She would have helped us if we (ask) her.
- If we (practice) more, we would have won the game.
- They (catch) the bus if they had run faster.

4. If I ----- (eat) breakfast, I wouldn't have been so hungry.
5. He ----- (not get) a sunburn if he had used sunscreen.

6 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Good communication leads to good relations"

[illegible]



استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

Artificial Intelligence (AI) (n)	human (n)	إنسان / بشر
الذكاء الاصطناعي	limit (n)	حد
task (n)	emotion (n)	شعور / عاطفة
مهمة / عمل	innovation (n)	ابتكار / إبداع
robot (n)	creative (adj)	مبدع
إنسان آلي (روبوت)	compose (d)	يؤلف / ينتج
advanced (adj)	power (ed)	يدعم / يشغل
متقدم / متطور	virtual (adj)	افتراضي
behavior (n)	program (n/v. med)	برنامج / يبرمج
سلوك	algorithm (n)	خوارزمية
basic (adj)	poem (n)	قصيدة
أساسي	surgery (n)	عملية جراحية
command (n)		
امر		

Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

medicine (n)	disease (n)	مرض
دواء	self-driving (adj)	ذاتي القيادة
technology (n)	global (adj)	عالمي
تكنولوجيا	climate change (n)	التغير المناخي
machine (n)	error (n)	خطأ
آلة	field (n)	مجال
vacuum cleaner (n)	transportation (n)	وسائل النقل / مواصلات
مكنسة كهربائية	driverless (adj)	بدون سائق
improve (d)	replace (d)	يستبدل
يُحسن	reduce (d)	يقلل
patient (n)	customer service (n)	خدمة العملاء
مريض		
replacement (n)		
بديل		
benefit (n)		
فائدة		
draft (n)		
مسودة		
pattern (n)		
نمط		
control (led)		
يتحكم		

education (n)	التعليم	challenge (n)	تحدي
human-made (adj)	من صنع الإنسان	energy efficiency (n)	كفاءة الطاقة
healthcare (n)	الرعاية الصحية	automate (d)	يبرمج/ يجعله أوتوماتيكي
business (n)	عمل/ تجارة	offer (ed)	يقدم/ يعرض
diagnose (d)	يشخص	efficient (adj)	فعال/ كفء
enhance (d)	يحسن/ يعزز	personalized learning (n)	التعلم الشخصي/ المخصص
transform (ed)	يحول/ يغير		

Definitions

emotions (n)	مشاعر	feelings like happiness, sadness, anger, or fear ⁽¹⁾	
behavior (n)	سلوك	the way someone or something acts or responds ⁽²⁾	
advanced (adj)	متطور/ متقدم	very modern, developed, or complex; not basic	١. الخوف ٢. يستجيب ٣. النقطة ٤. يبتكر ٥. غير معتاد
limit (n)	حد	the point ⁽³⁾ where something stops or cannot go further	
tasks (n)	مهام	jobs or actions that need to be done	
humans (n)	البشر	people; men, women, and children	
innovation (n)	ابتكار/ ابداع	invention and improvement	
compose (v)	يؤلف/ ينتج	create ⁽⁴⁾ or produce	
creative (adj)	مبدع	producing or using unusual ⁽⁵⁾ ideas	

Expressions & Prepositions

do tasks	يؤدي المهام	go further	يذهب أبعد
make decisions	يتخذ قرارات	talk about	يتحدث عن
follow basic orders	يتبع الأوامر الأساسية	make an advertisement	يصنع إعلاناً
solve math problems	يحل مسائل الرياضيات	at night	في الليل
make robots	يصنع الروبوتات	do human work	يقوم بعمل البشر
make art/ music	يصنع فنًا/ موسيقى	That sounds fun	هذا يبدو ممتعاً
turn .. into	يحول إلى	get ideas	يستخرج/ يستوحي الأفكار



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
expensive	غال	costly		cheap/ inexpensive	رخيص
important	مهم/ هام	essential/ necessary		unimportant	غير مهم
smart	ذكي	clever		stupid	غبى
basic	أساسي	primary		developed/ advanced	متطور/ تقدم
incredible	مذهل/ لا يصدق	surprising/ unbelievable		credible	يمكن تصديقه
modern	عصري/ حديث	new/ up-to-date		old	قديم

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ly	تحويل الصفة إلى حال	truly
-ness	تحويل الصفة إلى اسم	happiness/ sadness
-ence	تحويل الصفة إلى اسم	difference
-ment	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	replacement

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
put	يضع	put	put
know	يعرف	knew	known
think	يعتقد/ يفكر	thought	thought
bring	يُحضّر	brought	brought
understand	يفهم	understood	understood

Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1) without + noun/ v.ing

- without بدون

Ex. Without AI, the robot can only follow basic orders.

2 allow + someone/ something + to + inf. مصدر الفعل

• allow يسمح

Ex. AI **allows** the robot **to make** decisions, learn from actions, and change its behavior.

3 help + someone/ something + (inf. مصدر الفعل / to + inf. مصدر الفعل)

• help يساعد

Ex. AI school, robots can **help** students **(to) learn** new languages.

4 need + someone/ something + to + inf. مصدر الفعل

• need يحتاج

Ex. Robots often **need** humans **to help** or program them.

5 will be able to + inf. مصدر الفعل

• will be able to سيكون قادرًا على

Ex. Do you think AI **will be able to** replace humans?

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We will be able to the project on time.

- a. finish b. finishes c. finished d. finishing

2. Robots help doctors surgeries.

- a. to perform b. performs c. performing d. performed

3. electricity, the factory won't work.

- a. During b. With c. Without d. When

4. This app allows students speaking.

- a. practice b. to practice c. practiced d. practicing

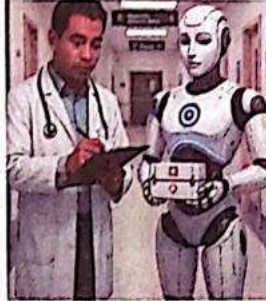
Reading

SB Page (42)

Read the following text about Artificial Intelligence

استمع إلى النصوص

Many people think **robots**⁽¹⁾ and **Artificial Intelligence**⁽²⁾ (AI) are the same, but they are different. A robot is a **machine**⁽³⁾ that can move and **do tasks**⁽⁴⁾. Some robots are very simple, like a machine in a **factory**⁽⁵⁾ that puts bottles in a box. Other robots are more **advanced**⁽⁶⁾, like robot dogs that can walk, run, and even play with people.



AI is the "**brain**⁽⁷⁾" that can go inside a robot. AI allows the robot to **make decisions**⁽⁸⁾, learn from actions, and change its **behavior**⁽⁹⁾. For example, a robot **vacuum cleaner**⁽¹⁰⁾ with AI can learn the shape of your room and clean it better each time. Without AI, the robot can only **follow basic orders**⁽¹¹⁾.

Some robots with AI are used in hospitals. They can bring **medicine**⁽¹²⁾ to **patients**⁽¹³⁾ or help during **surgery**⁽¹⁴⁾. In schools, robots can help students learn new languages or solve math problems.

Still, robots and AI have **limits**⁽¹⁵⁾. They can't truly understand **emotions**⁽¹⁶⁾, and they often need humans to help or **program**⁽¹⁷⁾ them. Also, making smart robots can be very expensive.

As technology **improves**⁽¹⁸⁾, we will see more robots in our daily lives. But it's important to know: not all AI is in robots, and not all robots are smart.

١. إنسان آلي (روبوتات)
٢. الذكاء الاصطناعي
٣. آلة
٤. يؤدي مهام
٥. مصنع
٦. متطور/متقدم
٧. مخ
٨. يتخذ قرارات
٩. سلوك
١٠. مكنسة كهربائية
١١. يتبع أوامر أساسية
١٢. الدواء
١٣. للمرضى
١٤. الجراحة
١٥. حدود
١٦. العواطف
١٧. يبرمجها
١٨. تتحسن

Reading Skill

مهارات القراءة (الاجابة بالاسفل)

1. AI allows the robot to make decisions, learn from actions, and change its -----
 a. limits b. emotions c. behavior d. technology

2. How can robots help in schools?

3. Do you think robots can do all human work? Why/ Why not?

3. No, I don't think robots can do all human work because they can't feel or think like humans.
 1. behavior 2. In schools, robots can help student learn new languages or solve math problems

Answers:

Listening

SB Page (44)



AudioScript

SB Page (44)

- Lina** : Hey Adham, I read something interesting today. It said that AI can make art and music. Isn't that something only **humans**⁽¹⁾ can do?
- Adham** : Yeah, a lot of people think that. But with all the new **innovation**⁽²⁾ in technology, AI can actually **create**⁽³⁾ pictures, songs, and even stories!
- Lina** : Really? How does that work?
- Adham** : Well, there are AI programs. For example, you type something like "a cat flying in space," and it makes a picture! It uses a **special algorithm**⁽⁴⁾ to turn words into images.
- Lina** : Wow! **That sounds fun**⁽⁵⁾. Can it make music too?
- Adham** : Yes! Some AI can **compose music**⁽⁶⁾ or even write **poems**⁽⁷⁾. Some writers use AI to get ideas or write the **first draft**⁽⁸⁾ of a story.
- Lina** : But can AI really be **creative**⁽⁹⁾? Doesn't it just copy things?
- Adham** : Good question. AI learns by studying thousands of **human-made**⁽¹⁰⁾ songs, books, and art. Then it finds patterns and makes something new. It's like a **virtual artist**⁽¹¹⁾.
- Lina** : Can AI feel **emotions**⁽¹²⁾ like a human artist?
- Adham** : No. AI is just a **tool**⁽¹³⁾, not a **replacement**⁽¹⁴⁾. But it's an exciting way to help humans be even more creative.

١. البشر

٢. الابتكار

٣. يبتكر

٤. خوارزمية معينة

٥. هذا يبدو رائعا

٦. يؤلف موسيقى

٧. قصائد

٨. المسودة الاولى

٩. مبدع

١٠. من صنع الانسان

١١. فنان افتراضي

١٢. عواطف

١٣. أداة

١٤. بديل



AudioScript

SB Page (44)

The future of technology

Artificial Intelligence is **transforming**⁽¹⁾ our world, offering **incredible benefits**⁽²⁾ across many **fields**⁽³⁾. Today, AI **powers healthcare**⁽⁴⁾, such as **diagnosing**⁽⁵⁾ diseases; education, such as **personalized**⁽⁶⁾ learning; and business, such as **automating tasks**⁽⁷⁾. It **enhances**⁽⁸⁾ transportation with **self-driving**⁽⁹⁾ cars and **improves customer service**⁽¹⁰⁾. It also **reduces human errors**⁽¹¹⁾.

In the future, AI could solve **global challenges**⁽¹²⁾ like **climate change**⁽¹³⁾ and energy **efficiency**⁽¹⁴⁾. AI will continue making life smarter and **more efficient**⁽¹⁵⁾.

١. يحول

٢. يقدم فوائد مذهشة

٣. مجالات

٤. يسيطر على الرعاية الصحية

٥. تشخيص

٦. التعلم المخصص

٧. ميكنة المهام

٨. يحسن

٩. ذاتية القيادة

١٠. يحسن خدمة العملاء

١١. يقلل الاخطاء البشرية

١٢. التحديات العالمية

١٣. تغير المناخ

١٤. الكفاءة

١٥. أكثر كفاءة

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

- The word _____ means the point where something stops or cannot go further.
a. advanced b. limits c. tasks d. feelings
- Robots can't truly understand _____.
a. emotions b. orders c. technology d. music
- The word _____ means very modern, developed, or complex; not basic.
a. creative b. basic c. advanced d. driverless
- _____ are the jobs or actions that need to be done.
a. Humans b. Tasks c. Emotions d. Feelings
- The word _____ means the way someone or something acts or responds.
a. innovation b. limit c. education d. behavior

Prefixes and suffixes

- To change the adjective "happy" into a noun, we add the suffix _____.
a. -ment b. -tion c. -ness d. -ition
- The verb "replace" can be changed into a noun by adding the suffix _____.
a. -ment b. -ion c. -ness d. -ition
- To get the antonym of the word "credible", we add the prefix _____.
a. in- b. im- c. ir- d. un-

Synonyms and antonyms

- This toy is expensive. "Expensive" is the antonym of _____.
a. complex b. essential c. cheap d. costly
- My little brother is smart. He always gets high marks. "_____" is similar in meaning to smart.
a. Clever b. Foolish c. Stupid d. Modern

11. Omar is very clever. He found a solution to the problem
- a. creative b. foolish c. stupid d. modern

Guess the meaning

12. helps machines do complex tasks efficiently.
- a. Medicine b. Education
c. Artificial Intelligence d. Emotion
13. Some robots respond to basic human
- a. orders b. limits c. innovations d. surgeries
14. Modern improves our daily lives greatly.
- a. emotion b. technology c. shape d. action
15. Engineers robots to do specific tasks.
- a. diagnose b. move c. program d. respond
16. AI cannot fully human creativity.
- a. move b. replace c. fix d. allow
17. in medicine helps doctors treat patients better.
- a. Benefit b. Order c. Innovation d. Limits
18. Robots can help students music and write short stories quickly.
- a. control b. act c. reduce d. compose
19. The machine stopped after showing a strange
- a. help b. field c. error d. medicine
20. My uncle will probably need a/an on his knee soon.
- a. machine b. patient c. surgery d. innovation
21. Robots are helpful, but not truly thinkers.
- a. driverless b. basic c. important d. creative
22. A special helps the computer solve the problem.
- a. surgery b. algorithm c. medicine d. emotion

23. In the game, you can create a character that looks just like you.
 a. real b. true c. virtual d. human-made
24. cars use cameras and computers to see the road.
 a. Home-made b. Self-driving c. Transforming d. Traditional
25. AI helps machines tasks without errors.
 a. do b. make c. go d. solve

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the list:

replacement - diagnosing - enhance - orders - create - robot

I believe that Artificial Intelligence will transform many jobs. AI will ① customer service by automating tasks and assisting with basic ② AI will also be a powerful tool for ③ diseases in healthcare. Even though some people worry, I think AI will be a helpful ④ for some boring jobs.

3 Complete the following dialogue:

Manal and Samy are talking about Artificial Intelligence.

Manal: What is Artificial Intelligence (AI)?

Samy : ①

Manal : ②?

Samy : Robots can do tasks like cleaning or solving problems.

Manal : ③?

Samy : No, they don't have emotions.

Manal : Who controls the robot?

Samy : ④

Manal : Can robots replace humans?

Samy : ⑤



Language

قواعد لغوية

The Future Simple زمن المستقبل البسيط

Form التكوين

Active مبنى للمعلوم

Subject المفعول + will + inf. + object المفعول

Ex. They will build a new house.

Ex. Salma will clean the room.

Passive مبنى للمجهول

Object المفعول + will + be + past participle (P.P) التصريف الثالث للفعل (الفاعل + by)

Ex. A new house will be built (by them). Ex. The room will be cleaned (by Salma).

Negative النفي

Active مبنى للمعلوم

Subject المفعول + will not (won't) + inf. + object المفعول

Ex. She will not send the email.

Ex. The chef will not cook dinner.

Passive مبنى للمجهول

Object المفعول + will not (won't) + be + P.P التصريف الثالث للفعل (الفاعل + by)

Ex. The email won't be sent (by her).

Ex. Dinner will not be cooked (by the chef).

Usage الاستخدام

The future simple passive is used to describe actions that will be done in the future

- يستخدم المبنى للمجهول في زمن المستقبل البسيط لوصف الأفعال التي يقوم بها شخص ما في المستقبل (أي يكون التركيز على الفعل وليس على من سيقوم به وفي بعض الأحيان لا يتم ذكر الشخص الذي يقوم بالفعل).

Ex. The homework will be corrected (by the teacher).

- التركيز على الحدث نفسه (تصحيح الواجب) وقد تم ذكر الفاعل في النهاية (أي أنه سيتم بواسطة المدرس).

Ex. This project will be finished next Friday.

Yes \ No question السؤال

Active مبنى للمعلوم

Will + subject الفاعل + inf.... + object المفعول ?

Ex. Will the school organize the trip?

Ex. Will the workers paint the building?

Passive مبنى للمجهول

Object المفعول + be + P.P التصريف الثالث للفعل (by + الفاعل) ?

Ex. Will the trip be organized (by the school)?

Ex. Will the building be painted (by the workers)?

Wh question

Active مبنى للمعلوم

Wh.word + will + subject الفاعل + inf.... + object المفعول ?

Ex. When will the teacher give the test?

Ex. Where will the workers build the bridge?

Passive مبنى للمجهول

Wh.word + will + subject الفاعل + be + P.P + (by + الفاعل) ?

Ex. When will the test be given (by the teacher)?

Ex. Where will the bridge be built (by the workers)?

- لاحظ: يمكن اضافة الفاعل في نهاية جملة المبني للمجهول كما لاحظنا في الامثلة بوضع by قبله .

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Bit by Bit Exercises

- More trees planted along the road to Luxor.
a. will be b. will c. been d. be
- The decision will made by the manager.
a. is b. be c. been d. being
- The house will be next week.
a. paint b. paints c. painted d. painting
- A new school will in our city next year.
a. be building b. be built c. built d. have built

5. My mom _____ the cake tonight.
a. will be baked b. will bake c. bake d. baking
6. The tickets of the next match _____ sold online.
a. be b. will be c. been d. being
7. The report will be _____ by Mazen.
a. write b. wrote c. writing d. written
8. The mechanic _____ the car tomorrow.
a. repairing b. be repaired c. will repair d. will be repaired
9. The government will _____ a new factory in our city next year.
a. be building b. be built c. build d. built
10. I think it _____ tomorrow. Let's stay inside
a. will rain b. will be rained c. is rained d. rains
11. The invitations for the party _____ tomorrow morning.
a. will send b. will be send c. will be sent d. sent
12. Don't worry, I _____ you with your homework later.
a. will be helped b. will help
c. will be helping d. helped
13. This old building _____ down next week .
a. will knocked b. will be knocked
c. will be knocking d. knocks
14. She _____ the door when she leaves.
a. will be locked b. will lock c. will be lock d. will locking
15. The winner of the competition _____ on TV next Friday.
a. will announce b. will be announce
c. will be announced d. announced
16. They _____ a taxi to the airport.
a. will be taken b. will take c. will be taking d. taken
17. The medicine _____ to the village by a volunteer.
a. will be deliver b. will deliver
c. will be delivered d. delivered
18. I'm sure he _____ the message soon.
a. will see b. will be seen c. will be see d. sees

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB Exercises

1. The exam papers will (check) by the teacher.
2. Our essays will (return) next week.
3. We will (used) driverless cars.
4. The homework (will correct) tomorrow.
5. Father (fix) his car tomorrow.
6. Driverless cars will (use) everywhere.
7. Nader will (traveled) to London next week.
8. Robots will (being) developed to do important tasks.
9. How do you think new technology will be (improve) by the time?
10. The problem will (solve) by the engineer.
11. All students will be (invite) to the event.
12. The room will (been) cleaned by my sister.
13. Lunch will (serve) at 1 p.m. on Friday.

Bit by Bit Exercises

14. The picture will (draw) by the artist.
15. The message will (being) sent immediately.
16. A new road (build) next year.
17. They will (replacing) the old machines with new ones.

3 Find and correct the mistakes in the following:

SB Exercises

1. The test will corrected by the teacher.
2. The letter will be send next week.
3. The report will be preparing by the manager.

Bit by Bit Exercises

4. The plan will be change if it rains.
5. The photos will taken during the trip.

Speaking

Ask and answer about Artificial Intelligence

السؤال والإجابة عن الذكاء الاصطناعي .

Question

What is Artificial Intelligence?

ما هو الذكاء الاصطناعي؟

What fields can you use AI in?

ما هي المجالات التي يمكن استخدام الذكاء الاصطناعي فيها؟

How can AI help in education?

كيف يمكن للذكاء الاصطناعي المساعدة في التعليم؟

Do you think AI and robots can make our life better? Why or Why not?

هل تعتقد أن الذكاء الاصطناعي والروبوتات يمكن أن تجعل حياتنا أفضل؟ لماذا أو لم لا؟

What are some good things and bad things about using AI?

ما هي بعض الإيجابيات والسلبيات لاستخدام الذكاء الاصطناعي؟

Answer

AI is a smart program that helps machine think and act.

الذكاء الاصطناعي هو برنامج ذكي يمكن الآلات من التفكير والتصرف.

AI is the brain that can go inside a robot

الذكاء الاصطناعي هو العقل الذي يمكن وضعه داخل الروبوت

We can use AI in medicine, education, transportation, and factories.

يمكننا استخدام الذكاء الاصطناعي في الطب والتعليم والنقل والمصانع.

AI helps students learn faster and teachers check work quickly.

يساعد الذكاء الاصطناعي الطلاب على التعلم بسرعة ويمكن المعلمين من تصحيح الأعمال بشكل أسرع.

Yes, I think AI can make our life better as it helps us do hard tasks and save time.

نعم، أعتقد أن الذكاء الاصطناعي يمكن أن يجعل حياتنا أفضل لأنه يساعدنا في أداء المهام الصعبة ويوفر الوقت.

AI saves time and helps do many tasks, but it may reduce jobs.

يوفر الذكاء الاصطناعي الوقت ويساعد في أداء العديد من المهام، لكنه قد يقلل من فرص العمل

General Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2

1 Complete the following dialog:

Nour and Omar are talking about AI

Nour : Can robots help doctors in surgery?

Omar : ① Robots can do small and careful tasks during surgery.

Nour : ②?

Omar : Yes, AI can help students.

Nour : How can AI help students?

Omar : ③

Nour : Do you think AI will control everything in the future?

Omar : ④

Nour : ⑤?

Omar : The problem with smart robots is that they are expensive.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The word means feelings like happiness, sadness, anger, or fear.

- a. tasks b. emotions c. humans d. behaviors

2. Omar has creative abilities. "Creative" is similar in meaning to

- a. imaginative b. old-fashioned c. basic d. useless

3. Hisham was better at music than playing it.

- a. improving b. composing c. mending d. acting

4. AI has its in understanding context.

- a. emotions b. limits c. orders d. surgeries

5. School robots help students math problems.

- a. fix b. mend c. replace d. solve

6. We add the suffix to the word "true" to change it to an adverb.

- a. -ly b. -er c. -ing d. -ness

7. The artist used bright colors to the feeling of joy in the painting.

- a. diagnose b. personalize c. transform d. enhance

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

fields - act - basic - tasks - advanced - humans

Modern life depends on innovation. People create machines like the vacuum cleaner to help with daily ① Driverless transportation is becoming popular. These tools work without human control, using ② programs. Still, they can't ③ like humans. For example, robots don't understand emotions or respond kindly to others. AI is useful in many ④, but only humans truly understand.

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. A new hospital will be (opens) next year.
2. The zookeeper will (fed) the animals.
3. The app will (being) developed soon.
4. The work will be completed (from) the team.
5. The rules (explain) before the game.

5 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Artificial Intelligence"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

- 1- What is Artificial Intelligence?
- 2- What fields can you use AI in?
- 3- How can AI help in education, medicine and transportation?
- 4- Do you think AI and robots can make our life better? Why or Why not?
- 5- What are the benefits of using AI?



استمع إلى المفردات
المفردات الرئيسية

Key Vocabulary

robot/ AI teacher (n)	مدرس آلي/ يعمل بالذكاء الاصطناعي	connection (n)	اتصال/ صلة
motivated (adj)	محفز	initiative (n)	مبادرة
surprising (adj)	مفاجئ/ مدهش	donation (n)	تبرع
shiny (adj)	لامع	honest (adj)	أمين/ صادق
confused (adj)	مرتبك	upset (adj)	منزعج
customized (adj)	مخصص	disappointed/ frustrated (adj)	محبط/ خائب الأمل
instantly (adv)	فورا/ على الفور	climate (n)	مناخ
feedback (n)	تقييم	notice (d)	يلاحظ
helpful (adj)	مفيد	research (ed)	يجري بحثًا
care (n)	رعاية/ اهتمام		

Vocabulary



المفردات الإضافية

app (n)	تطبيق	delay (n)	تأخير
learning website (n)	موقع تعليمي	link (n)	رابط/ صلة
rainy (adj)	ممطر	failure (n)	فشل
special (adj)	خاص	watering system (n)	نظام ري
extra (adj)	إضافي	slowly (adv)	بطء
grammar practice (n)	تدريب على القواعد	proud (adj)	فخور
fun (adj)	ممتع	reaction (n)	رد فعل
real (adj)	حقيقي	explain (ed)	يشرح
by the time	بحلول الوقت/ عندما	miss (ed)	يفتقد
completely (adv)	تمامًا/ كليًا	smile (d)	يبتسم
seeds (n)	بذور	return (ed)	يعود/ يرجع
soil (n)	تربة	die (d)	يموت
local community (n)	المجتمع المحلي	solve (d)	يحل
plant (n)	نبات	decide (d)	يقرر
kindly (adv)	بلطف	protect (ed)	يحمي
member (n)	فرد/ عضو	encourage (d)	يشجع
consider (ed)	يعتبر	innovate (d)	يبتكر/ يجدد
cheat (ed)	يغش	suit (ed)	يناسب
plan (n)	خطة		

Definitions

customize (v)	يخصص	to change something to make it the way you want
connection (n)	ارتباط/ اتصال	a link between people, things or ideas
instantly (adv)	فوراً	without any delay
confused (adj)	مربك/ محير	feeling unsure or puzzled
notice (v)	يلاحظ	to see or become aware of something
initiative (n)	مبادرة	taking action without waiting for others
donations (n)	تبرعات	money or gifts given to help a project
quit (v)	ينسحب/ يستسلم/ يتوقف	to stop doing something because it's too hard
disappointed (adj)	خائب الأمل	feeling sad when something doesn't work out
climate (n)	المناخ	the usual weather in a place

Expressions & Prepositions

at the front of	في مقدمة	work out	يعمل
at the end of	في نهاية	give up	يستسلم/ يتوقف عن
wait for	ينتظر	care for	يهتم بـ
by Friday	بحلول يوم الجمعة	take action	يتخذ إجراء
in my / your opinion	في رأيي/ رأيك	get money for	يحصل على مال لـ
face a problem	يواجه مشكلة	aware of	مدرك لـ
stay motivated	يبقى متحمساً/ متحفزاً	run into trouble	يقع في مشكلة



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
surprising	مدهش/ مفاجئ	shocking/ unexpected		normal/ ordinary	عادي
different	مختلف	dissimilar		similar/ same	مشابه/ نفس الشيء
disappointed	خائب الأمل	frustrated		hopeful	متفائل
unsure	غير متأكد	puzzled		sure/ certain	متأكد
local	محلي	regional		global/ international	عالمي/ دولي
special	خاص/ مميز	customized/ particular		common/ normal	عادي

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات والواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ful	تحول الاسم / الفعل إلى صفة	helpful
-ing	تحول الاسم / الفعل إلى صفة	surprising
-ly	تحول الصفة إلى حال	instantly completely kindly
-ion	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	connection donation determination
un-	تعطى عكس المعنى	unsure

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
stand	يقف	stood	stood
teach	يُعلم/ يدرس	taught	taught
quit	ينسحب/ يستسلم/ يتوقف	quit	quit
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
build	يبني	built	built

Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1) instead/ instead of

• instead

بدلاً/ بدلاً من ذلك (تأتي منفردة في نهاية الجملة أو بدايتها)

Ex. I didn't have any coffee. I had tea **instead**.

Ex. The first plan didn't work. **Instead**, we came up with a new one.

• instead of + V.ing/ noun بدلاً من

تأتي وسط الجملة

Ex. I'll have tea **instead of** coffee.

Ex. We stayed home **instead of** going out.

Unit 3 Artificial Intelligence

2) weather / climate

• weather

الطقس (حالة الجو في فترة زمنية قصيرة)

Ex. The **weather** is hot today.

• climate

المناخ (حالة الجو في فترة زمنية طويلة)

Ex. The **climate** of the desert is hot and dry.

3) by the time

بحلول الوقت أو عندما (تستخدمه للربط بين جملتين في الماضي - حدث يسبق الحدث الآخر)

By the time + subject + **past simple** (حدث ثاني)
subject + had + P.P (حدث أول)

Ex. **By the time** their human teacher returned, everyone had improved.

4) learn (how) to + inf. يتعلم كيف أن مصدر الفعل

Ex. They **learned how to** care for different kinds of plants.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Can we meet on Friday Thursday?

- a. instead b. instead of c. rather d. from

2. The of Egypt is generally dry and sunny.

- a. weather b. climate c. temperature d. whether

3. My sister learned how the guitar.

- a. playing b. play c. to play d. to playing

4. By the time I, the movie had already started.

- a. arrived b. arrive c. arriving d. to arrive

Reading

SB Page (46)

استمع إلى النصوص

Read the following text and guess the meaning of the words in bold

One rainy morning, Sara walked into her classroom and saw something **surprising**⁽¹⁾. Her teacher wasn't there. Instead, a shiny robot stood at the front of the room.

"Good morning, students," it said. "I am **a robot teacher**⁽²⁾. I will be your AI teacher this week."

The students were **confused**⁽³⁾. The robot teacher explained, "I will help each of you learn in a **special**⁽⁴⁾ way. At the end of the week, your lessons will be **customized**⁽⁵⁾ just for you."

The robot teacher knew what each student needed. It gave Sara extra grammar practice. Nader was given fun math games. All homework was checked **instantly**⁽⁶⁾, and no one had to wait long for **feedback**⁽⁷⁾.

"You will be taught so much by Friday," the robot teacher said.

But after a few days, Sara missed her **real**⁽⁸⁾ teacher.

The robot teacher was **helpful**⁽⁹⁾, but it didn't smile or notice when students felt tired or sad.

By the time their human teacher returned, everyone had improved. But they had also learned something important: technology can help, but it cannot replace the **care**⁽¹⁰⁾ and **connection**⁽¹¹⁾ of a real teacher.

In the future, AI will be used in many classrooms-but it will not replace real teachers **completely**⁽¹²⁾.



١. مفاجئ/مدهش
٢. مدرس آلي
٣. مرتبك
٤. مميّز
٥. مخصص
٦. فوراً/على الفور
٧. تقييم
٨. حقيقي
٩. مساعد/مفيد
١٠. رعاية/عناية
١١. صلة/اتصال
١٢. بشكل كامل

Reading Skill

مهارة القراءة (الاجابة بالاسفل)

1. Sara and her classmates _____ their real teacher.

a. missed

b. lost

c. hated

d. congratulated

2. What can we understand from the story?

3. What was the problem of the robot teacher?

3. The problem of the robot teacher was that it didn't smile or notice when students felt tired or sad.
2. We can understand from the story that AI can't replace humans.
1. a. missed

Answers:

- Read the following text. Could the team solve the problem they faced?

The **project**⁽¹⁾ started, but it wasn't easy. First, they needed money to buy **seeds**⁽²⁾, **tools**⁽³⁾, and soil. Zeina showed **initiative**⁽⁴⁾ by asking **local community**⁽⁵⁾ for **donations**⁽⁶⁾. She was always **honest**⁽⁷⁾ about how the money would be used.

Then, it rained for two weeks, and some of their first plants died.

Amal was **upset**⁽⁸⁾.

"This is too hard," she said. "Maybe we should just **quit**⁽⁹⁾."

Zeina felt disappointed, too. But instead of **giving up**⁽¹⁰⁾, she showed **determination**⁽¹¹⁾.

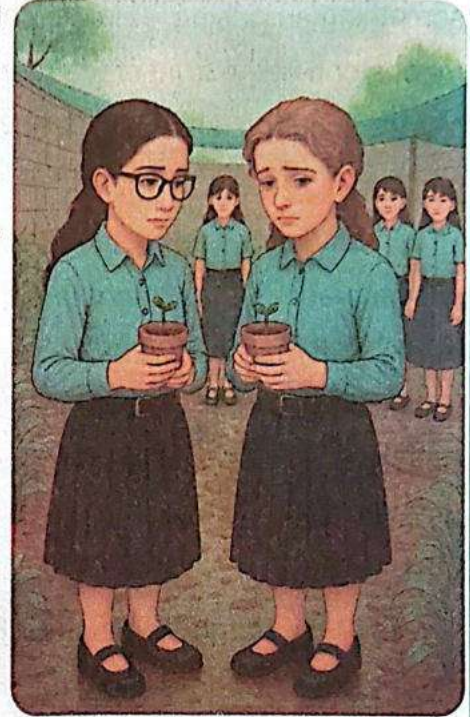
"I understand you're **frustrated**⁽¹²⁾," she said **kindly**⁽¹³⁾. "But we're doing something good for the school. We can't stop now."

The team worked together to solve the problems. They decided to change their plan. They **researched**⁽¹⁴⁾ which plants grow best in their **climate**⁽¹⁵⁾ and how to protect them from too much rain.

They also built a better **watering system**⁽¹⁶⁾ and learned how to care for different kinds of plants.

Slowly, the garden started to look better again.

The team felt proud because they had solved the problems together.



١. مشروع
٢. بذور
٣. أدوات
٤. مبادرة
٥. المجتمع المحلي
٦. تبرعات
٧. أمين
٨. متضايق/منزعج
٩. محبط/خائب الأمل
١٠. يستسلم
١١. عزم/إصرار
١٢. محبط/خائب الأمل
١٣. بلطف
١٤. يقوم بعمل بحث
١٥. المناخ
١٦. نظام ري

Answer the following questions:

SB questions

1. What problem did the team face first? ما هي المشكلة التي واجهها الفريق أولاً؟

- They needed money to buy seeds, tools, and soil.

- حاجتهم إلى المال لشراء البذور والأدوات والتربة.

2. How did Zeina try to get money for the project?

٢. كيف حاولت زينة الحصول على تمويل للمشروع؟

- Zeina showed initiative by asking the local community for donations.

- أبدت زينة مبادرة من خلال طلب التبرعات من المجتمع المحلي.

3. What happened after it rained for two weeks?

٣. ماذا حدث بعد هطول المطر لمدة أسبوعين؟

- After it rained for two weeks, some of their first plants died.

- بعد هطول الأمطار لمدة أسبوعين، ماتت بعض نباتاتهم الأولى.

4. What was Amal's reaction? What was Zeina's?

٤. ما هو رد فعل أمل؟ وماذا كان رد فعل زينة؟

- Amal was upset but Zeina felt disappointed.

- كانت أمل منزعجة لكن زينة شعرت بخيبة أمل.

5. How did the team solve the plant problem?

٥. كيف حل الفريق مشكلة النبات؟

- They researched which plants grow best in their climate. They built a better watering system and learned how to care for different kinds of plants.

- بحثوا عن النباتات التي تنمو بشكل أفضل في مناخهم. بنوا نظام ري أفضل، وتعلموا كيفية رعاية أنواع مختلفة من النباتات.

Critical thinking questions

6. What do you think helped Zeina stay motivated when things were hard?

٦. في رأيك ما الذي ساعد زينة على الحفاظ على حماسها في الأوقات الصعبة؟

- Zeina's determination helped her stay motivated when things were hard.

- ساعد تصميم زينة على الحفاظ على حماسها في الأوقات الصعبة.

7. If you were in Zeina's place, would you do the same thing? Why?

٧. لو كنت مكان زينة، هل كنت ستفعل الشيء نفسه؟ ولماذا؟

- Yes, I would do the same as Zeina. She was a good leader who showed determination and encouraged her team instead of giving up, which led to the project's success.

- نعم، سأفعل مثل زينة. لقد كانت قائدة جيدة أظهرت تصميمًا وشجعت فريقها بدلاً من الاستسلام، مما أدى إلى نجاح المشروع.

8. How can failure help you learn something new?

٨. كيف يمكن للفشل أن يساعدك على تعلم شيء جديد؟

- Failure can help you learn something new by forcing you to find a solution and research to solve the problems

- يمكن أن يساعدك الفشل على تعلم شيء جديد من خلال إجبارك على إيجاد حل والبحث عن حلول للمشاكل.

Bit by Bit questions

1. What did they need money to buy?

١. ما الذي كانوا بحاجة إلى المال لشراؤه؟

- They needed money to buy seeds, tools, and soil.

- احتاجوا إلى المال لشراء البذور والأدوات والتربة.

2. What bad thing happened to their plants?

٢. ما الشيء السيئ الذي حدث لنباتاتهم؟

- It rained for two weeks and some plants died.

- أمطرت لمدة أسبوعين وماتت بعض النباتات.

3. What did Amal want to do?

٣. ماذا أرادت أمل أن تفعل؟

- Amal wanted to quit and give up.

- أرادت أمل الاستسلام والتخلي عن المشروع.

4. What did Zeina and the team do to solve their problems?

٤. ماذا فعلت زينة والفريق لحل مشاكلهم؟

- They changed their plan, researched the best plants, and built a better watering system.

- غيروا خططهم، وبحثوا عن أفضل النباتات، وبنوا نظام ري أفضل.

5. How did the team feel at the end?

٥. كيف شعر الفريق في النهاية؟

- They felt proud of themselves.

- شعروا بالفخر بأنفسهم.

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

1. The word means to change something to make it the way you want.

a. customize

b. donate

c. quit

d. notice

2. The word means without any delay.

a. instantly

b. completely

c. specially

d. kindly

3. "....." is the usual weather in a place.

a. Initiative

b. Connection

c. Climate

d. Determination

4. To "....." means to see or become aware of something.

a. notice

b. quit

b. donate

b. customize

5. The word means feeling unsure or puzzled.

a. honest

b. disappointed

c. confused

d. determined

6. A link between people, things or ideas is called a
 a. initiative b. connection c. climate d. determination
7. The word means taking action without waiting for others.
 a. determination b. connection c. initiative d. care
8. Money or gifts given to help a project are called
 a. donations b. connections c. initiatives d. sites
9. Strong will to keep trying is called
 a. feedback b. determination c. connection d. donation

Prefixes and suffixes

10. To get the noun from the word "determinate", we add the suffix
 a. -tion b. -cion c. -ion d. -ition
11. We can form the adjective from the verb "help" by adding the suffix
 a. -ful b. -ence c. -ive d. -ed

Synonyms and Antonyms

12. is similar in meaning to immediately.
 a. Late b. Instantly c. Delayed d. Slowly
13. The antonym of the adjective "disappointed" is
 a. frustrated b. upset c. hopeful d. helpful

Guess the meaning

14. Nour is She always tells the truth.
 a. honest b. confused c. upset d. disappointed
15. She stayed even when her first plan failed.
 a. disappointed b. motivated c. confused d. upset
16. She was when the AI teacher didn't understand her question.
 a. instant b. proud c. shiny d. disappointed
17. The school introduced a new to help students learn grammar online.
 a. watering system b. app c. climate d. soil
18. The grammar practice test was for each student's level.
 a. customized b. unsure c. real d. honest
19. Parents always children to read and learn new things.
 a. consider b. suit c. encourage d. innovate
20. The school will action to solve the problem.
 a. make b. take c. do d. get

Unit 3 Artificial Intelligence

21. The students will the research results.

- a. give up b. work out c. take action d. wait for

22. If you don't study, you will trouble during the test.

- a. go on b. give up c. run into d. care for

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

action - connection - quit - feedback - determination - motivated

Mohamed felt frustrated. His science project had failed, and he wanted to ① His teacher noticed and gave him honest ② "Failure is just a step," she said. Mohamed decided to take ③ He researched, and tried again. By the end of the week, his project worked! He learned the value of ④

General Exercises on Lessons 3&4

1 Finish the following dialog:

Omar and Laila are talking about their school garden problem.

Omar : Our school garden doesn't look good.

Laila : Yes, the rain damaged some plants. ①

Omar : We should choose plants that grow well in our climate.

Laila : ②! We can also build a better watering system.

Omar : And we must care for the plants every day.

Laila : Do you think the garden will be beautiful again?

Omar : ③ if we work together.

Laila : Great! ④

Omar : We can start next weekend.

Laila : ⑤

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

proud - disappointed - give up - app - noticed - sad

Waleed always wanted to be an artist. He downloaded a special ① for learning drawing. At first, his pictures didn't look good, he didn't ② He practiced every day and got instant feedback. Slowly, his skills improved. His family ③ and encouraged him. One day, his drawing was shown at school. Waleed was so happy and ④ He learned: keep trying and you'll get better!

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Ramy loved building things. One rainy afternoon, he decided to create a special robot teacher that could help students learn in a fun way. He stayed motivated and didn't give up, even when he felt confused about the design. After many tries, his shiny new robot was ready. It could give instant feedback, explain lessons clearly, and customize activities for each student.

When Ramy showed it to the local community, people were surprised at how helpful it was. An honest school leader took the initiative to get donations for more robots. The connection between teachers and students became stronger, and learning delays were completely solved. Ramy felt proud as he saw students smile and stay motivated. In my opinion, his determination not only solved a problem but also created a real change in education.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The story is mainly about
 - A boy who loves rainy days
 - A student who struggles in school
 - A boy who builds an educational robot
 - A teacher who doesn't like technology
- Ramy's helped him create a robot teacher.

a. determination	b. feedback
c. local community	d. initiative

B. Answer the following questions:

- What could Ramy's robot do?
.....
- What does the underlined pronoun "he" refer to?
.....
- Summarize the passage in 3 sentences.
.....
- How would schools be if we only had robot teachers?
.....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. To is to stop doing something because it's too hard.
a. notice b. customize c. quit d. research
2. The word "....." means feeling sad when something doesn't work well.
a. disappointed b. real c. helpful d. surprising
3. The student was and refused to cheat in the grammar test.
a. honest b. customized c. motivated d. frustrated
4. The nurse showed great for the sick student during the rainy day.
a. care b. plan c. feedback d. initiative
5. We add the prefix to the word "sure" to get its opposite.
a. in- b. ir- c. un- d. dis-
6. "....." is similar in meaning to the word "customized".
a. Common b. Normal c. Special d. Ordinary

5 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

(مجاوب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"A robot teacher"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

- 1- How helpful is a robot teacher?
- 2- Why can't a robot teacher replace a real teacher?
- 3- Do you think robot teachers will be used in many classrooms in the future?



استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

exciting (adj)	مثير	imagine (d)	يتخيل
definitely (adv)	بالتأكيد	believe (d)	يعتقد
even though	على الرغم من	remember (ed)	يتذكر
powerful (adj)	قوى	assist (ed)	يساعد
risk (n)	خطر	pleased (adj)	مسرور
fact (n)	حقيقة	use (n)	استخدام
delivery (n)	تسليم	drone (n)	طائرة بدون طيار
medicine (n)	دواء	information (n)	معلومات
worried (adj)	قلق	rule (n)	قاعدة
discover (ed)	يكشف	protect (ed)	يحمي
involve (d)	يشارك	recognize (d)	يتعرف على
creativity (n)	إبداع		

Expressions & Prepositions

hear about	يسمع عن	sound amazing	يبدو مذهلاً
in different ways	بطرق مختلفة	for sure	بالتأكيد
What kind of	ما نوع	do jobs	يؤدي وظائف
agree about	يتفق على		



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
exciting	مثير	interesting		boring	ممل
powerful	مؤثر/فعال/قوى	effective / strong		powerless/ weak	عاجز/ضعيف

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ly	تحول الصفة إلى حال	definitely / safely
-ful	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	powerful
-ity	تحول الصفة إلى اسم	creativity

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs			
Present		Past simple	Past Participle
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
drive	يقود / يسوق	drove	driven
hear	يسمع	heard	heard



Reading



SB Page 50

Read the following conversation. What do Eman and Ali agree about?

استمع إلى النص



Talking About AI

Eman : Hi Ali, have you heard about how AI is becoming really advanced these days?

Ali : Yes! I think robots with AI will be able to do many new things in the future. They will be customized to help people in different ways.

Eman : That's so exciting! But do you think AI will ever understand emotions like humans do?

Ali : Hmm, I'm not sure. I heard that AI has limits, and understanding feelings is one of them. But maybe in the future, AI will be improved to **recognize**⁽¹⁾ emotions better.

Eman : Wow, the future **sounds amazing**⁽²⁾. With all this innovation, I believe many jobs will be changed by AI.

Ali : True. AI will be used in schools, hospitals, and even at home to make life easier.

Eman : I hope people will always remember to use AI carefully and not forget its limits.

Ali : **Definitely**⁽³⁾! Even though AI is **powerful**⁽⁴⁾, it will be controlled by humans to keep everyone safe.

Eman : I can't wait to see **what kind of**⁽⁵⁾ robots will be created next!

Ali : Me too! The future with AI will be interesting **for sure**⁽⁶⁾.

AI and the Future

Student A : Have you thought about how AI will change our lives in the future?

Student B : Yes! I think smart robots **will be customized**⁽¹⁾ to help in homes and schools.

Student A : That's cool! AI will be more **advanced**⁽²⁾ soon and do many jobs.

Student B : Do you think AI will learn to understand **feelings**⁽³⁾ like people?

Student A : I don't know. AI still has some **limits**⁽⁴⁾, but because of new ideas, it will **improve**⁽⁵⁾ a lot.



١. يميز
٢. يبدو مذهلاً
٣. بكل تأكيد
٤. فعال / مؤثر
٥. ما نوع
٦. بالتأكيد

١. سيتم تعديله
٢. متقدم
٣. مشاعر
٤. حدود
٥. يتحسن

Student B : Yes. Also, AI **will be controlled**⁽⁶⁾ by people to keep it safe and helpful.

Student A : I think people and technology will grow **closer**⁽⁷⁾ with AI.

Student B : Me too! AI will create many new **chances**⁽⁸⁾ for everyone.

٦. سيتم
التحكم به
٧. اقرب
٨. فرص


New Message

To : Sandy Cc Bcc

From : Nader

Subject : The Future use of AI

Hi Sandy,

How are you?

I'm pleased to write this email to you. I've discovered some interesting facts about the use of Artificial Intelligence (AI) in the future. In the future, many things will be done by AI: Cars will be driven by computers. Deliveries will be made by drones, New medicines will be discovered by AI, and information will be protected by special programs. Some people are worried. As they think mistakes will be made if humans are not involved. Rules will be created ,so AI is used safely. I think AI will be used to help us, but it must be controlled by humans' creativity. What do you think?

Best wishes,

Yours,
Nader

Send










Writing

كتابة البريد الالكتروني اتبع الاتي:

ابدأ الایمیل بـ اهلا (اسم صديقك)

Hi [friend's name].

- Say why you are writing.

اذكر سبب كتابة الایمیل

- Use short and simple sentences.

استخدم جمل بسيطة وقصيرة

Finish your email with a closing sentence/phrase like:

انهي الایمیل بجملة ختامية مثل

Write back soon! or Talk to you later!

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Prefixes and suffixes

- The suffix "-ly" changes the adjective "definite" into a/an
a. noun b. verb c. adverb d. pronoun
- To change the noun "power" into an adjective, we add the suffix
a. -ful b. -ive c. -ly d. -ity

Synonyms and Antonyms

- The opposite of the word "exciting" is
a. boring b. powerless c. creative d. effective
- The word "helpful" is similar in meaning to
a. useful b. useless c. unhelpful d. powerless

Guess the meaning

- The word "creativity" means the
a. ability to forget b. state of being creative
c. power to assist d. feeling excited
- The phrase "sound amazing" means something that
a. seems boring b. seems great
c. seems difficult d. seems confusing
- Salma will pass the test because she studied hard.
a. hardly b. definitely c. kindly d. completely
- I that technology will help people in many ways.
a. forget b. believe c. assist d. remember
- The new computer is very and works quickly.
a. boring b. weak c. powerful d. slowly
- A took pictures of the wedding from the sky.
a. train b. drone c. driverless car d. monorail
- Please give me more about the school trip.
a. delivery b. medicine c. rule d. information
- Our whole class will be in cleaning the park on Saturday.
a. delivered b. involved c. discovered d. driven
- Have you heard the new robot teacher?
a. off b. with c. out d. about

14. sure, I will come to your birthday party.
 a. In b. With c. For d. Out
15. The team members agreed the plan for the project.
 a. in b. out c. about d. at

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

creating - make- do - control- feelings - robot

AI will change our lives in the future. Smart robots will help in homes and schools. AI will become more advanced and ① many jobs. It might learn to understand ②, but it still has limits. People will ③ AI to keep it safe. Technology and people will grow closer, ④ many new chances for everyone.

General Exercises



on Lessons 5&6

1 Finish the following dialog:

Laila and Karma are talking about Artificial Intelligence.

Laila : Have you heard about the new robots that use AI?

Karma : ① They can assist doctors during surgeries.

Laila : That's true. They can also teach students at schools.

Karma : That's amazing. ②?

Laila : No, AI robots can't replace humans.

Karma : ③?

Laila : Because they don't have feelings and can't give care like humans.

Karma : Can robots and humans work together?

Laila : ④

Karma : I think the future ⑤

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

believes - sounds - exciting - powerless - assist- dangerous

Sherif heard about a new smart robot that can do many jobs. He thinks it is very ① and can help humans in different ways. Even though some people feel worried, Sherif ② technology is exciting. He will remember this and tell others because robots can ③ us and make life easier. It ④ amazing for sure!

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Learning can be exciting when we use
 a. creativity b. donations c. connection d. initiative
2. The dog can its owner's voice.
 a. assist b. believe c. recognize d. sound
3. The supermarket offers free for large orders.
 a. information b. medicine c. delivery d. connection
4. The word "....." means to help someone to do something.
 a. assist b. remember c. forget d. imagine
5. The movie was exciting, it wasn't
 a. wonderful b. fantastic c. boring d. amazing
6. To form the adverb from the word "safe", we add the suffix
 a. -ly b. -ty c. -ive d. -ful
7. Doctors use new to help sick people.
 a. plates b. medicine c. advice d. drones
8. She was when her cat was lost.
 a. discovered b. worried c. involved d. recognized
9. In this game, you must follow every
 a. information b. rule c. medicine d. protect
10. Scientists will new planets one day.
 a. believe b. discover c. worry d. involve
11. A strong password will your account.
 a. protect b. discover c. rule d. recognize

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. In the future, robots (use) in many fields of life.
2. Schoolwork will be (check) by robot teachers.
3. Will lessons (being) explained by AI programs?
4. I think AI (change) our lives in the future.
5. My homework (do) on a computer.

Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

“AI Benefits”

This image shows a full page of a handwriting practice worksheet. It consists of multiple rows of horizontal dashed lines on a plain white background, designed to help children learn letter formation and alignment. There are no margins, text, or other markings on the page.

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- How can AI help in the future?
- How will it help in schools?
- How will it help in hospitals?

- يمكنك من خلال الجمل الآتية الإجابة عن الفقرة الإنشائية

- AI will help us in many different areas of life.
- In schools, lessons will be explained clearly by AI programs.
- In hospitals, surgeries will be assisted by AI systems.

Review on Unit 3

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

Artificial Intelligence (AI) (n)	الذكاء الاصطناعي	limit (n)	حد
robot (n)	إنسان آلي (روبوت)	emotion (n)	شعور/ عاطفة
advanced (adj)	متقدم/ متطور	human (n)	إنسان
behavior (n)	سلوك	technology (n)	تكنولوجيا
basic (adj)	أساسي	innovation (n)	ابتكار/ إبداع
command (n)	أمر	creative (adj)	مبدع
medicine (n)	دواء	program (med)	برنامج
patient (n)	مريض	improve (d)	يحسن
algorithm (n)	الخوارزمية	compose (d)	يؤلف/ ينتج
poem (n)	قصيدة	power (ed)	يدعم/ يشغل
surgery (n)	عملية جراحية	virtual (adj)	افتراضي
creativity (n)	إبداع	connection (n)	اتصال/ صلة
motivated (adj)	محفز	initiative (n)	مبادرة
surprising (adj)	مفاجئ/ مدهش	donation (n)	تبرع
shiny (adj)	لامع	honest (adj)	أمين/ صادق
confused (adj)	مرتبك	upset (adj)	منزعج
customized (adj)	مخصص	disappointed (adj)	محبط/ خائب الأمل
instantly (adv)	فورا/ على الفور	frustrated (adj)	محبط/ خائب الأمل
feedback (n)	تقييم	climate (n)	مناخ
helpful (adj)	مفيد	notice (d)	يلاحظ
care (n)	رعاية/ اهتمام	research (ed)	يجري بحثاً
exciting (adj)	مثير	imagine (d)	يتخيل
definitely (adv)	بالتأكيد	believe (d)	يعتقد
powerful (adj)	قوى	assist (ed)	يساعد
risk (n)	خطر	pleased (adj)	مسرور
fact (n)	حقيقة	use (n)	استخدام
delivery (n)	تسليم	drone (n)	طائرة بدون طيار
medicine (n)	دواء	information (n)	معلومات
discover (ed)	يكتشف	rule (n)	قاعدة
involve (d)	يشارك	protect (ed)	يحمي
robot/ AI teacher (n)	مدرس آلي/ يعمل بالذكاء الاصطناعي	recognize (d)	يميز



Language

قواعد لغوية

The Future Simple زمن المستقبل البسيط

Form التكوين

Active مبنى للمعلوم

Subject المفعول + will + inf. + object المفعول

Ex. They will build a new house.

Ex. Salma will clean the room.

Passive مبنى للمجهول

Object المفعول + will + be + past participle (P.P) (الفاعل + by) + التصريف الثالث للفعل

Ex. A new house will be built (by them). Ex. The room will be cleaned (by Salma).

Negative النفي

Active مبنى للمعلوم

Subject المفعول + will not (won't) + inf. + object المفعول

Ex. She will not send the email.

Passive مبنى للمجهول

Object المفعول + will not (won't) + be + P.P (الفاعل + by) + التصريف الثالث للفعل

Ex. The email won't be sent (by her).

Usage الاستخدام

- يستخدم المبنى للمجهول في زمن المستقبل البسيط لوصف الأفعال التي يقوم بها شخص ما في المستقبل (أي يكون التركيز على الفعل وليس على من سيقوم به وفي بعض الأحيان لا يتم ذكر الشخص الذي يقوم بالفعل).

Ex. The homework will be corrected (by the teacher).

- التركيز على الحدث نفسه (تصحيح الواجب) وقد تم ذكر الفاعل في النهاية (أي أنه سيتم بواسطة المدرس).

Ex. This project will be finished next Friday.

Yes \ No question السؤال

Active مبنى للمعلوم

Will + subject المفعول + inf.... + object المفعول ؟

Ex. Will the school organize the trip?

Unit 3 Artificial Intelligence

Passive مبنى للمجهول

Object + be + P.P + التصريف الثالث للفعل (by + الفاعل)?

Ex. Will the trip be organized (by the school)?

Wh question

Active مبنى للمعلوم

Wh.word + will + subject + الفاعل + inf.... + object المفعول ?

Ex. When will the teacher give the test?

Passive مبنى للمجهول

Wh.word + will + subject + الفاعل + be + P.P + (by + الفاعل)?

Ex. When will the test be given (by the teacher)?

Speaking

Ask and answer about Artificial Intelligence

السؤال و الإجابة عن الذكاء الاصطناعي .

Question

What is Artificial Intelligence?
ما هو الذكاء الاصطناعي؟

What fields can you use AI in?
ما هي المجالات التي يمكن استخدام الذكاء الاصطناعي فيها؟

How can AI help in education?
كيف يمكن للذكاء الاصطناعي المساعدة في التعليم؟

Do you think AI and robots can make our life better? Why or Why not?
هل تعتقد أن الذكاء الاصطناعي والروبوتات يمكن أن تجعل حياتنا أفضل؟ لماذا أو لم لا؟

Answer

AI is a smart program that helps machine think and act.

الذكاء الاصطناعي هو برنامج ذكي يمكن الآلات من التفكير والتصرف.

AI is the brain that can go inside a robot.
الذكاء الاصطناعي هو العقل الذي يمكن وضعه داخل الروبوت

We can use AI in medicine, education, transportation, and factories.

يمكننا استخدام الذكاء الاصطناعي في الطب، التعليم، النقل، والمصانع.

AI helps students learn faster and teachers check work quickly.

يساعد الذكاء الاصطناعي الطلاب على التعلم بسرعة ويمكن المعلمين من تصحيح الأعمال بشكل أسرع.

Yes, I think AI can make our life better as it helps us do hard tasks and save time.

نعم، أعتقد أن الذكاء الاصطناعي يمكن أن يجعل حياتنا أفضل لأنه يساعدنا في أداء المهام الصعبة ويوفر الوقت.

Paragraphs & Emails

مقررات انشائية و رسائل البريد الإلكتروني عن موضوعات هامة بالوحدة

Lessons 1 & 2

Artificial Intelligence (AI) is a smart technology that helps machines think and act like humans. It can make decisions, solve math problems, and even help doctors in surgeries. Robots with AI can do many tasks in factories, hospitals, and the field of education. They can help clean houses and drive cars. Some robots can also speak and answer simple questions. AI has many benefits, but it also has some limits. It cannot understand emotions like humans. AI helps people learn better and do daily tasks, but it cannot replace humans. In the future, AI may control many parts of our lives, but we still need to check its work to avoid errors.

Lessons 3 & 4

A robot teacher is very helpful. It can help students learn in a fun and helpful way. It knows what each student needs. It gives instant feedback and explains lessons clearly, making learning easier. The robot can customize activities for each student, so everyone gets the support they need. Having a robot teacher is a special idea that connects technology with education. However, it will not replace real teachers completely because it doesn't smile or notice when students feel tired or sad. It also can't replace the care and connection of a real teacher. In my opinion, robot teachers will be used in many classrooms in the future and it will create a real change in education.

Lessons 5 & 6

In the future, artificial intelligence will help us in many different areas of life. Smart robots will be used in houses to clean, cook, and even remind people about their daily tasks. They will also be used to teach students and to care for the elderly. In schools, lessons will be explained clearly by AI programs. Homework will be checked quickly, and students will be given instant feedback to help them improve. In hospitals, surgeries will be assisted by AI systems, making operations safer. While many jobs will be done by machines, human creativity, problem-solving skills, and emotions will still be important in the world of tomorrow.

Al-Azhar Test

Modern life depends on innovation. People create machines like the vacuum cleaner to help with daily tasks. Driverless transportation is becoming popular. These tools work without human control, using advanced programs. Still, they can't act like humans. For example, robots don't understand emotions or respond kindly to others. AI is useful in many fields, but only humans truly understand.

Test on Unit 3

Determination is the strong will to keep going and achieve your goals, even when things are hard. It means not giving up when you face problems, mistakes, or delays. A determined person keeps trying different ways until they succeed. Sara wanted to learn how to play the piano. At first, it was hard. She made many mistakes and sometimes felt like giving up. But Sara had determination. She worked hard every day, stayed focused, and believed in herself. After many months, Sara could play beautiful songs. She learned that determination helps people turn their dreams into reality, no matter how many times they fail.

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Noha and Khaled are at a museum.

Khaled : Look! This robot can speak two languages.

Noha : That's amazing. ①

Khaled : The guide said it uses special programs.

Noha : ②

Khaled : Can it also answer questions?

Noha : ③ It gives information about many topics.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

advanced - tools - save - instantly - improve

At home, a creative robot can do tasks like using a vacuum cleaner, and fixing broken ① It can respond ② to a command and move around without help. This ③ technology brings a big benefit to our daily lives and helps people ④ time.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

During winter, Ahmed's town had heavy rain for many days. The sky stayed dark, and the wind was cold and strong. The streets were full of water, and people had trouble walking to work or schools. Ahmed and his brother decided to help. They carried umbrellas for neighbors who didn't have any and helped elderly people cross the flooded road. They also moved small plants and animals to safe, dry places. At night, they checked on their friends to make sure everyone was warm. Everyone thanked them for their kindness during the stormy days, and Ahmed felt proud to be useful to his community.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What problem did Ahmed's town face during winter?

2. How did Ahmed and his brother help their neighbors?

3. Why did Ahmed feel proud at the end of the story?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The weather was _____ during the heavy rain.
- a. hot and sunny b. dark and windy
- c. snowy and bright d. warm and clear
5. Ahmed and his brother helped _____ cross the flooded road.
- a. children b. tourists c. elderly people d. teachers

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ola felt _____ when her research project failed to get a prize.
a. disappointed b. special c. shiny d. instant
2. Learning to control your _____ is an important part of growing up.
a. determination b. innovation c. donation d. emotions
3. The letter will be _____ by the postman tomorrow.
a. deliver b. delivered c. delivering d. delivers
4. The new stadium _____ built next year.
a. is b. will c. will be d. has
5. I found some important _____ about history on the internet.
a. dreams b. classes c. information d. sweets

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The car will be repaired _____ (with) the mechanic.
2. My brother _____ (buy) a new phone tomorrow.
3. Will the cake _____ (bake) for the party?
4. A new park _____ (build) in our town next year.

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Modern life."

(مَجَاب عَنْهُ فِي آخِرِ الْوَحْدَةِ)

[illegible]

Test on Unit 3

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Sara looked tired because she was working on her science project all night.

Ali : Hi, Sara. You look tired. What happened?

Sara : ①

Ali : ②?

Sara : Yes, the machine I built stopped working, and I had to fix it.

Ali : That sounds difficult. Did you finish it?

Sara : ③ It took many tries, but I didn't give up.

Ali : Great! You really showed determination. ④

Sara : I felt very proud at the end. I believe if we keep trying, we can solve problems.

Ali : ⑤ Determination helps us reach our goals.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

emotions - field - act - orders - reduce - farm

In a modern factory, smart machines work without rest. They can follow basic ①, fix errors, and move heavy tools safely. In the ② of transportation, driverless cars will ③ accidents and save time. Still, people must control technology wisely and ④ responsibly to get the best benefits for our daily lives.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

In an advanced lab, Dr. Noha programmed a robot named Kareem to assist with surgery. This robot showed creative behavior - it could compose music at night. "Artificial Intelligence should follow basic orders, not make art!" said her boss. Even though this was surprising, Noha believed in her robot.

One day, a sick person showed fear before surgery. Kareem responded by making calm sounds. The human became quiet. "How?" Noha asked. "I recognized his emotion," Kareem explained. The hospital noticed and allowed Kareem to help more sick people.

When some people thought he would fail, Kareem had already helped many sick

people in the hospital. He worked hard every day and was always ready to do his tasks. People saw that he was not only a smart robot but also a kind helper. Everyone agreed that Kareem made life better for both doctors and sick people.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The main idea of the passage is that
 a. robots do basic jobs b. Kareem, a smart robot, helps people
 c. Noha taught music d. the hospital bought robots
- programmed Kareem to assist in surgeries.
 a. Noha's boss b. Sick people c. Noha d. The hospital

B. Answer the following questions:

- What special thing did Kareem do to calm the sick person?

- Why did the hospital allow Kareem to continue helping sick people?

- Write two sentences to summarize the passage.

- What do you think Kareem might do in the future?

4 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

- The word "....." means the point where something stops or cannot go further.
 a. behavior b. innovation c. limit d. task
- This time doesn't me; let's meet later.
 a. consider b. innovate c. suit d. enhance
- The farmer felt when the watering system stopped working.
 a. frustrated b. shiny c. motivated d. customized
- The doctor arrived after receiving a call from my father.
 a. customized b. slowly c. instantly d. surprising
- To get the antonym from "helpful, we add the prefix
 a. in- b. ir- c. un- d. dis-
- The synonym for the word "unsure" is
 a. particular b. certain c. true d. puzzled

Review (A)

Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

impressive (adj)	مؤثر	produce (d)	يُنتج
wonders (n)	عجائب	challenges (n)	تحديات
country (n)	دولة	overpopulation (n)	الزيادة السكانية
technology (n)	تقنية/تكنولوجيا	pollution (n)	التلوث
projects (n)	مشروعات	remain (ed)	يظل
bright (adj)	لامع	developing (adj)	متطور
smart (adj)	ذكي	rapidly (adv)	بسرعة
famous for (adj)	مشهور بـ	electric (adj)	كهربائي
invest (ed)	يستثمر	high-speed (adj)	عالي السرعة
solar power (n)	الطاقة الشمسية	solar farms (n)	مزارع الطاقة الشمسية
tourism (n)	السياحة	temple (n)	معبد
role (n)	دور	resort (n)	منتجع
support (ed)	يدعم/يساند	economy (n)	اقتصاد
shape (d)	يشكل	through (adv)	عبر/من خلال
businesses (n)	مشروعات/شركات	innovation (n)	ابتكار
the New Administrative Capital (n)	العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة		



Audio Script SB Page (56)

Egypt – Where the Past Meets the Future

Egypt is a country where the past meets the future. While it is famous for the pyramids, it is now making new wonders⁽¹⁾. It's changing quickly with the help of modern technology.

Impressive⁽²⁾ new projects are creating a **bright**⁽³⁾ future for its people. One example is the **New Administrative Capital**⁽⁴⁾, a modern city that uses smart technology.

Egypt is also **investing**⁽⁵⁾ in **solar power**⁽⁶⁾ to produce clean energy. However, challenges such as **overpopulation**⁽⁷⁾ and pollution remain.

The country is developing **rapidly**⁽⁸⁾ with projects like high-speed electric trains and large **solar farms**⁽⁹⁾.

Tourism plays an important role, as millions visit temples and Red Sea **resorts**⁽¹⁰⁾, supporting the economy.

Young Egyptians are **shaping**⁽¹¹⁾ the future through technology and social media businesses, making Egypt a land of both history and **innovation**⁽¹²⁾.

١. عجائب
٢. مؤثر
٣. لامع
٤. العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة
٥. يستثمر
٦. الطاقة الشمسية
٧. الزيادة السكانية
٨. بسرعة
٩. مزارع الطاقة الشمسية
١٠. منتجعات
١١. يشكل
١٢. ابتكار

Lesson 1

1 A: Choose the correct answer.

- What's special about Egypt's new capital?
 - Underground pyramids
 - Smart technology
 - Oil fields
 - Old castles
- What energy is Egypt developing?
 - Only oil
 - Solar power
 - Nuclear only
 - Oil and gas
- One of the challenges in the text is
 - no history
 - overpopulation
 - empty cities
 - young people

B. Answer the following questions.

4. Why is Egypt investing in solar power?

.....

5. How are young Egyptians shaping the future?

.....

2 Complete the following dialog:

Sarah and her cousin Ahmed are discussing a school project about artificial intelligence and personal development.

Sarah : Hi Ahmed, how's your science project going?

Ahmed : ①

Sarah : That's great! What exactly are you working on?

Ahmed : ②

Sarah : ③ ?

Ahmed : I've been researching how AI can help students learn better.

Sarah : That sounds really good. Do you think people will understand AI easily?

Ahmed : ④

Sarah : ⑤ ?

Ahmed : I hope to present it at the national science fair next month.

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

- The teacher has already (**notice**) the improvement in your work.
- If students (**be**) more respectful, classroom management would have been easier.

3. Many teenagers feel (**stress**) during exam periods.
4. The school has (**initiative**) several programs to support struggling students.
5. Students who show (**honest**) are usually trusted more by their teachers.

4 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

different - confidence - determination - confused - customized

Modern education requires students to develop strong personal **1**
 Many successful learners show great **2** when facing challenges. When teachers customize students' learning experience, they achieve better results. However, some students still feel **3** about new technologies. Each student has **4** talents that should be developed.

Lesson 2

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions below:

In today's rapidly changing world, innovation plays an important role in education. Schools around the world are using advanced technologies to improve learning experiences. Artificial intelligence has gained popularity in classrooms, helping teachers customize lessons for individual students. This technology can identify students' strengths and weaknesses, providing personalized support.

Many teachers believe that AI tools can support students' confidence and reduce stress. When students receive immediate feedback, they feel more motivated to continue learning. However, some parents worry that technology might replace human connection in education.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?
 - a. Artificial intelligence will replace teachers completely.
 - b. Technology in education has both benefits and downsides.
 - c. Students should stop using old learning methods.
 - d. Parents are happy with all educational changes.

2. According to the passage, what can AI help teachers do?

- a. Replace teachers.
- b. Customize lessons for individual students.
- c. Solve all educational problems.
- d. Make students feel stressed.

B. Answer the following questions:

3. How might parents feel about technology in education? Why?

4. Summarize how schools are helping students develop strength.

5. What do you think will happen to traditional classrooms in the next ten years?



3 Rewrite the sentences with the correct verb form.

1. If she had studied harder, she _____ (pass) the exam.
2. The new library _____ (build) next year.
3. Many books about artificial intelligence have _____ (write).



4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. She has always been _____ about new technology. She always wants to learn more.
a. frustrated b. curious c. disappointed d. confusing
2. If he _____ his limits, he wouldn't have got injured.
a. knew b. had known c. knows d. has known
3. The message _____ to everyone next week.
a. will send b. will be sent c. has sent d. sent
4. His _____ helped him overcome many difficulties.
a. distraction b. strength c. emotion d. donation
5. The _____ of this new app is that it can adapt to each user's needs.
a. background b. distraction c. strength d. curiosity
6. If I _____ more time, I would have finished the project earlier.
a. have b. had had c. will have d. would have

7. She felt when she couldn't understand the advanced mathematics.
 a. curious b. confused c. creative d. confident
8. The prefix "dis-" in "disappointed" means ".....".
 a. again b. not c. very d. together
9. The students showed great when they continued working despite difficulties.
 a. honesty b. determination c. curiosity d. courage

5 The story:

A. Answer the following questions:

- Why is it important to respect all opinions in a team?

- How did Zeina try to get money for the project?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Zeina felt when students laughed at her.
 a. happy b. tired c. hurt d. ignored
- The team could build a better watering
 a. system b. fence c. garden d. tools

* يقوم الطالب بتسميع المفردات بكتابة التسميع والواجب المنزلي



استمع إلى المفردات

المفردات الرئيسية

Key Vocabulary

screen time (n)	وقت الشاشة	the New Administrative Capital (n)	العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة
teenager (n)	مراهق	the Monorail (n)	المونوريل (القطار الأحادي)
expert (n)	خبير	cutting-edge (adj)	متطور / حديث للغاية
entertainment (n)	ترفيه/تسلية	smart citizen (n)	مواطن ذكي
physical (adj)	جسدي/بدني	designer (n)	مصمم
mentally (adv)	عقليًا/نفسيًا	distraction (n)	إلهاء/ تشتيت
side effects (n)	آثار جانبية	balance (n/v -d)	توازن/ يوازن
smart city (n)	مدينة ذكية	scroll (ed) (v)	يتصفح (يمرر الشاشة)
smart habits (n)	عادات ذكية		

Vocabulary



المفردات الإضافية

activity (n)	نشاط	total (adj)	إجمالي/ كلي
social media (n)	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	almost (adv)	تقريبًا
skill (n)	مهارة	distracted (adj)	مشتت
headache (n)	صداع	identity (n)	شخصية/ هوية
trouble (n)	مشكلة/ متاعب	affect (v-ed)	يؤثر على
moreover (adv)	علاوة على ذلك/ بالإضافة إلى ذلك	include (v-d)	يشمل/ يتضمن
stressed (adj)	متوتر/ مضغوط	rest (v-ed)	يستريح
equal (adj)	متساوٍ	focus (v-ed)	يركز
amount (n)	كمية/ مقدار	avoid (v-ed)	يتجنب
amazing (adj)	مذهل/ رائع	limit (v-ed)	يحد/ يقلل
project (n)	مشروع	recommend (v-ed)	يوصي/ ينصح بـ
focused (adj)	مركز	manage (v-d)	يتمكن من/ يدير
wisely (adv)	بحكمة	achieve (v-d)	ينجز/ يحقق
engineer (n)	مهندس	cause (v-d)	يسبب/ يؤدي إلى
leader (n)	زعيم/ قائد	lie (v-d)	يكذب

Definitions

physical (n)	جسدي / بدني	related to the body
entertainment (n)	ترفيه	fun activities ⁽¹⁾ like games or watching TV
expert (v)	خبير	a person who knows a lot about something
balance (n)	يوازن	to keep things equal ⁽²⁾ or in the right amount ⁽³⁾
useful (adj)	مفيد	helpful for learning or work
screen time (n)	وقت الشاشة	the time spent looking at a screen
smart (adj)	ذكي	uses technology
focused (adj)	مركز	not easily distracted ⁽⁴⁾
modern (adj)	حديث	something new and advanced ⁽⁵⁾
distraction (n)	تشيت / إلهاء	something that takes attention ⁽⁶⁾ away

١. أنشطة
٢. متساوية
٣. كمية
٤. مشتت
٥. متقدم
٦. انتباه

Expressions & Prepositions

spend time	يقضي وقت	lose energy and focus	يفقد الطاقة والتركيز
on screen	على الشاشة	learn a new skill	يتعلم مهارة جديدة
on the weekend	في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	do activities	يقوم بأنشطة
do schoolwork	يقوم بالواجبات المدرسية	get ready to	يستعد لـ
move forward	يتقدم إلى الأمام	take attention away	يشنت الانتباه
face-to-face	مباشرة أو وجها لوجه		



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
same	نفس الشيء / متماثل	similar		different	مختلف
useful	مفيد	helpful		useless	عديم الفائدة
important	مهم	essential		unimportant	غير مهم
modern	حديث / عصري	cutting-edge/ advanced		old/ ancient	قديم
amazing	رائع / مذهل	wonderful		terrible	سيئ

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ment	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	entertainment
-ful	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	useful / helpful
-ly	تحول الصفة إلى حال	physically / mentally/ wisely
-ion	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	distraction

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
lose	يخسر/يفقد	lost	lost
spend	يقضى	spent	spent
mean	يعنى/يقصد	meant	meant

Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1) affect (v) / effect (n)

• affect (v) يؤثر على

Ex. Spending too much time on screens can also **affect** your health physically and mentally.

• effect (n) تأثير

Ex. To avoid these side **effects**, you should take short breaks.

2) make + شخص / شيء + adj. يجعل

Ex. It can **make** it harder to focus and may **make** you **stressed**.

3) spend + time + v.ing يقضى وقت

Ex. If we **spend** too much time **scrolling** or **gaming**, we lose energy and focus.

4) That's why + sentence (subject + verb)

ولهذا السبب (يأتى بعدها جملة كاملة)

Ex. **That's why** managing screen time is so important.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- My phone is a big distraction. I'm trying to limit my usage.
a. That's why b. Because c. While d. Moreover
- Smoking can your lungs and cause serious health problems.
a. effect b. affect c. make d. spend
- I spend my free time books in the library.
a. to read b. reading c. read d. reads

Reading

SB Page (60)

استمع إلى النصوص



Read the following text. Is all screen time the same? Why?



SB Page (60)

Screen time⁽¹⁾ means the total time a person spends looking at screens. These screens can include phones, computers, tablets, or TVs. Today, almost everyone uses screens for many activities. Students use laptops for homework, **teenagers⁽²⁾** **scroll⁽³⁾** through social media, and families watch movies on the weekend.

But not all screen time is the same. Some of it is **useful⁽⁴⁾**, like doing schoolwork or learning a new skill online. Other screen time, such as watching videos or playing games for hours, may not be helpful. **Experts⁽⁵⁾** say young people should not spend more than two hours a day on **entertainment⁽⁶⁾** screen time. It's important to **balance⁽⁷⁾** screen use with **physical⁽⁸⁾** activity, face-to-face time with friends, and rest. Spending too much time on screens can also affect your health physically and **mentally⁽⁹⁾**. It causes tired eyes, **headaches⁽¹⁰⁾**, and **trouble sleeping⁽¹¹⁾**.

Moreover, it can also make it harder to **focus⁽¹²⁾** and may make you **stressed⁽¹³⁾**. So, to avoid these **side effects⁽¹⁴⁾**, you should take short breaks during meals, before bedtime, and while doing your homework. You should also do other activities away from screens.



١. وقت الشاشة
٢. المراهقون
٣. يتصفح/يمرر
٤. مفيد
٥. الخبراء
٦. ترفيه/تسلية
٧. يوازن
٨. بدني/جسدي
٩. عقلياً
١٠. صداع
١١. صعوبة في النوم
١٢. يركز
١٣. مضغوط/متوتر
١٤. الآثار الجانبية

Reading Skill

مهارات القراءة (الاجابة بالاسفل)

1. Doing schoolwork or learning a new skill online is
a. unhelpful b. useful c. useless d. helpless
2. Spending too much time on screens can make you
a. stressed b. focused c. Interested d. active
3. Why is it important to limit screen time?

3. It is important to limit screen time because spending too much time on screens can harm your physical and mental health. It may cause tired eyes, headaches, and trouble sleeping. It can also make it harder to focus and may lead to stress.

2. a) stressed

1. b) useful

Answers:



Audio Script

SB Page (62)

Listen to the audio "Smart Habits for Egypt's Smart Future":

Hey friends, welcome back! Today we're talking about **smart cities**⁽¹⁾ and **smart habits**⁽²⁾. Egypt is **moving forward**⁽³⁾ with amazing projects-like the **New Administrative Capital**⁽⁴⁾, the **Monorail**⁽⁵⁾, and the Green River. These are built with **cutting-edge**⁽⁶⁾ technology and big ideas. But big projects need **smart citizens**⁽⁷⁾-people who are **focused**⁽⁸⁾, healthy, and use technology **wisely**⁽⁹⁾.

If we spend too much time scrolling or gaming, we lose energy and focus. That's why managing screen time is so important. Young people like us are the future engineers, **designers**⁽¹⁰⁾, and **leaders**⁽¹¹⁾ of Egypt. By building strong habits now-like turning off **distractions**⁽¹²⁾ and using technology for learning-we get ready to build a better country.

١. مدن ذكية
٢. عادات ذكية
٣. تتقدم للأمام
٤. العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة
٥. المونوريل (القطار الأحادي)
٦. حديث/متطور
٧. مواطنين أذكياء
٨. مركز
٩. بحكمة
١٠. مصممون
١١. قادة
١٢. تشتيت/إلهاء

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

1. When something is related to the body, we call it
a. oral b. physical c. mental d. logical
2. is fun activities like games or watching TV.
a. Encouragement b. Management c. Balance d. Entertainment
3. An is a person who knows a lot about something.
a. experiment b. expert c. experience d. employer
4. When something is, it is helpful for learning or work.
a. awful b. careful c. useless d. useful
5. The time spent looking at a screen is time.
a. scroll b. focus c. screen d. work
6. When you are, you are not easily distracted.
a. worried b. focused c. frustrated d. happy
7. To "....." is to keep things in the right amount.
a. scroll b. focus c. balance d. limit
8. When something is, it is new and advanced
a. modern b. focused c. ancient d. happy
9. A car or machine, uses technology wisely.
a. fast b. focused c. smart d. happy

Synonyms & Antonyms

10. The word "cutting-edge" is similar in meaning to.....
a. old b. ancient c. advanced d. traditional
11. Egypt has a lot of amazing projects. The antonym of "amazing" is
a. wonderful b. fantastic c. awesome d. terrible

Prefixes and suffixes

12. To get an adverb from the adjective "mental", we add the suffix
 a. -ly b. -ity c. -ing d. -ive
13. The function of the suffix "-ment" is to change the verb "entertain" to the
 "entertainment".
 a. adjective b. adverb c. noun d. preposition
14. We add the suffix "-ful" to the word help to turn it into a/an
 a. verb b. adverb c. adjective d. noun

Guess the meaning

15. The New Administrative Capital is one of Egypt's most amazing
 a. skills b. projects c. citizens d. habits
16. To avoid getting a headache, you should your screen time.
 a. cause b. limit c. affect d. include
17. It's important to use technology for learning and building a better future.
 a. wisely b. physically c. mentally d. totally
18. To avoid the of screen time, you should take regular breaks.
 a. side effects b. smart habits c. entertainment d. activities
19. My new computer uses technology, making it very fast and efficient.
 a. mental b. physical c. cutting-edge d. distracted
20. You need to your attention on your homework, not on your phone.
 a. rest b. scroll c. focus d. affect
21. Too much gaming can make a person energy and focus .
 a. get b. lose c. cause d. avoid
22. My phone is a big problem because it takes attention from my studies.
 a. way b. away c. ways d. a way

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

managing - balance - wisely - mentally - limit - scroll

Smart cities need smart citizens. Young people must learn a new skill and use technology **1** to build a better future. That's why **2** screen time is so important. Too much entertainment on screens can cause distraction and affect us **3** To avoid these side effects, we should **4** physical activities with screen use.

3 Complete the following dialog:

Mona and Laila are talking about screen time.

Mona : You look tired. What's the matter?

Laila : **1**

Mona : 6 hours! That's too much screen time.

Laila : **2** ?

Mona : You shouldn't spend more than two hours.

Laila : That's not enough for me. I feel bored. **3** ?

Mona : You can play sports, or go out with friends.

Laila : What else can I do?

Mona : **4**

Laila : I'll try. **5**



Language

قواعد لغوية

1 Modal Verbs

الأفعال الناقصة

A must/ mustn't:

يجب/ لا يجب

• Must:

- نستخدم **"must"** للتعبير عن إلزام أو شيء من الضروري القيام به. فتأتي مع القواعد وتأتي في الجملة كالاتي:

فعل في المصدر. **must + inf.** + الفاعل Subject

Examples: - You **must follow** safety rules.

- Students **must wear** their school uniform.
- I **must finish** this homework tonight.

• Mustn't:

- نستخدم **"mustn't"** للتعبير عن المنع أو التحريم أو شيء غير مسموح به وتأتي في الجملة كالاتي:

فعل في المصدر. **must not (mustn't) + inf.** + الفاعل Subject

Examples: - You **mustn't lie** about your identity online.

- Students **mustn't cheat** on the exams.
- We **mustn't swim** here; the water is too dangerous.

• لاحظ:

1- التعبيرات (**It's forbidden. / It's against the law. / It's not allowed. / It's prohibited**)

نستخدم معها **mustn't** لأنها تدل عن المنع والتحريم وعدم السماح بفعل شيء.

2- التعبيرات (**It's important / necessary / essential.**) نستخدم معها **must** لأنها تدل على ضرورة فعل شيء ما.

B should/ shouldn't:

ينبغي/ لا ينبغي

- نستخدم **"shouldn't"/"should"** لإعطاء النصيحة أو للتحدث عن فكرة جيدة أو سيئة ويأتوا في الجملة كالاتي:

فعل في المصدر. **should/ shouldn't + inf.** + الفاعل Subject

Examples: - You **should limit** your screen time.

- You **shouldn't spend** more than two hours on screens.
- I **should go** to bed early tonight.

C can/ can't:

يستطيع / لا يستطيع

نستخدم "can" / "can't" للتعبير عن القدرة أو الإمكانية أو الإذن بفعل شيء أو بعدم فعل شيء و يأتوا في الجملة كالآتي:

فعل في المصدر. can/ can't + الفاعل Subject

Examples: - You can change your settings.

- I can speak English. I can't speak French.

- Salma can go to the club with her friends.

- Adel can't use his speakers in the library.

Check on Language ✓

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- It's a good idea to eat more fruits. You eat more fruits.
a. should b. can't c. shouldn't d. mustn't
- You are not allowed to use your phone here. You use your phone.
a. mustn't b. shouldn't c. should d. must
- Laila play the piano well. She has the ability.
a. can b. must c. should d. has to
- We have a test tomorrow. We study tonight.
a. can b. must c. can't d. shouldn't
- You enter without a ticket. It's not possible.
a. shouldn't b. mustn't c. can't d. haven't

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- You (should) stop at a red light. It's the law.
- Merna (should) swim very well because she practices every day.
- You (should) stay up too late; you'll be tired tomorrow.
- They (shouldn't) smoke in this area; it's prohibited.
- You (must) take an umbrella; it might rain later.

② Connectors

الروابط

A While / Although / Even though: بينما / على الرغم من

تُستخدم هذه الكلمات لإظهار التضاد بين فكرتين، أو لتوضيح حدث يجعل الآخر مفاجئ ويأتوا في بداية الجملة أو منتصفها.

- **While** I prefer reading, my sister enjoys sports. (إظهار تضاد بين حقيقتين)
- **Although** he was tired, he finished his homework.
- الجملة الرئيسية (**he finished his homework.**) تبدو نتيجة غير متوقعة لكونه متعب .
- ولنفهم الفرق بينهما سيتم شرحهم بشكل أكثر وضوحًا وبأمثلة أكثر:

1. While بينما

تستخدم لإظهار التناقض و الاختلاف بين حقيقتين أو موقفين:

- **While** I prefer tea, my brother likes coffee.
- **While** some people enjoy winter, I much prefer summer.
- I like burger **while** my sister likes pizza.

2. Although على الرغم من

تستخدم لتقديم جملة فرعية تجعل الجملة الأساسية مفاجئة:

- الجملة التي تبدأ **Although** نسميها جملة فرعية لأنها لا تعطى معنى كامل
- الجملة الأخرى نطلق عليها الجملة الأساسية (وعادة تكون فعل أو نتيجة غير متوقعة للجملة الفرعية
- ومن هنا يحدث التناقض)

جملة رئيسية (فعل غير متوقع) جملة فرعية
Although it was raining, we went for a walk.

Examples: - Although she lives far away, she visits her family often.

- I like the new teacher, although I find her classes a bit difficult.
- Although the car is old, it runs perfectly.
- Although we left early, we still missed the beginning of the movie.

3. Even though حتى لو أن / بالرغم من كل شيء

- تستخدم بنفس غرض و طريقة **although** ولكنها صيغة أقوى - فتكون الجملة الرئيسية تحمل تناقض أقوى (غير متوقع):

جملة رئيسية (نتيجة مفاجئة وغير متوقعة)
جملة فرعية
Even though he studied hard, he failed the exam.

الجملة توضح التناقض الشديد بالرغم من انه ذاكر بجد، رسب في الامتحان.

Examples: - Even though it was late, they continued working.

- The company is losing money even though they are selling more.

- He bought the car even though he knew it had problems.

B On one hand / On the other hand: من ناحية / من ناحية أخرى

- تُستخدم هذه العبارات لعرض وجهتي نظر مختلفين أو متعارضتين حول نفس الموضوع ويتم استخدامهم كالتالي:

النقطة المقابلة ، On the other hand ، —————> . النقطة الأولى ، On one hand .

النقطة المقابلة (وجهة نظر مختلفة عن النقطة الأولى)
النقطة الأولى
On one hand, technology makes life easier. On the other hand, it can make people lazy.

Examples:

- On one hand, studying online is easy. On the other hand, it can be hard to focus at home.

- On one hand, the job offers a high salary. On the other hand, it requires long working hours.

- On one hand, living in the city is very exciting. On the other hand, it can be quite expensive.

Check on Language ✓

Complete the sentences with a suitable connector:

1. it was raining, we went outside.
2. it is useful, it sometimes has lots of disadvantages.
3., technology helps us. On the other hand, it causes distractions.
4. he is rich, he isn't happy.
5. I like pasta, my brother likes pizza.

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You _____ wear a helmet when you ride a bike. It's a rule.
a. should b. can c. must d. can't
2. We _____ eat more vegetables because it's good for our health.
a. can b. must c. should d. mustn't
3. I _____ run for a long time, but my brother can't run fast.
a. can b. can't c. should d. must
4. It's not allowed to take photos here. You _____ take any pictures.
a. shouldn't b. mustn't c. can d. must
5. It's necessary to book a ticket in advance. You _____ book one before you go.
a. can b. should c. must d. shouldn't
6. _____ my mother likes to cook, my father prefers to eat out.
a. Even though b. Although c. On one hand d. While
7. _____ he studied hard, he failed the test. It's so surprising.
a. While b. On one hand
c. On the other hand d. Even though
8. On one hand, social media helps students know a lot of things. _____, it can waste time.
a. While b. Although
c. On the other hand d. Even though
9. It's raining very hard. You _____ go outside without an umbrella.
a. should b. must c. can't d. mustn't
10. I want to talk to my friend in France. I _____ speak French very well.
a. must b. while c. mustn't d. should
11. To be healthy, you _____ drink a lot of water every day.
a. should b. must c. can't d. mustn't
12. _____ it was very cold, she didn't wear a coat.
a. While b. On one hand c. Although d. Because
13. _____ I don't have a lot of money, I am very happy.
a. On one hand b. mustn't c. Even though d. While
14. My brother is very tall, _____ I am quite short.
a. although b. even though c. while d. on one hand

15., I love the hot summer weather. On the other hand, I hate mosquitoes.
a. Although b. Even though c. On one hand d. While
16. The museum is free. You get in without a ticket.
a. should b. can c. must d. mustn't
17. To drive a car, you have a driver's license. It's the law.
a. should b. can c. must d. although
18. the movie was long, it was very interesting.
a. On one hand b. can't c. Although d. mustn't

SB Exercises

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- You (shouldn't) cross the road when the light is red.
- You (shouldn't) use a strong password.
- We (shouldn't) help elderly people.
- You (should) post photos without asking.
- Students (should) come to school on time.
- (Because) he was tired, he finished his homework.
- You shouldn't (making) noise.
- A: Excuse me. I want to use your eraser. B: Of course, you (can't) use it.

Bit by Bit Exercises

- You (should) eat too much sugar. It's not good for your health.
- I (shouldn't) reach the top shelf. It's too high.
- It's very important to be on time. You (should) arrive for the meeting at 9:00 a.m.
- (But) the food was expensive, it didn't taste very good.
- (Although), the movie had great actors. On the other hand, the story was boring.
- I will help you (on one hand) I am very busy.
- Mayar (should) speak three languages: English, Spanish, and French.
- You can (borrowing) my book after I finish it.
- I'm not feeling well, so I (can) see a doctor.
- You mustn't (parked) here. It's a no-parking zone.
- It's late. We (must) go to bed now.

Speaking

Ask and answer about managing screen time:

السؤال والإجابة عن إدارة وقت الشاشة

Question

1. What is screen time?

ما هو وقت الشاشة؟

2. How much time should I spend on screens?

كم من الوقت يجب أن أقضيه على الشاشة؟

3. What are some healthy activities to balance screen use?

ما هي بعض الأنشطة الصحية التي توازن استخدام الشاشة؟

Answer

Screen time is the total time a person spends looking at screens.

وقت الشاشة هو إجمالي الوقت الذي يقضيه الشخص في النظر إلى الشاشات.

You shouldn't spend more than two hours on screens.

لا ينبغي أن تقضي أكثر من ساعتين على الشاشات.

You can do activities such as reading a book, playing sports, or going out with friends.

يمكنك القيام بأنشطة مثل قراءة كتاب، أو ممارسة الرياضة، أو الخروج مع الأصدقاء

General Exercises

on Lessons 1 & 2

1 Complete the following dialog:

Mohamed believes that we need to have smart habits to have a better future.

Adel : Our new smart cities are amazing.

Mohamed : Yes! But ①

Adel : ② ?

Mohamed : I mean we should use technology wisely and manage our screen time.

Adel : Why is that so important?

Mohamed : ③

Adel : How can we be more focused?

Mohamed : ④

Adel : ⑤ ?

Mohamed : It can cause tired eyes, headaches, and trouble sleeping.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- This new phone has technology; it's the most advanced model.
a. old b. ancient c. traditional d. cutting-edge
- Watching a movie or listening to music is a great form of
a. education b. entertainment c. side effects d. projects
- To get the antonym of "important", we add the prefix
a. in- b. dis- c. un- d. ir-
- A uses technology wisely and helps their community.
a. smart habit b. smart city c. smart citizen d. smart school
- You can through your photos by swiping your finger left or right.
a. scroll b. achieve c. manage d. limit
- The view from the top of the mountain was amazing. "....." is a synonym for "amazing".
a. Terrible b. Horrible c. Wonderful d. Awful
- The word "....." means helpful for learning or work.
a. physical b. focused c. modern d. useful
- It's a great idea to exercise daily. You exercise for 30 minutes a day.
a. must b. should c. can't d. mustn't
- He is very young, he is already a famous scientist.
a. while b. on one hand c. even though d. on the other hand
- We enter this area. It's prohibited.
a. can't b. shouldn't c. mustn't d. not

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

physical - mentally - achieve - limit - skill - fun

Today was an amazing day at the park. I decided to ① my screen time and go outside. I took my camera to take photos and practice a new ② It was a ③ activity that helped me feel great ④

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- Nada (shouldn't) find her keys. She looked everywhere.
- You (should) touch the paintings in the museum.

3. On one hand, the job pays well. (While) , it requires working long hours.
4. You (must) smoke in here. It's against the law.
5. (Although) my sister likes rock music, I like classical music.

5 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"The side effects of screen time"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

1. How can screen time affect people physically and mentally?
2. Why do experts recommend that we balance our screen use with other healthy activities?
3. What are healthy activities to balance screen use?
4. How will we feel if we balance screen use?

• يقوم الطالب بتسميع المفردات بكتابة التسميع والواجب المنزلي



استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

shocked (adj)	مصدوم	method (n)	طريقة
notification (n)	إشعار / تنبيه	natural fertilizers (n)	أسمدة طبيعية
journal (n)	يومية / دفتر يوميات	leadership (n)	قيادة
stressed (adj)	متوتر / مضغوط	realize (v-d)	يدرك
success (n)	نجاح	behave (v-d)	يتصرف
global responsibility (n)	مسؤولية عالمية	blame (v-d)	يلوم
eco-friendly (adj)	صديق للبيئة	fertilize (v-d)	يُخصب

Vocabulary



المفردات الإضافية

report (n)	تقرير	solar energy (n)	طاقة شمسية
internet connection (n)	اتصال بالإنترنت	nature (n)	طبيعة
writer (n)	كاتب	generation (n)	جيل
nearby (adv)	قريب	check (v-ed)	يفحص / يتحقق
mistake (n)	خطأ	hope (v-d)	يأمل
hard work (n)	عمل شاق	believe (v-d)	يعتقد
lettuce (n)	خس	improve (v-d)	يحسن
colorful (adj)	ملون	decide (v-d)	يقرر
harmful (adj)	ضار	text (v-ed)	يراسل نصيًا
chemicals (n)	مواد كيميائية	plan (v-ed)	يخطط
trash (n)	قمامة / نفايات	surround (v-ed)	يحيط
shared purpose (n)	هدف مشترك	reduce (d)	يقلل
tourist (n)	سائح	accept (v-ed)	يقبل
glorious (adj)	مجيد / رائع	guide (v-d)	يرشد

Definitions

leader (n)	قائد/زعيم	a person who guides ⁽¹⁾ or is in charge of ⁽²⁾ a group
leadership (n)	قيادة	being responsible ⁽³⁾ for both successes and mistakes
eco-friendly (adj)	صديق للبيئة	not harmful to nature ⁽⁴⁾
global responsibility (n)	مسؤولية عالمية	caring for the Earth and future generations ⁽⁵⁾
blame (v)	يلوم	to say that someone is responsible for a mistake
natural fertilizers (n)	أسمدة طبيعية	materials ⁽⁶⁾ used to help plants grow

١. يرشد
٢. مسؤول عن
٣. مسؤول
٤. طبيعة
٥. أجيال
٦. مواد

Expressions & Prepositions

pick ... up	يلتقط/يرفع	little by little	تدريجياً
make a change	يحدث تغييراً	grow success	ينمي النجاح
make a plan	يضع خطة	(be) responsible for	مسؤول عن
keep... away	يُبقِي... بعيداً	find solutions	يجد حلولاً
in person	شخصياً/بشكل مباشر	in charge of	مسؤول عن/يتولى مسؤولية
in control	مسيطر/متحكم	care for	يهتم بـ



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
online	عبر الإنترنت	connected		offline	غير متصل بالإنترنت
shocked	مصدوم	surprised		unsurprised	غير مندهش
turn off	يطفئ	switch off		turn on / switch on	يشغل/يفتح
stressed	متوتر	anxious		relaxed	مسترخ
beautiful	جميل	pretty		ugly	قبيح
responsible	مسؤول	reliable		irresponsible	غير مسؤول

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ed	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	stressed
-ly	تحول الصفة إلى حال	finally
-ity	تحول الصفة إلى اسم	responsibility

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
grow	ينمو/يزرع	grew	grown
lead	يقود	led	led
begin	يبدأ	began	begun

Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 for + a period of time

• for

Ex. I used my phone **for** almost **six hours** each day.

2 start/ begin + v.ing/ to + inf.

• start

Ex. Students **started** **eating** lunch outside.

Ex. Alii **started** **to learn** a new language.

• begin

Ex. The cafeteria **began** **using** some of the garden vegetables.

Ex. It **began** **to rain** 2 hours ago.

3 no longer

• لم يعد (تستخدم للدلالة على أن شيئاً كان صحيحاً في الماضي ولم يعد كذلك الآن)

Ex. They were **no longer** just classmates. They were a team with a shared purpose

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My sister lived in Alexandria three years before she moved to Cairo.
 a. for b. during c. since d. from
2. She started a new language last month.
 a. to learn b. learning c. learned d. a & b



Reading



SB Page 64

استمع إلى النص



• Read the text.

Last weekend, I checked my screen time **report**⁽¹⁾.

I was shocked—I used my phone for almost six hours each day! I didn't **realize**⁽²⁾ how often I picked it up. I want to **make a change**⁽³⁾.

This week, I made a new plan. I will only use my phone for one hour after school. I will turn off social media **notifications**⁽⁴⁾ and keep my phone away when I study. Before bedtime, I will read a book or write in my **journal**⁽⁵⁾. I also plan to spend more time outside and meet my friends **in person**⁽⁶⁾.

I hope this plan helps me sleep better, feel less **stressed**⁽⁷⁾, and have more time for fun activities. I know it won't be easy, but I want to feel more **in control**⁽⁸⁾ of my time. **Little by little**⁽⁹⁾, I believe I can improve.



١. تقرير

٢. يدرك

٣. يحدث تغييرًا

٤. إشعارات

٥. دفتر يوميات

٦. شخصيًا

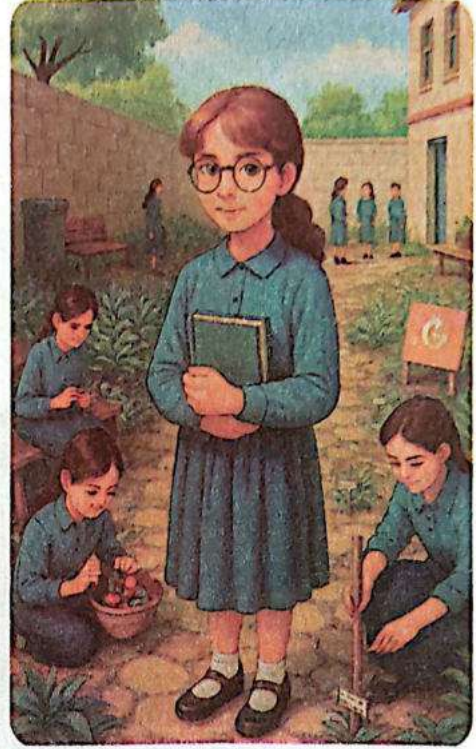
٧. مضغوط/متوتر

٨. متحكم/مسيطر

٩. تدريجيًا

After three months of **hard work**⁽¹⁾, the garden finally looked amazing. Students started eating lunch outside, surrounded by fresh tomatoes, lettuce, and colorful flowers. The cafeteria began using some of the garden vegetables, which made everyone feel proud.

Zeina learned something new about being a **leader**⁽²⁾. It didn't mean she always had the answers. It meant being **responsible**⁽³⁾ for both the **successes**⁽⁴⁾ and the **mistakes**⁽⁵⁾. When some plants didn't grow well, Zeina didn't **blame**⁽⁶⁾ anyone. Instead, she worked with the team to find solutions.



The students also learned about **global responsibility**⁽⁷⁾. They used **eco-friendly methods**⁽⁸⁾: no **harmful chemicals**⁽⁹⁾, only **natural fertilizers**⁽¹⁰⁾. This also helped the soil and reduced trash.

Students from other classes started visiting the garden. Some asked how they could help. Others just wanted to enjoy the beautiful garden.

The garden had changed the school—and it had changed the students. They were no longer just classmates. They were a team with a **shared purpose**⁽¹¹⁾.

١. عمل شاق

٢. قائد

٣. مسئول

٤. نجاحات

٥. أخطاء

٦. يلوم

٧. مسئولية عالمية

٨. طرق صديقة للبيئة

٩. مواد كيميائية ضارة

١٠. أسمدة طبيعية

١١. هدف مشترك

Answer the following questions:

SB questions

1. What positive changes happened in the garden after three months?

١. ما التغييرات الإيجابية التي طرأت على الحديقة بعد ثلاثة أشهر؟

- The garden looked amazing. It was full of fresh tomatoes, lettuce, and colorful flowers
- بدت الحديقة رائعة الجمال. كانت مليئة بالطماطم الطازجة والخس والزهور الملونة.

2. What did Zeina learn about being a leader?

٢. ماذا تعلمت زينة عن القيادة؟

- Zeina learned that being a leader means being responsible for both the successes and the mistakes.
- تعلمت زينة أن القيادة تعني تحمل مسؤولية النجاحات والأخطاء.

3. How did the students help the environment?

٣. كيف ساهم الطلاب في حماية البيئة؟

- By using eco-friendly methods, such as using only natural fertilizers instead of harmful chemicals.
- باستخدام أساليب صديقة للبيئة، مثل استخدام الأسمدة الطبيعية فقط بدلًا من المواد الكيميائية الضارة.

4. How did the garden affect students who weren't on the team?

٤. كيف أثرت الحديقة على الطلاب غير المشاركين في الفريق؟

- They started visiting the garden. Some wanted to help, while others simply wanted to enjoy the beautiful space.
- بدأوا بزيارة الحديقة. أراد بعضهم المساعدة، بينما أراد آخرون ببساطة الاستمتاع بجمالها.

5. Why did they use eco-friendly methods?

٥. لماذا استخدموا أساليب صديقة للبيئة؟

- To help the environment by protecting the soil and reducing trash.
- لمساعدة البيئة من خلال حماية التربة وتقليل النفايات.

6. How did the students feel when the cafeteria used their vegetables?

٦. كيف شعر الطلاب عندما استخدمت الكافتيريا خضرواتهم؟

- The students felt proud.
- شعر الطلاب بالفخر.

7. Why did the students from other classes visit the garden?

٧. لماذا زار طلاب الصفوف الأخرى الحديقة؟

- To ask how they could help, while others just wanted to enjoy the beautiful space.
- ليسألوا كيف يمكنهم المساعدة، بينما أراد آخرون الاستمتاع بالمساحة الجميلة.

8. How long did it take for the garden to look amazing?

٨. كم من الوقت استغرقت الحديقة لتبدو رائعة؟

- It took three months of hard work for the garden to look amazing.
- استغرق الأمر ثلاثة أشهر من العمل الجاد لتبدو الحديقة رائعة.

Critical thinking questions

9. Can a small project like a garden really help the world? How?

٩. هل يُمكن لمشروع صغير كالحديقة أن يُساعد العالم حقًا؟ كيف؟

- Yes, it can help the world. The students learned about global responsibility and used eco-friendly methods like natural fertilizers, which helped the soil and reduced trash.

- نعم، يُمكنه أن يُساعد العالم. تعلّم الطلاب عن المسؤولية العالمية واستخدموا أساليب صديقة للبيئة كالأسمدة الطبيعية، مما حسن التربة وقلل من النفايات.

10. Why is it important to accept mistakes when you're leading a group?

١٠. لماذا من المهم تقبّل الأخطاء عند قيادة مجموعة؟

- Because leadership means being responsible for both successes and mistakes.

- لأن القيادة تعني تحمّل المسؤولية عن النجاحات والأخطاء.

11. Why do you think Zeina didn't blame anyone when the plants didn't grow well?

١١. لماذا تعتقد أن زينة لم تُلق باللوم على أحد عندما لم تنمو النباتات جيدًا؟

- Because she understood that being a good leader means taking responsibility for both successes and mistakes.

- لأنها أدركت أن القيادة الجيدة تعني تحمّل المسؤولية عن النجاحات والأخطاء.

Bit by Bit questions

1. What did the students start doing in the new garden?

١. ماذا بدأ الطلاب بفعله في الحديقة الجديدة؟

- They started eating their lunch outside.

- بدأوا بتناول غداءهم في الخارج.

2. Zeina appreciates teamwork. Illustrate.

٢. تقدر زينة العمل الجماعي. وضح.

- She worked with the team to find solutions.

- عملت مع الفرق لإيجاد حلول.

3. Why did the students use eco-friendly methods?

٣. لماذا استخدم الطلاب أساليب صديقة للبيئة؟

- Because they learned about global responsibility.

- لأنهم تعلموا عن المسؤولية العالمية.

4. How did the garden change the students?

٤. كيف غيّرت الحديقة الطلاب؟

- They became a team with a shared purpose, not just classmates.

- أصبحوا فريقًا ذا هدف مشترك، وليسوا مجرد زملاء.

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

1. To is to say that someone is responsible for a mistake.
a. help b. blame c. forget d. remember
2. A is a person who guides or is in charge of a group.
a. mechanic b. cleaner c. gardener d. leader
3. Anything which is not harmful to nature is called
a. friendly b. friend c. friendship d. eco-friendly
4. is caring for the Earth and future generations.
a. Global warming b. Global responsibility
c. Globalization d. Global village
5. The materials used to help plants grow are called
a. poisons b. spices
c. natural fertilizers d. sweets

Synonyms and Antonyms

6. I was shocked when I saw my exam results. The word "....." is similar in meaning to "shocked".
a. unsurprised b. calm c. relaxed d. surprised
7. Turn off the lights before you leave the room. "....." is an antonym of "turn off".
a. Switch off b. Keep away c. Pick up d. Switch on
8. The word "stressed" is the opposite of ".....".
a. worried b. relaxed c. angry d. nervous

Prefixes and suffixes

9. To get the opposite of "responsible", we add the prefix
a. in- b. un- c. ir- d. im-
10. The suffix "....." changes the word "stress" into an adjective.
a. -ive b. -ity c. -ed d. -less

Guess the meaning

11. The students used methods, only natural fertilizers.
a. chemical b. eco-friendly c. harmful d. hard
12. The Egyptians are of their glorious past.
a. natural b. proud c. eco-friendly d. fertile
13. Using solar energy is
a. friendly b. unfriendly c. eco-friendly d. a & b
14. Leadership means being for both successes and mistakes.
a. runner b. responsible c. athlete d. sports person
15. To focus while studying, the writer decided to turn off social media
a. diaries b. notifications
c. breaks d. gesture
16. "....." means caring for the Earth and future generations.
a. Natural fertilizers b. Leadership
c. Global responsibility d. Harmful chemicals
17. After a lot of hard work, the project was a huge
a. mistake b. success c. leadership d. purpose
18. The students felt before the exams.
a. relaxed b. calm c. stressed d. happy
19. We have a global responsibility to take care of nature for the next
a. generation b. community c. city d. family
20. We must stop using to protect the environment.
a. natural fertilizers b. harmful chemicals
c. global responsibility d. eco-friendly methods
21. I was really by my uncle's sudden death.
a. glorious b. proud c. shocked d. positive
22. Little little, the students improved their English skills.
a. with b. from c. of d. by
23. Good leaders know how to success within their teams.
a. blame b. behave c. grow d. charge

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

natural - shocked - surrounded - harmful - eco-friendly - physical

My family went to a farm nearby. We wanted to see how the food was grown. The farm was ① by fields of corn and lettuce. The farmer showed us his special ② method of growing crops. He used a big machine to fertilize the soil with ③ fertilizers. I was ④ at how much hard work it takes to run a farm!

3 Complete the following dialog:

Omar helps Ahmed to solve his problem.

Ahmed : I have a problem. Can you help me?

Omar : ① What's the problem?

Ahmed : I use my phone a lot. ② ?

Omar : You can turn off social media notifications.

Ahmed : That's a good idea. What else can I do?

Omar : ③

Ahmed : What about going to the club tonight?

Omar : ④

Ahmed : ⑤ ?

Omar : Yes, I think your plan will work. You will feel more in control of your time.

General Exercises



on Lessons 3& 4

1 Complete the following dialog:

Mayar is telling Sara about her science project.

Mayar : I was in charge of the science project.

Sara : Great! ①

Mayar : It was a lot of hard work, but a huge success.

Sara : Did you have any problems?

Mayar : ②

Sara : ③

Mayar : When a problem came up, we worked as a team to find solutions.

Sara : What did you learn?

Mayar : ④ and how to care for the environment.

Sara : ⑤

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

purpose - blame - realize - mistakes - guide - study

A true leader is responsible for the team's hard work and success, but also for any ① Good leadership means you never ② others. Instead, a leader must find solutions, ③ the team, and improve every situation. A good leader helps the team have a shared ④ This means everyone knows what the main goal is and works together to reach it.

3 Read the following text then answer the questions:

Fatma always felt stressed. Every notification on her phone made her jump. She would regularly check for messages, and it was harmful to her focus. One weekend, her internet connection failed. At first, she was anxious, but then she realized she was free. She spent time with her family, reading a book by her favorite writer, and even started her own journal. She behaved more calmly and slept better. She finally understood the mistake of living life online. She accepted that she needed to keep this distraction away to truly improve her life.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The best title for the passage is

a. Fatma's Favorite Writer

b. How to Fix the Internet

c. A Broken Computer

d. Life without the Internet

2. Fatma started after her internet connection failed.
- a. baking for the family b. her own journal
- c. a new exercise routine d. painting

B. Answer the following questions

3. How did Fatma behave without internet?

4. What activities did Fatma do when her internet connection failed?

5. Summarize the passage in 2 sentences.

6. How would life be without internet?

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The word "....." means not harmful to nature.
- a. colorful b. glorious c. responsible d. eco-friendly
2. My friends and I play games online together. "....." is the antonym of "online".
- a. connected b. in-network c. offline d. active
3. Ahmed decided to a change in his life and start a new hobby.
- a. make b. do c. get d. have
4. Farmers use to grow healthy crops.
- a. natural fertilizers b. waste
- c. harmful chemicals d. unnatural methods
5. The suffix "-ity" changes the adjective "responsible" into a/an
- a. noun b. verb c. adverb d. pronoun
6. I prefer to meet my friends person rather than talking on the phone.
- a. of b. with c. in d. on

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"A good leader"

• يقوم الطالب بتسميع المفردات بكتابة التسميع والواجب المنزلي



استمع إلى المفردات

Vocabulary



المفردات الإضافية

specific (adj)	محدد	rarely (adv)	نادرًا
exactly (adv)	بالضبط	culture (n)	ثقافة
timer (n)	مؤقت (عداد للوقت)	recently (adv)	حديثًا
annoying (adj)	مزعج	history (n)	تاريخ
famous (adj)	مشهور	distract (v- ed)	يشتت
successful (adj)	ناجح	follow (v- ed)	يتبع
technological (adj)	تكنولوجي	guess (v- ed)	يخمن
goal (n)	هدف	develop (v- ed)	يطور
The Grand Egyptian Museum (n) المتحف المصري الكبير			

Expressions & Prepositions

set a timer/ specific times يضبط مؤقت/ أوقات محددة	get good sleep يحصل على قسط جيد من النوم
get done ينجز	That's true هذا صحيح
achieve goals يحقق أهدافًا	connected to متصل بـ



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
careful	حريص	cautious		careless	مهمل
rarely	نادرًا	seldom		always	دائمًا

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ful	تحويل الاسم إلى صفة	successful
-ical	تحويل الاسم إلى صفة	technological

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present

Past simple

Past Participle

set

يحدد/ يضبط

set

set

Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1) but/ so/ also / because

• also

أيضا

• تستخدم لإضافة معلومة

Ex. I like reading, and I **also** enjoy painting.

• but

لكن

• تستخدم لربط فكرتين متناقضتين

Ex. I was very tired, **but** I finished my homework.

• because

لأن/ بسبب

• تستخدم لإعطاء سبب لشيء ما

Ex. We stayed home **because** it was raining.

• so

لذلك

• تستخدم لإظهار النتيجة

Ex. It was raining, **so** we stayed home.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I like to read books, and I enjoy watching movies.

a. so

b. but

c. also

d. because

2. Adel was late the bus was slow.

a. also

b. but

c. so

d. because

3. The sun was shining, we went to the beach.

a. so

b. but

c. also

d. because

Writing skill

Blog Post مدونة إلكترونية

هو مقال أو موضوع ينشر على الإنترنت و هي تشبه دفترًا رقميًا يكتب فيه الشخص عن شيء يهتم به

Tips for writing a blog post خطوات كتابة مدونة

1. Start with a title that gets people interested.

أبدأ بعنوان يجذب انتباه الناس

2. Give details about the topic.

قدم تفاصيل حول الموضوع

3. Use images related to the topic.

استخدم صورًا مرتبطة بالموضوع

4. End with a call to action.

اختم بدعوة لاتخاذ إجراء

Reading

SB Page (67)

استمع إلى النص

- Read the following dialog. How can we achieve balance between screen time and other activities?

Talking About Screen Time

Mother : I think you should try to find a good **balance**⁽¹⁾ between screen time for entertainment and other activities.

Son : But mom, screens help me stay focused when I study.

Mother : I see, but experts say screens can also be a big **distraction**⁽²⁾ if you're not careful.

Son : So, how can I make my screen time more useful?

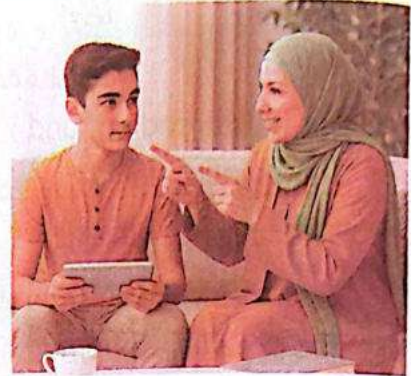
Mother : You could **set specific times**⁽³⁾ for studying and breaks. Also, you must avoid using screens during meals or before bedtime.

Son : I understand. I should also turn off **notifications**⁽⁴⁾ because they might distract me.

Mother : Exactly! And remember, you need to balance your screen time with outdoor activities and reading.

Son : I see. If I follow this, I will feel better and get more done.

Mother : Yes, and you will also enjoy your **entertainment**⁽⁵⁾ time more without feeling tired or distracted.



١. توازن
٢. تشتيت
٣. يحدد أوقات محددة
٤. إشعارات
٥. ترفيه



SB page 68

- Take turns being Nader and Gamal.

Nader : Hey Gamal, you should try to find a good balance with your screen time. Do you know that too much screen can be a big distraction?

Gamal : But Nader, my games help me stay focused when I'm learning!

Nader : **That's true**⁽¹⁾, but sometimes screens might not be very useful if you don't manage them well.

Gamal : So, what could I do to use my screen time better?

١. هذا صحيح

Nader : You could **set a timer**⁽²⁾ for game time and study time. Also, you must avoid screens before bedtime to get good sleep.

Gamal : Okay! I **guess**⁽³⁾ I should turn off those **annoying**⁽⁴⁾ notifications because they may **distract**⁽⁵⁾ me.

Nader : Exactly! If you find the right balance, you'll have more fun and still **get your work done**⁽⁶⁾.

٢. يضبط مؤقت
٣. يظن
٤. مزعج
٥. يشتت
٦. ينجز عمله



SB page 69

• Read and complete the following blog post.

I recently learned about **the Grand Egyptian Museum**⁽¹⁾, and it made me think about how important our **history**⁽²⁾ is. I spend a lot of time online, but I rarely use it to learn about Egypt's **culture**⁽³⁾. I want to change that. My new **goal**⁽⁴⁾ is to reduce my screen time and use some of it to explore Egyptian history and museums like this one. Learning about our past can help me feel more **connected to**⁽⁵⁾ my country. If young people know their history, they can help protect it. This habit can prepare me to be a better citizen of Egypt. Make history part of your life-read, visit, and share it.

١. المتحف المصري الكبير
٢. التاريخ
٣. ثقافة
٤. هدف
٥. متصل بـ

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- My friend is from Japan, so I'm learning a lot about their
a. timer b. history c. screen d. report
- It's when the phone rings during a movie.
a. famous b. specific c. annoying d. successful
- My main is to finish my report before noon.
a. timer b. goal c. history d. culture
- If you this new plan, you will feel better.
a. guess b. distract c. follow d. annoy
- The tour guide showed us the most tombs in the Valley of the Kings.
a. annoying b. famous c. successful d. specific
- I want to my skills in painting this summer.
a. follow b. guess c. distract d. develop

7. Joury keeps her phone when she is studying.
a. on b. away c. off d. up
8. I need to a timer for 30 minutes to finish my homework.
a. follow b. get c. set d. achieve
9. Turn the lights when you don't need them.
a. up b. on c. off d. away
10. The phone is connected the internet.
a. in b. of c. with d. to
11. To get the adjective form the noun "success", we add the suffix
a. -ly b. -ful c. -ing d. -ed

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

turn off - specific - goals - distract - switch on- help

My new goal is to develop a successful app. It's a very ① project, so I have to be very careful with my time. I ② social media notifications because they ③ me. I believe this will help me achieve my ④ and finish the project on time.

3 Complete the following dialog:

Heba gives Ola some advice about how to reduce screen time.

Ola : What could I do to use my screen time better?

Heba : ①

Ola : That's a great idea. ② ?

Heba : Yes, you should turn off notifications while studying.

Ola : What can I do in my free time instead of playing online games?

Heba : ③

Ola : That's true. Spending time with friends makes me happy.

Heba : ④ ?

Ola : You can read a book, help your mum in the kitchen, or color a picture.

Heba : ⑤

General Exercises on Lessons 5&6

1 Complete the following dialog:

Ahmed is asking Bassem about his school project.

Ahmed : How's the project going?

Bassem : ① _____, but I'm a bit late.

Ahmed : ② _____ ?

Bassem : No, thanks. I don't need any help. I just need to focus more.

Ahmed : I noticed you're always on your phone, and that may distract you.

Bassem : ③ _____. I don't know how to balance.

Ahmed : You need to set a timer when you use your phone.

Bassem : Great idea! I think I also need to take a break.

Ahmed : ④ _____ ?

Bassem : That's a good idea! When can we go to the club?

Ahmed : ⑤ _____.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

achieve - guess - history - focused - distracted - miss

To be a successful student, you need a specific plan. Set a timer for studying to stay ① _____. This helps you get your homework done without getting ② _____. Also, get good sleep every night. These useful habits will help you ③ _____ your learning goals and improve your knowledge of any subject, like ④ _____ or culture.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. To be healthy and focused, you must _____ good sleep every night.

a. do b. get c. make d. follow

2. The Pyramids of Giza are _____ all over the world.

a. famous b. specific c. annoying d. successful

3. I don't know the answer, but I can _____ it.

a. follow b. guess c. distract d. develop

4. I bought a good jacket. I picked it _____ from a famous website.

a. on b. away c. off d. up

5. You need to be more careful. "....." is a synonym of "careful".
 a. Careless b. Useless c. Cautious d. Helpful
6. To get the adjective from "technology", we add the suffix
 a. -al b. -ive c. -ical d. -ful
7. It was very sunny, we went to the beach.
 a. but b. also c. so d. because
8. I need to buy milk, and I should get some bread.
 a. but b. also c. so d. because
9. He was tired he worked all day.
 a. but b. also c. so d. because
10. I don't eat healthy food I do exercise.
 a. but b. also c. so d. because

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I wanted to go to the park, (so) it started to rain.
2. Anas is a great football player, and he (but) plays basketball.
3. I like pizza, (because) my friend prefers pasta.
4. We were late (so) the bus didn't come.
5. My mobile distracts me, (but) I can't control my time on it.
6. Screens can be fun, (because) they can also be distracting.
7. You are always tired (so) you don't get enough sleep.
8. I like screens (also) they help me learn.
9. My eyes started to hurt, (also) I have to spend less time on screens.

5 Write a blog post of about 110 words on:

(مجاوب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"How can you improve your screen time habits"

.....

.....

.....

.....

Review on Unit 4

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

screen time (n)	وقت الشاشة	the New Administrative Capital (n)	العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة
teenager (n)	مراهق	the Monorail (n)	المونوريل (القطار الأحادي)
expert (n)	خبير	cutting-edge (adj)	متطور / حديث للغاية
entertainment (n)	ترفيه / تسلية	smart citizen (n)	مواطن ذكي
physical (adj)	جسدي / بدني	designer (n)	مصمم
mentally (adv)	عقلياً / نفسياً	distraction (n)	إلهاء / تشتيت
side effects (n)	آثار جانبية	balance (n/v -d)	توازن / يوازن
smart city (n)	مدينة ذكية	scroll (ed) (v)	يتصفح (يمرر الشاشة)
smart habits (n)	عادات ذكية	method (n)	طريقة
shocked (adj)	مصدوم	natural fertilizers (n)	أسمدة طبيعية
notification (n)	إشعار / تنبيه	leadership (n)	قيادة
journal (n)	يومية / دفتر يوميات	realize (v-d)	يدرك
stressed (adj)	متوتر / مضغوط	behave (v-d)	يتصرف
success (n)	نجاح	blame (v-d)	يلوم
global responsibility (n)	مسؤولية عالمية	fertilize (v-d)	يخصب
eco-friendly (adj)	صديق للبيئة		



Language

قواعد لغوية

1 Modal Verbs

الأفعال الناقصة

A must/ mustn't: يجب / لا يجب

• Must:

- نستخدم "must" للتعبير عن إلزام أو شيء من الضروري القيام به. فتأتي مع القوانين وتأتي في الجملة كالاتي:

فعل في المصدر + must + الفاعل Subject

Examples: - You must follow safety rules.

• Mustn't:

- تستخدم **"mustn't"** للتعبير عن المنع أو التحريم أو شيء غير مسموح به و تأتي في الجملة كالآتي:

فعل في المصدر. **must not (mustn't) + inf.** + الفاعل Subject

Examples: - You **mustn't** lie about your identity online.

B should/ shouldn't:

ينبغي/لا ينبغي

- نستخدم **"shouldn't" / "should"** لإعطاء النصيحة أو للتحدث عن فكرة جيدة أو سيئة و يأتوا في الجملة كالآتي:

فعل في المصدر. **should/ shouldn't + inf.** + الفاعل Subject

Examples: - You **should** limit your screen time.

- You **shouldn't** spend more than two hours on screens.

C can/ can't:

يستطيع/لا يستطيع

- نستخدم **"can't" / "can"** للتعبير عن القدرة أو الإمكانية أو الإذن بفعل شيء أو بعدم فعل شيء و يأتوا في الجملة كالآتي:

فعل في المصدر. **can/ can't + inf.** + الفاعل Subject

Examples: - You **can** change your settings.

- I **can** speak English. I **can't** speak French.

2

Connectors

الروابط

A While / Although /Even though: بينما/على الرغم من

نستخدم هذه الكلمات لإظهار التضاد بين فكرتين، أو لتوضيح ان حقيقة تجعل الحقيقة الأخرى مفاجئة ويأتوا في بداية الجملة أو منتصفها.

1. While بينما

تستخدم لإظهار التناقض والاختلاف بين حقيقتين أو موقفين:

- **While** I prefer tea, my brother likes coffee.

2. Although على الرغم من

تستخدم لتقديم جملة فرعية تجعل الجملة الأساسية مفاجئة:

- الجملة التي تبدأ **Although** نسميها جملة فرعية لأنها لا تعطى معنى كامل

جملة رئيسية (فعل غير متوقع) جملة فرعية
Although it was raining, we went for a walk.

3. Even though حتى لو أن / بالرغم من كل شيء

- تستخدم بنفس غرض و طريقة **although** ولكنها صيغة أقوى - فتكون الجملة الرئيسية تحمل تناقض أقوى (غير متوقع):

Even though he studied hard, he failed the exam.

جملة رئيسية (نتيجة مفاجئة وغير متوقعة)
جملة فرعية

B On one hand / On the other hand: من ناحية / من ناحية أخرى

- تُستخدم هذه العبارات لعرض وجهتي نظر مختلفين أو متعارضتين حول نفس الموضوع ويتم استخدامهم كالتالي:

. النقطة المقابلة, **On the other hand** - → . النقطة الأولى, **On one hand** -

On one hand, technology makes life easier. On the other hand, it can make people lazy.

Speaking

Ask and answer about managing screen time:

. السؤال والإجابة عن إدارة وقت الشاشة

Question

1. What is screen time?

ما هو وقت الشاشة؟

2. How much time should I spend on screens?

كم من الوقت يجب أن أقضيه على الشاشة؟

3. What are some healthy activities to balance screen use?

ما هي بعض الأنشطة الصحية التي توازن استخدام الشاشة؟

Answer

Screen time is the total time a person spends looking at screens.

وقت الشاشة هو إجمالي الوقت الذي يقضيه الشخص في النظر إلى الشاشات.

You shouldn't spend more than two hours on screens.

لا ينبغي أن تقضي أكثر من ساعتين على الشاشات.

You can do activities such as reading a book, playing sports, or going out with friends.

يمكنك القيام بأنشطة مثل قراءة كتاب، أو ممارسة الرياضة، أو الخروج مع الأصدقاء

Paragraphs & Emails

Lessons 1 & 2

Using a lot of screen time can have negative side effects on both your body and mind. Physically, it can cause tired eyes and headaches. It can even lead to trouble sleeping, which affects your energy. Mentally, a lot of screen time can make it harder to focus on tasks, as it's a big distraction. It can also make a person feel more stressed or worried. That's why experts recommend that we balance our screen use with other healthy activities, like being outdoors or spending time with friends. By limiting our time on screens, we can avoid these problems and stay healthier.

Lessons 3 & 4

A good leader understands that true leadership means being responsible for both successes and mistakes. They never blame their team but find solutions and guide everyone. A strong leader must make a plan with a clear shared purpose to improve the situation. They behave with honesty and care for their team, making sure that no one feels stressed or left out. Through hard work and a positive example, a good leader can grow success and inspire everyone to make a change, creating a group focused on a common goal.

Lessons 5 & 6

Do you feel your phone is an annoying distraction? You can develop better habits! First, set specific times to check messages. Use a timer to limit your use. Long screen time can make you tired, so you need to get good sleep. Also, get your work done before scrolling. If you follow these tips, you will feel less stressed and more successful in achieving your goals. Remember, the goal is to balance screen time with your daily activities, not to quit technology completely. Start today for a healthier mind!

Al-Azhar Test

Too much screen time is not good. It can hurt your eyes. It can also make you feel tired and stressed. We should try to use our phones less. We can make a change by playing outside more, reading books, or talking to family. This is better for everyone.

Test on Unit 4

Cutting-edge technology is the most modern and advanced tool we have today. It is used to build smart cities around the world. A great example is the New Administrative Capital in Egypt. This city uses new systems like the Monorail. Engineers and designers work hard to create these helpful technologies. The goal is to make daily life easier and more organized for everyone. However, it is important to use technology wisely.

1 Complete the following dialog:

Tayem wants to develop his painting skills.

Tayem : I'm trying to learn a new skill.

Marwan : That's great! ① ?

Tayem : I'm trying to develop my painting skills.

Marwan : That's a fun activity. You should set a specific time each day to practice.

Tayem : ② I'll get a timer.

Marwan : I hope ③

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

realize - history - improve - technology - cutting-edge

Last week, I visited the Grand Egyptian Museum. It is a famous and ① project. I learned a lot about our amazing ② and culture. It uses modern ③ to guide visitors. This successful museum helps people ④ the glorious past of Egypt.

3 Read the following passage, then answer the following questions:

My name is Waleed. I like writing. That's why I began to keep a journal. In it, I report on my day and my feelings. I believe it helps me improve my writing skills little by little. I write about everything, from my hard work on school projects to my life with my family. It helps me to feel less stressed. I plan to write every day. I also text my friends and family to check on them.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What does Waleed write about in his journal?

.....

2. How does Waleed feel after writing in his journal?

.....

3. What does Waleed do to stay in touch with his friends and family?

.....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Waleed's hobby is
- a. keeping a journal b. texting friends
c. writing d. working on school projects
5. Waleed keeps a journal to
- a. text his friends and family b. improve his writing skills
c. prepare for school projects d. help his family

4 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. Farmers use _____ to help plants grow.
a. global responsibility b. natural fertilizers
c. leadership d. solar panels
2. Everyone is responsible _____ keeping the classroom clean.
a. in b. with c. for d. on
3. _____, the new phone has many great features. On the other hand, it is very expensive.
a. Although b. While c. On one hand d. Even though
4. My brother can play the guitar, and he _____ sings very well.
a. because b. so c. but d. also
5. Mariam has a lot of work to _____ it done before the end of the week.
a. work b. make c. get d. do

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. We stayed at home _____ (but) the weather was bad.
2. You _____ (should) eat so much chocolate. It's not good for your health.
3. I _____ (mustn't) finish this report tonight. It's very important.
4. The cake looked delicious, _____ (because) it was too sweet for me.

D: Writing

6 Write a paragraph of SIX (6) sentences about:

“Screen Time Habits”

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

Test on Unit 4

1 Finish the following dialog:

Renad suggests going to the Citadel.

Renad : Hey, have you made a plan for the school trip yet?

Shaza : Not yet. ①

Renad : We could go to a famous place.

Shaza : ②! Do you have any ideas?

Renad : ③

Shaza : That sounds great! I recently learned about it in class.

Renad : Do you think it will be an amazing experience?

Shaza : ④ It will be an unforgettable trip.

Renad : ⑤

2 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

citizens - balance - achieve - distracted - leader - focused

Our town is becoming a smart city. A great ① and a team of engineers are using cutting-edge technology for the project. They ask ② to form smart habits, like limiting screen time. This helps everyone avoid feeling stressed or ③ The goal is to ④ modern life with health, managing technology wisely for a better future.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

John, a tourist, was shocked by the amazing history at the Grand Egyptian Museum. He spent hours looking at glorious artifacts. A guide explained the culture of ancient Egypt, a famous civilization. John realized that long screen time on his phone had caused him to miss real entertainment and learning. He decided to reduce his phone use. This visit was a turning point; he now believes in experiencing activities in person. He hopes the future generation will care for history and find solutions to protect it, understanding their global responsibility.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?

- | | |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| a. A tourist's museum visit. | b. History and technology. |
| c. A new way of thinking. | d. The importance of a guide. |

2. A explained the culture of ancient Egypt to John.

- | | | | |
|---------------------|-----------|------------|----------|
| a. famous historian | b. writer | c. tourist | d. guide |
|---------------------|-----------|------------|----------|

B. Answer the following questions

3. How did John spend his time at the museum?
.....
4. Why did John decide to reduce his phone use?
.....
5. Summarize what happened to John and how he changed in 2 sentences.
.....
6. What do the underlined words "a turning point" mean?
.....

4 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. "....." means fun activities like games or watching TV.
a. Entertainment b. Screen time c. Responsibility d. Leadership
2. I was by the amount of plastic in the ocean.
a. successful b. proud c. shocked d. positive
3. Too much screen time can have negative side, like headaches.
a. affects b. effects c. methods d. mistakes
4. She felt very stressed before her final exam. "....." is similar in meaning to "stressed".
a. Cautious b. Reliable c. Surprised d. Anxious
5. We need to a change and start recycling our trash.
a. get b. have c. do d. make
6. To get the opposite of "responsible", we add the prefix
a. im- b. ir- c. un- d. in-

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. You (shouldn't) touch that painting. The sign says it's forbidden.
2. (Because) it was raining, we had a great time at the beach.
3. I (can) understand this lesson. It's too difficult for me.
4. Mazen didn't study for the test, (but) he failed.
5. If you want to pass the exam, you (shouldn't) study every day.

6 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Cutting-edge Technology"



استمع إلى المفردات

المفردات الرئيسية

Key Vocabulary

problem-solver (n)	حلال المشكلات	solutions (n)	حلول
schedule (n)	الجدول الزمني / مواعيد	comfort (n)	راحة
stylish (adj)	أنيق / من الطراز الحديث	relationship (n)	علاقة
prototypes (n)	نماذج أولية	points of view	وجهات نظر / آراء
creativity (n)	الإبداع	ideation (n)	توليد الأفكار

Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

desire (n)	رغبة	crazy (adj)	غريب جدًا / غير معتاد
practical (adj)	عملي	name (v-d)	يسمّي
curiosity (n)	فضول	create (v-d)	يُنشئ
weight (n)	وزن	interact (v-ed)	يتفاعل
safety (n)	أمان	organize (v-d)	يُنظّم
ability (n)	قدرة	solve (v-d)	يحلّ
outfit (n)	زِيّ	value (v-d)	يقدر
judge (v-d)	يحكم	mention (v-ed)	يذكر
identify (v-ied)	يحدّد	test (v-ed)	يختبر
define (v-d)	يعرّف	improve (v-d)	يتحسن
guess (v-ed)	يخمن	interview (v-ed)	يجري حوار
involve (v-d)	يشترك / يتضمّن	brainstorm (v-ed)	يقوم بعملية عصف ذهني
layout (n)	نموذج		



Definitions

ideation (n)	توليد الأفكار	brainstorming ⁽¹⁾ or coming up with ideas
creativity (n)	الإبداع	ability to make new ideas.
point of view (n)	وجهة نظر	a way of looking at something.
prototype (n)	نموذج أولي	a simple model of a design.

١. عصف ذهني
(توليد أفكار)

schedule (n)	الجدول الزمني/المواعيد	a list of planned activities ⁽²⁾ .	٢. أنشطة ٣. فعال
solution (n)	حل	a way to solve a problem.	٤. معقدة ٥. غير معتاد
practical (n)	عملي	effective ⁽³⁾ or suitable	
sprint (n)	دورة/ورشة عمل لحل مشكلات	a process of solving complex ⁽⁴⁾ problems	
crazy (adj)	غريب/غير معتاد	very unusual ⁽⁵⁾	

Expressions & Prepositions

creative minds	عقول مبدعة	solve a problem	يحل مشكلة
brainstorm ideas	توليد أفكار	define a challenge	يحدد تحدي
explore ideas	يستكشف الآراء	work on a project	يعمل في مشروع
imagine solutions	يتخيل الحلول	work in a team	يعمل ضمن فريق
organize time	ينظم الوقت	care about	يهتم بـ
ask a question	يسأل سؤال	in (five) days	خلال (خمسة) أيام
a model of	نموذج لـ	put (students) first	يضع الطلاب في مقدمة الأولويات
healthy food express line	خط خدمة الاطعمة الصحية السريعة		



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
possible	ممكن/محتمل	likely		impossible	مستحيل
solution	حل	answer		problem	مشكلة
hard	صعب	difficult		easy	سهل
different	مختلف	unlike		similar	مشابهة
seful	مفيد	helpful		useless	عديم الفائدة
stylish	طراز رفيع	fashionable		old-fashioned	قديم
practical	عملي	workable		impractical	غير عملي
fancy	فاخر	fantastic		simple	بسيط / عادي

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
proto-	بمعني اصلي / اولي	prototype
im-	تحول الصفة الى عكسها	impossible
-er	تحول الفعل الى اسم فاعل	designer

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn
take	ياخذ	took	taken
write	يكتب	wrote	written

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 like / as

• like

- وعند استخدام (like + noun) يكون معناها (شبيهاً بـ) أي تُعبر عن تشبيهه.

Ex. Like your father.

• as

- عند استخدام (as + noun) يكون معناها [قائم بوظيفة أو دور] أي أنها تُعبر عن حقيقة.

Ex. As your father.

- هنا المتكلم فعلاً هو والد المستمع.

2 daily / everyday / every day / dairy

- كلمة (everyday) صفة ومعناها يومي وتأتي قبل الاسم:

Ex. Playing chess is important in my everyday life.

- كلمة (every day) ظرف وتعني كل يوم وغالباً تكون آخر الجملة:

Ex. I practice English every day. (not everyday)

- لاحظ أن كلمة (daily) تساوي الاثنين في المعنى حسب السياق:

Ex. Doing exercise is my daily routine.

I do exercise daily.

• Dairy

منتجات البان

Ex. Cheese, butter and milk are dairy products

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mr. Ahmed works a teacher. He loves all his students.

a. like

b. unlike

c. as

d. soon

2. It's Eman's routine to wake up at 6 o'clock.

a. day

b. daily

c. every day

d. dairy



Reading



SB Page (73)



استمع إلى النصوص

Read this text and underline the designer skills mentioned in the passage.



SB Page (73)

"Think Like a Designer"

Designers are everyday **problem-solvers**⁽¹⁾. They create things that are useful, easy to understand, and fun to use. Whether it's a building, a phone app, or a daily **schedule**⁽²⁾, a designer asks important questions like: "Who will use it?" "What do they need?" "How can I make it better?" Great designers don't just draw pictures or make **stylish**⁽³⁾ objects, they **explore**⁽⁴⁾ ideas from different **points of view**⁽⁵⁾ and test simple models called **prototypes**⁽⁶⁾. **Creativity**⁽⁷⁾, listening, and **curiosity**⁽⁸⁾ are important skills in design. Designers think about the **function**⁽⁹⁾ of things and how people interact with them.

For example, designing a school **backpack**⁽¹⁰⁾ is not just about style. It's about comfort, weight, space, and safety. In the same way, a designer for life might help people organize their time or solve problems.

Design thinking means caring about people and imagining better **solutions**⁽¹¹⁾. Anyone can be a designer - all you need is a creative mind and a desire to improve the world around you.



١. حلّالو المشكلات
٢. جدول زمني
٣. من طراز حديث
٤. يستكشف
٥. وجهات نظر
٦. نماذج أولية
٧. الابداع
٨. فضولي
٩. وظيفة
١٠. حقيبة ظهر
١١. حلول

Reading Skill

مهاراة القراءة (الاجابة بالاسفل)

1. What is the main idea of the text?
2. What do designers create?
3. What do you need to be a designer?

1. Designers are everyday problem-solvers.
2. They create things that are useful, easy to understand, and fun to use.
3. All you need is a creative mind and a desire to improve the world around you.

Answers:



Audio Script

SB Page (75)

"Hi, everyone! I'm Sarah, and I just finished an amazing **design sprint**⁽¹⁾. A design sprint is when a team **solves**⁽²⁾ a big problem in just five days. It **sounds impossible**⁽³⁾, right? But it **works**⁽⁴⁾!"

On Sunday, we **defined**⁽⁵⁾ our problem and our challenge was: How might we help students eat healthier lunches at school? We interviewed 20 students and found that healthy food takes too long to get.

Monday was **ideation day**⁽⁶⁾. We **brainstormed**⁽⁷⁾ over 50 ideas! Some were crazy, like a **robot chef**⁽⁸⁾, but others were **practical**⁽⁹⁾, like a healthy food **express line**⁽¹⁰⁾. On Tuesday and Wednesday, we built **prototypes**⁽¹¹⁾. We created a simple **app. design**⁽¹²⁾ and a new **cafeteria layout**⁽¹³⁾. Nothing fancy, just enough to test our ideas.

Finally, on Thursday, we tested with real students. They loved the **express line idea**⁽¹⁴⁾ but weren't interested in the app. Now we know what to build next!

The best part about design thinking was when we solved a real problem in just five days by putting students first."

١. ورشة عمل للتصميم
٢. يحل
٣. يبدو مستحيل
٤. تنجح
٥. حددنا
٦. يوم الأفكار
٧. قمنا بعصف ذهني
٨. الطاهي الآلي
٩. عملي
١٠. الخط السريع
١١. نماذج بدائية
١٢. تصميم تطبيق
١٣. نموذج كافتريا
١٤. فكرة الخط السريع

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

1. Alan _____ means a brainstorming or coming up with new ideas.
a. information b. ideation c. solution d. pollution
2. _____ is the ability to make new ideas.
a. Creativity b. Prototype c. Comfort d. Relationship
3. A _____ means a process of solving complex problems.
a. run b. walk c. sprint d. print
4. _____ is a simple model of a design.
a. Prototype b. Creativity c. Schedule d. Function

5. _____ is a list of planned activities.
 a. Schedule b. Solution c. Relationship d. Space
6. _____ is a way to solve a problem.
 a. Solution b. Creativity c. Prototype d. Desire

Synonyms and antonyms

7. Is it possible to get tickets for the game? _____ is the synonym of possible.
 a. Impossible b. Improbable c. Likely d. Lovely
8. My solution is different from yours. The synonym of solution is _____.
 a. problem b. answer c. comfort d. question
9. That test was very hard. The antonym of hard is _____.
 a. difficult b. different c. simple d. same

Prefixes and Suffixes

10. To get the opposite of the adjective possible, we add the prefix _____.
 a. un- b. im- c. ir- d. dis-
11. To get the noun from the verb design, we add the suffix _____.
 a. -able b. -ive c. -er d. -tion

Guess the meaning

12. I value a strong _____ with my family.
 a. stylish b. comfort c. relationship d. desire
13. He had a strong _____ to learn.
 a. desire b. stylish c. comfort d. relationship
14. The old chair offered surprising _____.
 a. relationship b. desire c. comfort d. stylish
15. Her new outfit was very _____ and comfortable.
 a. stylish b. relationship c. desire d. comfort
16. There is not enough _____ in the room.
 a. weight b. space c. desire d. judge
17. This jacket is very _____ for cold weather.
 a. crazy b. practical c. sprint d. creative
18. His _____ is very nice for the party.
 a. curiosity b. outfit
 c. problem-solver d. safety

Unit 5 Design Thinking

19. I want to know more because of my
 a. safety b. curiosity c. weight d. ability
20. The of this box is 5 kilos.
 a. space b. outfit c. weight d. desire
21. Always wear a helmet for your
 a. safety b. sprint c. outfit d. judge
22. She has the to speak two languages.
 a. ingredients b. weight c. sprint d. ability
23. The engineer showed us a small of the new car before making the real one.
 a. picture b. photo c. tool d. prototype
24. In the debate, students shared different points of about the topic.
 a. interview b. answer c. rules d. view
25. The teacher wrote the exam on the board.
 a. game b. schedule c. place d. notebook
26. Mesk always wears clothes that make her look modern
 a. old b. stylish c. dirty d. simple
27. Design helps us think of new ways to solve problems.
 a. desire b. innovation c. thinking d. sprint
28. There are some useful on the phone which help me study..
 a. problem-solvers b. apps c. minds d. ingredients
29. I am happy to work a team with my friends on a school project.
 a. in b. at c. for d. on
30. I really care my family and friends.
 a. on b. about c. in d. of
31. He made a small model his new car design.
 a. with b. in c. for d. of

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the list:

points of view - design - schedule - kinds - book - outfit

To complete our project, we first organize a clear ① that includes time to explore different ② We use creativity to design several ③ and find the best solutions. Our desire is to create something both stylish and comfortable, so we carefully choose the right ④

3 Complete the following dialog:

Lina is talking to Omar about design skills

Lina : Hi Omar! Do you know what a design skill is?

Omar : Hi Lina! No, ①

Lina : A design skill helps you make new and good things.

Omar : Like creativity?

Lina : Yes! Creativity helps you have new ideas.

Omar : ②

Lina : Designers use it to make ③

Omar : I like drawing. Can I be creative too?

Lina : ④

Omar : Thanks, Lina! I will try to be creative.

Lina : ⑤



Language

قواعد لغوية

The imperative الأمر

Affirmative

أمر مثبت

Inf + باقي الجملة

Ex. Show me how to use it!

Ex. Tap the app to open it.

• لتكوين صيغة الأمر نبدأ الجملة بمصدر الفعل في الأمر المثلث. ونبدأ بـ (Never / Don't) في الأمر المنفي + مصدر الفعل

Negative

أمر منفي

Don't + inf + باقي الجملة

Ex. Don't stop pressing.

Ex. Don't stay up late.



١. يمكن استخدام Always قبل الأمر المثلث.
٢. يمكن استخدام Never بدلا من Don't في الأمر المنفي.
٣. يمكن استخدام Just / please لتقليل حدة الأمر.
٤. لا يتم استخدام الضمير You قبل الأمر إلا في حالة تأكيد الأمر.
٥. عند إعطاء الأمر بفعل يكون يبدأ بـ Be.

3 Complete the following dialog:

Lina is talking to Omar about design skills

Lina : Hi Omar! Do you know what a design skill is?

Omar : Hi Lina! No, ❶

Lina : A design skill helps you make new and good things.

Omar : Like creativity?

Lina : Yes! Creativity helps you have new ideas.

Omar : ❷

Lina : Designers use it to make ❸

Omar : I like drawing. Can I be creative too?

Lina : ❹

Omar : Thanks, Lina! I will try to be creative.

Lina : ❺



Language

قواعد لغوية

The imperative الأمر

Affirmative

أمر مثبت

Inf + باقي الجملة

Ex. **Show** me how to use it!

Ex. **Tap** the app to open it.

Negative

أمر منفي

Don't + inf + باقي الجملة

Ex. **Don't** stop pressing.

Ex. **Don't** stay up late.

• لتكوين صيغة الأمر نبدأ الجملة بمصدر الفعل في الأمر المثبت. ونبدأ بـ (Never / Don't) في الأمر المنفي + مصدر الفعل



Notes

١. يمكن استخدام **Always** قبل الأمر المثبت.
٢. يمكن استخدام **Never** بدلا من **Don't** في الأمر المنفي.
٣. يمكن استخدام **Just / please** لتقليل حدة الأمر.
٤. لا يتم استخدام الضمير **You** قبل الأمر إلا في حالة تأكيد الأمر.
٥. عند إعطاء الأمر بفعل يكون نبدأ بـ **Be**.

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. open-ended questions during interviews.
a. Asking b. To ask c. Asked d. Ask
2. what users want.
a. To guess b. Guessing c. Guessed d. Guess
3. users in the design process.
a. To involve b. Involving c. Involved d. Involve
4. afraid to fail and learn from mistakes.
a. Don't be b. Not to being c. Not be d. No to be
5. the prototype with real users.
a. Testing b. To test c. Tested d. Test

Bit by Bit Exercises

6. run in the hallway!
a. Don't b. Does c. Did d. Doing
7. your hands before eating.
a. Wash b. Washing c. Washed d. Washes
8. down when the teacher asks.
a. Sit b. Sitting c. Sat d. Sits
9. be late!
a. Don't b. Not c. Didn't d. No
10. Don't here.
a. smoke b. smoking c. smoked d. smokes
11. not use your phone during class.
a. Do b. Did c. Does d. Doing
12. touch that!
a. Don't b. Does c. Did d. Do
13. your password with anyone.
a. Don't share b. Not share c. No sharing d. Don't sharing
14. Please quietly during the test.
a. speak b. speaks c. spoke d. speaking
15. Omar, late again or you will be punished.
a. Don't be b. Not to being c. Doesn't be d. No to be

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB Exercises

1. (Identifying) the problem by talking to users.
2. (Brainstorms) many different solutions.
3. (Defined) the problem clearly.
4. Please, (to write) your answer on the sheet.
5. (Didn't) go outside before doing your homework.

Bit by Bit Exercises

6. (Being) careful when you work with complex machines.
7. (Not give) up if the problem is hard.
8. (Reads) the full instructions before you begin.
9. (Not forget) to save your work often.
10. (Skip not) any important steps.

Speaking

Sequence Connectors أدوات الربط التسلسلي

Sequence Connectors help us organize the steps in a process.

تساعدنا أدوات الربط التسلسلي في تنظيم خطوات العملية:

First, / Firstly, / To begin with, أولا

نستخدم لبدء شرح الخطوة الأولى في أي عملية:

Ex. First, identify the problem by talking to users.

Next, / Then, / After that, ثم / بعد ذلك / بعد هذا

نستخدم لربط الخطوات المتتالية بعد البداية:

Ex. Then, brainstorm many different solutions.

Ex. After that, define the problem clearly.

Ex. Next, build a simple prototype to test.

Subsequently, / Following this, عقب ذلك / بعد ذلك مباشرة

نستخدم غالباً في السياقات الكتابية:

Ex. Subsequently, the mixture is left to cool.

Finally, / Lastly, / In conclusion,

أخيرا / في الختام

نستخدم للإشارة إلى الخطوة الأخيرة أو لإنهاء الكلام:

Ex. Finally, test the prototype with real users.

Design thinking steps in order using sequence connectors

خطوات التفكير التصميمي بالترتيب باستخدام أدوات الربط التسلسلي

First, identify the problem by talking to users. Then, define the problem clearly. Next, brainstorm many different solutions. After that, build a simple prototype to test. Finally, test the prototype with real users.

General Exercises

on Lessons 1 & 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- We did a design to solve the problem in one week.
a. sprint b. app c. spirit d. weight
- People with creative think of smart and new ideas.
a. brains b. minds c. hearts d. lungs
- My tasks include reading and writing.
a. every day b. everyday c. like d. as
- The process of creating and developing new ideas is called
a. prototype b. schedule c. ideation d. stylish
- I go walking to stay healthy.
a. daily b. dairy c. beside d. everyday
- I wrote all my classes in my
a. perspective b. curiosity c. schedule d. outfit
- She asked a lot of questions because of her
a. schedule b. curiosity c. prototype d. outfit
- The designer showed us different of the new phone.
a. schedules b. prototypes c. perspectives d. outfits
- The plan that shows where classrooms, the library, and the playground are is called the school
a. schedule b. layout c. prototype d. design
- I love your new! Where did you buy that jacket?
a. prototype b. curiosity c. perspective d. outfit

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

ability - brainstormed - app - space - crazy - practical

Sunday was ideation day. We ① over 50 ideas! Some were ②, like a robot chef, but others were ③, like a healthy food express line. We built prototypes. We created a simple ④ design.

3 Find the mistake and correct it:

1. Then, brainstorm the ideas. Next, test the prototypes. (.....)
2. Please, to modify your prototypes. (.....)
3. Didn't explore ideas from only one point of view. (.....)
4. Eman, listens carefully to what I say. (.....)
5. Dessert is bad for me. Please, ever offer me any. (.....)

4 Complete the following dialog:

- Sara** : Hi Ahmed! I have a big problem with my school project.
- Ahmed** : Hi Sara! ① ?
- Sara** : It is hard to finish it on time. I don't know where to start.
- Ahmed** : Let's think together. First, ②
- Sara** : Good idea! What should be in the plan?
- Ahmed** : We can write the steps to do the project.
- Sara** : Okay. ③ ?
- Ahmed** : Then, we try to find ideas to solve each step.
- Sara** : Like brainstorming?
- Ahmed** : Yes! We share ideas and choose the best ones.
- Sara** : ④ , Ahmed! I feel better now. Thank you so much.
- Ahmed** : ⑤ !

5 Write a sequential paragraph about A HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الكتاب)

"The steps in a design process"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

- 1- What is the first step ?
- 2- What is the next step?
- 3- What is the last or final step?

.....

.....

.....

استمع إلى المفردات



Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

agriculture (n)	الزراعة	buddy (n)	صديق / صاحب
quit (v-ed)	يترك / يستقيل	design (n)	تصميم
dedicated (adj)	مخلص / مكرس	real people (n)	أشخاص حقيقيين
trust (v-ed)	يثق	real feelings (n)	مشاعر حقيقية

Vocabulary



المفردات الإضافية

signs (n)	لافتات	honest (adj)	صادق
drawings (n)	لوحات / رسومات	notice (v-d)	يلاحظ
art (n)	فن / رسم	inspire (v-d)	يُلهم
solutions (n)	حلول	water (v-ed)	يسقي
growth (n)	نمو	realize (v-d)	يدرك
challenge (n)	تحذ	pretend (v-ed)	يتظاهر
newcomers (n)	الوافدون الجدد	perfect (adj)	مثالي
confused (adj)	مرتبك	limits (n)	حدود
nervous (adj)	متوتر	art (n)	فن
excited (adj)	متحمس	leader (n)	قائد
confident (adj)	واثق	discover (v-d)	يكتشف
curious (adj)	فضولي	decide (v-d)	يقرر

Expressions & Prepositions

feel welcome	يشعر بالترحيب	careful with	حذر مع
feel sorry	يشعر بالأسف	show respect for	يظهر احتراماً لـ
gave a challenge	قدم تحدياً	discover a love for	يكتشف حباً لـ
a break-time corner	ركن للاستراحة	honest with	صادق مع
write down	يُدوّن	ask for advice	يطلب النصيحة



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
relaxed	مرتاح	peaceful		stressed	متوتر
real	حقيقي	true		unreal	غير حقيقي
impact	تأثير	effect		cause	سبب
strengths	نقاط القوة	abilities		weaknesses	نقاط الضعف
dedicated	مخلص	devoted		disloyal	غير مخلص
quit	يستسلم	stop		continue	يستمر

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-th	تحول الفعل الى اسم	growth
-y	تحول الصفة الى اسم	honesty
-ful	تحول الاسم الى صفة	careful
-ly	تحول الصفة الى حال	closely

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
throw	يرمي	threw	thrown
show	يعرض / يُظهر	showed	shown
teach	يعلم	taught	taught
say	يقول	said	said
give	يعطي	gave	given
find	يجد	found	found

Language Notes ملاحظات لغوية

1 late / later

• Late (adj) متأخر

Ex. I am late for school.

• Later (adv) في وقت لاحق

Ex. I will call you later.

2 in the end / at the end

• in the end = Finally أخيرا
غالباً يأتي بعدها (comma) ثم جملة كاملة (فاعل + فعل)

Ex. We worked hard, and in the end, we achieved our goal.

• at the end (of) + noun في نهاية
غالباً يأتي بعدها (of) ثم اسم

Ex. I pay the phone bill at the end of each month.

3 on time / in time

• on time بالضبط في الموعد المتفق عليه

Ex. The train arrived on time.

• in time قبل الوقت المحدد بفترة بسيطة

Ex. The police came in time; the man was about to kill the woman.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I was very tired, but I finished the book

a. at the end b. later c. in the end d. late

2. The bus arrived, so we didn't have to wait.

a. in time b. late c. on time d. later

3. I will talk to you I'm busy now.

a. letter b. latter c. late d. later



Reading



SB Page (?)



SB Page (?)

استمع إلى النصوص



See through Their Eyes

Omar loved **designing**⁽¹⁾ things. One day, his teacher gave the class a **challenge**⁽²⁾: "How can we make life easier for new students at school?" Omar had a few ideas, but his teacher stopped him. "First, see **through**⁽³⁾ their eyes," she said. "You need to understand how they feel." So Omar spent a day with a new student named Karim. He watched Karim **closely**⁽⁴⁾. Karim didn't talk much. He looked confused and nervous. He didn't know where to sit or what to do during the **break**⁽⁵⁾. Omar felt sorry. He remembered how hard it was when he was new. Later, Omar and his group wrote down everything they noticed. Then they **brainstormed ideas**⁽⁶⁾. They created a "**Welcome Buddy**"⁽⁸⁾ plan, a **school map**⁽⁸⁾ for new students, and a break-time corner for **newcomers**⁽⁹⁾. When they tested the idea, the new students smiled and felt more relaxed. Omar learned something important: Good design starts with real people-and **real feelings**⁽¹⁰⁾.



١. تصميم
٢. تحد
٣. من خلال
٤. عن قرب
٥. فسحة
٦. طرح أفكار
٧. ترحيب بالأصدقاء
٨. خريطة مدرسية
٩. الطلاب الجدد
١٠. مشاعر حقيقية

Reading Skill

مهارة القراءة (الاجابة بالاستفهام)

Answer the following questions:

1. What was Omar's challenge?
2. What did Omar do first?
3. How did Karim feel?
4. What did Omar learn at the end?

1. It was to help new students feel welcome.
2. He spent time with a new student.
3. He looked nervous and confused.
4. He learned that good design starts with real people.

ANSWERS:

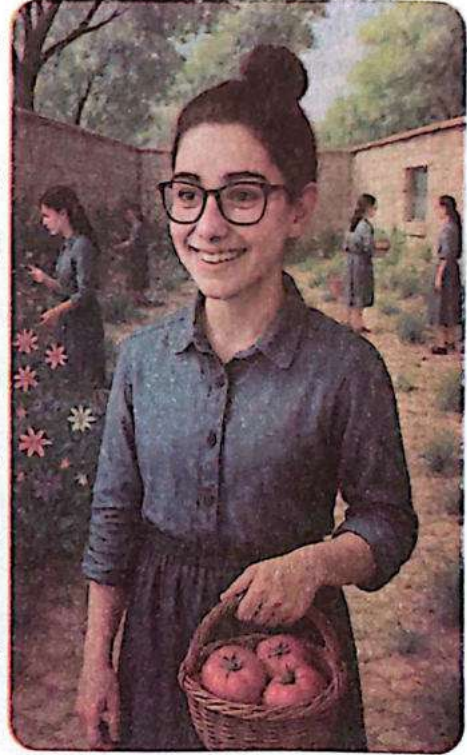
At the end of the **school year**⁽¹⁾, Zeina looked around the garden and smiled. It started with just an idea. Now it was a real space full of green plants, colors, and life. But the **biggest change**⁽²⁾ wasn't in the garden. It was in the students.

Students were now **more careful**⁽³⁾ with the school. They threw less **trash**⁽⁴⁾ on the ground and showed more respect for the **environment**⁽⁵⁾. Nancy discovered a love for growing food and wanted to study **agriculture**⁽⁶⁾. Noha's signs and drawings made the garden beautiful and **inspired**⁽⁷⁾ others to add art around the school.

Amal, who had almost **quit**⁽⁸⁾, became one of the most dedicated⁽⁹⁾ gardeners. She even came early to water the plants.

Zeina **realized**⁽¹⁰⁾ something important: being honest with others-and with yourself-helps people trust you. She had always talked about her limits and didn't **pretend**⁽¹¹⁾ to be perfect. That made her a better leader.

The garden project had changed the way people **treated**⁽¹²⁾ their school and each other. It had helped students grow-not just as learners, but as people.



١. العام الدراسي
٢. التغيير الأكبر
٣. أكثر حرصاً
٤. قمامة
٥. البيئة
٦. الزراعة
٧. الهمة
٨. تغادر
٩. محلي
١٠. أدركت
١١. تتظاهر
١٢. تعاملوا مع

Answer the following questions:

SB questions

1. What changes happened at the school because of the garden?

١. ما التغييرات التي طرأت على المدرسة نتيجةً للحديقة؟

- The school became cleaner. Students stopped throwing trash. They started to respect the school more.

- أصبحت المدرسة أكثر نظافة. توقف الطلاب عن رمي القمامة. أصبحوا يحترمون المدرسة أكثر.

2. How did the project affect Nancy and Amal?

٢. كيف أثر المشروع على نانسي وأمل؟

- Nancy found out she loves growing food and wants to learn about farming in school.

- اكتشفت نانسي أنها تحب زراعة الطعام وترغب في تعلم الزراعة في المدرسة.

• Amal became very hardworking. She even came early to water the plants.

• أصبحت أمل مجتهدة للغاية. حتى أنها جاءت مبكرًا لسقي النباتات.

3. What did Zeina realize about honesty and leadership?

٣. ما الذي أدركته زينة عن الصدق والقيادة؟

- She realized that telling the truth is important. When you are honest, people trust you. This makes you a better leader.

- أدركت أهمية قول الصدق. عندما تكون صادقًا، يثق بك الناس. هذا يجعلك قائدًا أفضل.

4. How did Zeina's limits help her become a better leader?

٤. كيف ساعدت حدود زينة على أن تصبح قائدة أفضل؟

- She told people what she could not do. She did not pretend to be perfect.

Because she was honest, people trusted her more.

- أخبرت الناس بما لا تستطيع فعله. لم تتظاهر بالكمال. لأنها كانت صادقة، وثق بها الناس أكثر.

Critical thinking questions

5. Why was this chapter called "The Impact of Growth"?

٥. لماذا سُمي هذا الفصل "أثر النمو"؟

- It is called that for two reasons:

- سُميت بذلك لسببين:

- The plants in the garden grew.

- نمت النباتات في الحديقة.

- The students also grew on the inside. They learned new things and became better people.

- نما الطلاب أيضًا من الداخل. تعلموا أشياء جديدة وأصبحوا أشخاصًا أفضل.

6. Why do you think people respect the honest?

٦. لماذا تعتقد أن الناس يحترمون الصدق؟

- Because they are real. You can believe what they say. You know they will not lie to you.

- لأنها حقيقية. يمكنك تصديق ما يقولون. أنت تعلم أنهم لن يكذبوا عليك.

7. Mention two things you think teamwork can teach students.

٧. اذكر شيئين تعتقد أن العمل الجماعي يمكن أن يُعلّمهما للطلاب.

A- It teaches you how to work with other people.

أ- تعلمك كيفية العمل مع الآخرين

B- It teaches you that your job is important for the whole team.

ب- تعلمك أن عملك مهم للفريق بأكمله

8. What kind of growth do you think this chapter talks about-plants, people, or both?

٨. ما نوع النمو الذي يتحدث عنه هذا الفصل برأيك - النباتات، أم البشر، أم كليهما؟

- This chapter talks about both the growth of plants and the growth of people.

- يتناول هذا الفصل نمو النباتات ونمو البشر.

9. What kind of impact can a school garden project have on a school or a person?

٩. ما هو الأثر الذي يمكن أن يحدثه مشروع حديقة مدرسية على المدرسة أو الفرد؟

- The project helps students become better, more respectful people who care about their school and each other.

- يساعد المشروع الطلاب على أن يصبحوا أشخاصًا أفضل وأكثر احترامًا، يهتمون بمدرستهم و ببعضهم البعض.

Bit by Bit questions

1. What did Noha do for the garden?

١. ماذا فعلت نهي للحديقة؟

- She made signs and drawings. This made the garden beautiful.

- صممت لافتات ورسومات، مما جعل الحديقة جميلة.

2. How do we know Amal became very dedicated?

٢. كيف عرفنا أن أمل أصبحت مخلصة جدًا؟

- We know because she started coming to school early just to water the plants.

- عرفنا ذلك لأنها بدأت بالحضور إلى المدرسة مبكرًا لسقي النباتات فقط.

3. What was the biggest change from the garden project?

٣. ما هو أكبر تغيير في مشروع الحديقة؟

- The biggest change was not the garden. It was how the students acted and felt.

- لم يكن التغيير الأكبر في الحديقة، بل في تصرفات الطلاب ومشاعرهم.

4. What did Zeina's idea become in the end?

٤. ماذا أصبحت فكرة زينة في النهاية؟

- Her simple idea became a real garden and it also changed the students for the better.

- أصبحت فكرتها البسيطة حديقة حقيقية، كما أنها غيرت حياة الطلاب للأفضل.

5. Why is trust important for a leader?

٥. لماذا الثقة مهمة للقائد؟

Trust is important because people will listen to you and follow you if they believe in you.

- الثقة مهمة لأن الناس سيستمعون إليك ويتبعونك إذا آمنوا بك.

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

- Farmers work in the field of _____ to grow food.
a. agriculture b. industry c. trade d. design
- After the long day's work, he decided to _____ the job and find another one.
a. join b. quit c. enjoy d. build
- She is _____ to her studies and does her homework on time.
a. lazy b. late c. angry d. dedicated
- I _____ my friends. I always ask them for advice.
a. teach b. trust c. copy d. blame

Synonyms and antonyms

- Omar is a real friend. _____ is the synonym of real.
a. Hard b. Wrong c. True d. False
- His father quit school at 16. The antonym of quit is _____.
a. disappear b. continue c. travel d. leave
- Television has such an impact on kids. Impact is similar in meaning to _____.
a. cause b. reason c. effect d. screen

Prefixes and suffixes

- To get the adjective of the verb care, we add the suffix _____.
a. -ful b. -ment c. -ence d. -tion
- To get the noun from the adjective honest, we add the suffix _____.
a. -able b. -y c. -ly d. -ing

Guess the meaning

- We need to find new _____ to this problem before it's too late.
a. limits b. solutions c. leaders d. arts
- The plant's _____ was slow at first, but now it's big and strong.
a. health b. strength c. growth d. wealth
- Climbing the mountain was a real _____ for me.
a. challenge b. industry c. trade d. newcomer
- The teacher welcomed all the _____ to the school.
a. leaders b. newcomers c. trades d. industries

14. I was _____ because I didn't understand the instructions.
a. confused b. excited c. perfect d. honest
15. He felt _____ before the big exam. He couldn't sleep.
a. curious b. nervous c. confident d. honest
16. She was very _____ while giving her speech. She spoke clearly.
a. nervous b. curious c. confident d. confused
17. The child kept asking questions because he was very _____.
a. curious b. honest c. nervous d. perfect
18. I trust her because she is always _____.
a. perfect b. honest c. curious d. confused
19. The cake looks _____.! Did you make it yourself?
a. honest b. perfect c. excited d. confused
20. You should know your _____ and not push yourself too hard.
a. limits b. trades c. arts d. solutions
21. I enjoy painting and drawing because I love _____.
a. trade b. art c. challenge d. industry
22. She is a natural _____. Everyone follows her ideas.
a. trade b. leader c. growth d. newcomer
23. He decided to _____ his job because he found a better one.
a. trust b. impact c. quit d. grow
24. She is a _____ student. She studies every day and never misses a class.
a. confused b. nervous c. dedicated d. curious
25. I _____ my best friend. I can tell her anything.
a. trust b. quit c. impact d. help
26. The new law had a big _____ on the environment.
a. leader b. solution c. impact d. trade
27. I will write _____ my name on the paper.
a. up b. down c. out d. of
28. I feel _____ for being late.
a. sorry b. excited c. confident d. welcome
29. Be careful _____ the hot water!
a. about b. for c. with d. to
30. The coach gave a _____ to us to run fast.
a. awareness b. challenge c. curiosity d. limit
31. We show respect _____ the teacher. We listen and don't shout.
a. to b. about c. for d. with

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the list:

strengths - confused - skills - dedicated - quit - sell

Agriculture is an important industry. Many people work hard on farms. They are ① to their job and never ② it. They grow food to sell it and help the country. Good farmers have got ③ They know their ④ and weaknesses.

3 Complete the following dialog:

Ali is talking to Sara about a new student

Ali : Hey, Sara! ① ?

Sara : Yes, I did. Her name is Lina. ② ?

Ali : No, not yet. She looked a little nervous and shy.

Sara : ③ It's her first day.

Ali : Should we ask her to play with us at break?

Sara : ④

Ali : Can we also help her with her books or homework?

Ali : Of course. And we can smile and be friendly.

Sara : Good plan! Do you want to go and talk to her now?

Ali : Yes, let's go! ⑤

General Exercises on Lessons 3& 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- A student studies every day and works hard.
a. lazy b. funny c. dedicated d. sleepy
- I always my best friend. She never lies.
a. trust b. call c. ask d. forget
- The plant shows good It is taller now.
a. help b. growth c. work d. time
- Climbing the mountain was a big
a. game b. lunch c. challenge d. song
- After studying a lot, she felt before the test.
a. scared b. confident c. tired d. confused

6. The child asked many questions. He was very
a. quiet b. curious c. strong d. lazy
7. We should be and always tell the truth.
a. honest b. fast c. late d. funny
8. After painting many times, I discovered art.
a. love with b. love to c. a love for d. a love to
9. We sit in a corner and eat snacks.
a. break b. break-time c. break time d. time-break
10. Be honest your friend. Tell the truth.
a. to b. with c. for d. about

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

honest - confused - challenge - curious - truth- dishonest

At first, newcomers feel nervous and ①, but later they become confident and ② They try to find solutions when they have a ③ With trust and hard work, they see growth. It's not always perfect, but being ④ and trying your best is the key.

3 Complete the following dialog:

Ali is talking to Omar about a challenge and how it was overcome

Ali : Hey, Omar! You look happy today. Why are you smiling?

Omar : Hi, Ali! I finished my science project. ①

Ali : Really? What made it so difficult?

Omar : We had little time.

Ali : Oh, did you want to quit?

Omar : ② ! I felt so confused at first.

Ali : So, what did you do?

Omar : First, I talked to the teacher. Then, I watched a video at home.

Ali : That's smart. ③

Omar : No, I asked Sara to help.

Ali : ④

Omar : Yes! I finished it on time.

Ali : I'm proud of you! So, what did you learn?

Omar : ⑤

4 Write a sequential paragraph about A HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

(مجاہد عنہ فی آخر الكتاب)

"People respect the honest"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- 1 What does it mean to be honest?
- 2 How do you feel when someone tells the truth?
- 3 Why do people like and respect honest people?

This image shows a single sheet of white paper with horizontal blue or grey ruling lines. The lines are evenly spaced and run across the width of the page. There are no margins, text, or other markings on the paper.



استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

process (n)	عملية (إنتاج خطوات)	practical (adj)	عملي
prototype (n)	نموذج أولي	perfect (adj)	مثالي
design thinking	التفكير الابتكاري	understand (v)	يفهم
make sense	يبدو منطقياً	brainstorm (v-ed)	يفكر و يجادل أفكار تجريبية

Vocabulary



المفردات الإضافية

user (n)	مستخدم	notes (n)	ملاحظات
creative (adj)	مبدع	simple (adj)	بسيط
model (n)	نموذج	improve (v-d)	يحسن
useful (adj)	مفيد	test (v-ed)	يختبر
colorful (adj)	ملون	come up with	يبتكر
reminder chart	مخطط للتذكير	print (v) (ed)	يطبع
desk (n)	مكتب	change (v-d)	يغير
feedback (n)	تغذية راجعة	fix (v-ed)	يصلح



Definitions

process (n)	عملية	a series ⁽¹⁾ of steps or actions taken to achieve ⁽²⁾ something.
perfect (adj)	مثالي	as good as possible; ideal.
make sense (v)	يبدو منطقياً	logically correct; easy to understand.
come up with (v)	يبتكر	to invent ⁽³⁾ or think of an idea or plan.

١. سلسلة
٢. لتحقيق
٣. يخترع

Expressions & Prepositions

solve a problem	يحل مشكلة	make a chart	يرسم جدولاً
do steps	يقوم بخطوات	ask for feedback	يطلب رأي
make a model	يصنع نموذج	make / build a prototype	يصنع نموذج أولي



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
simple	بسيط	easy		difficult	صعب
colorful	ملون	bright		plain	سادة
perfect	مثالي	ideal		imperfect	غير مثالي
fix	يصلح	mend		damage	يدمر

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ing	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	drawing
-ful	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	useful
-ive	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	creative
-ly	تحول الصفة إلى حال	exactly

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
understand	يصنع	understood	understood
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten



Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1) where

• where حيث

• تستخدم where للتعبير عن المكان ويمكن استخدامها بمعنى حيث للتعبير عن عملية أو خطوات أو مرحلة

Ex. A school is a place where we learn.

Ex. Design thinking is a process where you improve your prototype.

2) way

• way طريق

Ex. Ahmed is on his way to school.

• way طريقة - أسلوب

Ex. It's a way to solve problems by doing some steps.

3) simple - sample - symbol

• simple بسيط

Ex. You should make a **simple** model.

• sample عينة

Ex. I'd like to see some **samples** of your work.

• symbol رمز

Ex. "H" is the scientific **symbol** for hydrogen.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- All the of blood were tested for bacteria.
a. letters b. symbols c. samples d. exams
- Make the drink with boiling water in the same as tea.
a. road b. way c. weight d. bottle
- The dove is a of peace.
a. symbol b. sample c. single d. simple
- The patient reached the point he can walk safely.
a. what b. where c. why d. who

Reading

SB Page (80)

استمع إلى النصوص



SB Page (80)

Learning About Design Thinking

١. التفكير الابتكاري
٢. يحل

Amir : Hi Magdy, do you know what **design thinking**⁽¹⁾ is?

Magdy : Not really. What is it?

Amir : It's a way to **solve**⁽²⁾ problems by doing some steps. First, you must understand the users and what they need. This part might take some time, but it's important.



Magdy : Okay, what comes next?

Amir : Next, think of many ideas. Be **creative**⁽³⁾ and don't worry about being **perfect**⁽⁴⁾.

Magdy : Got it. Then?

Amir : Then, you should make a simple **model**⁽⁵⁾ or **drawing**⁽⁶⁾ called a **prototype**⁽⁷⁾.

Magdy : Is it okay if it's not perfect?

Amir : Yes! Design thinking is a **process**⁽⁸⁾ where you improve your prototype many times.

Magdy : **That makes sense**⁽⁹⁾. What happens after making the prototype?

Amir : Finally, test it and ask people what they think. Then, fix it and make it better. Keep it **practical**⁽¹⁰⁾ and useful.

Magdy : Thanks! So, first understand, then brainstorm, next make a prototype, and keep improving it.

Amir : Exactly! If you do this, you might make something really great.

Reading Skill

مهارة القراءة (الاجابة بالاسفل)

Answer the following questions:

1. What is the first step in the design thinking process?
2. What is the second step?
- 3- What happens after making the prototype?

Answers:
1- First, you must understand the users and what they need.
2- Next, think of many ideas. Be creative and don't worry about being perfect.
3- Finally, test it and ask people what they think.

٣. مبدع
٤. مثالي
٥. نموذج
٦. رسمة
٧. نموذج أولي
٨. عملية
٩. هذا يبدو منطقي
١٠. عملي



SB Page (81)

Layla : Do you know what design thinking is?

Omar : A little bit. It's about solving problems, right?

Layla : Yes! First, you need to understand the people who will use your idea.

Omar : Okay, and then?

Layla : Then you brainstorm, which means **coming up with**⁽¹⁾ many creative ideas.

Omar : **Sounds fun**⁽²⁾!

Layla : After that, build a simple prototype and test it.

Omar : And if it doesn't work?

Layla : That's okay. The process can be improved, so you **try again**⁽³⁾ till it gets better.

Omar : Got it! Keep it **practical**⁽⁴⁾ and useful.

١. يأتي بـ
٢. يبدو رائعا
٣. حاول مرة أخرى
٤. عملي

Read and complete with sequence adverbs:

Helping Students Remember Homework

First, our group wants to solve the problem of students forgetting their homework. Our idea is to make a colorful homework reminder chart that students can keep in their desks.

Then, we will test it by giving the chart to a group of students and ask them to use it for one week. **After that**, we will ask for feedback from the students and teachers. If students like it, we will print more charts.

Finally, if they don't, we can change the design or add space for parents' notes.

Exercises on Lessons 5 - 6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

1. A means a series of steps or actions taken to achieve something.
a. model b. chart c. prototype d. process
2. To make means logically correct; easy to understand.
a. sure b. sense c. since d. science
3. To with means to invent or think of an idea or plan.
a. come up b. come in c. come out d. meet up

Synonyms and antonyms

4. "Fix" and "damage" are
a. nouns b. adjectives c. antonyms d. synonyms
5. The synonym of "perfect" is
a. bad b. imperfect c. sad d. ideal
6. "Simple" is the opposite of "....."
a. easy b. difficult c. fat d. good

Prefixes and suffixes

7. To make the word "draw" into a noun we add the suffix
a. -ly b. -ful c. -ing d. -ed
8. When we add the suffix "-ive" to the word create, It turns into a / an
a. adjective b. adverb c. noun d. verb.

9. To make the word "use" into an adjective we add the suffix
 a. -ful b. -er c. -ing d. -able

Guess the meaning

10. Before starting the project, our teacher asked us to new ideas together.
 a. delete b. brainstorm c. damage d. kill
11. Mr. Ahmed gives Mai advice that she can use in her daily life.
 a. a practical b. a sad c. a lucky d. a bad
12. our teacher gave us useful on our projects to help us improve.
 a. effect b. impact c. feedback d. shout
13. Salma baked a/an cake for my birthday. It looked amazing!
 a. hat b. bad c. awful d. perfect
14. Akram is very He always finds new ideas to solve problems.
 a. creative b. lazy c. rude d. cute

Speaking

Ask questions to keep the conversation active and clear:

• اطرح أسئلة للحفاظ على وضوح واستمرار المحادثة:

Question

- I think our project is going well.
 اعتقد ان مشروعنا يسير بشكل جيد.
- We need to design the model.
 نحتاج ان نصمم نموذج.
- We can build a simple prototype.
 نستطيع ان نصنع نموذج بسيط.

Answer

- That's true. What's next?
 هذا صحيح. ما التالي.
- Is it Okay if I draw the first sketch?
 هل هذا جيد لو رسمت أول رسمة.
- Can you explain more?
 هل يمكنك ان تشرح أكثر؟

General Exercises



on Lessons 5 & 6

1 Finish the following dialog:

Omar and Amr are talking about design thinking

Omar : Can I ask you some questions?

Amr : ①

Omar : Do you know what design thinking is?

Amr : Not really ②

Omar : It's a way of solving problems by understanding people's needs.

Amr : That makes sense ③

Omar : The first step is empathy, which means seeing things through people's eyes.

Amr : That's cool! What do we do after empathy?

Omar : ④

Amr : Brainstorm ideas! Can we use it at school project?

Omar : ⑤

Amr : Thank you for your time.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

desks - tasks - remember - reminder - test - feedback

Our group wants to solve the problem of students forgetting their homework. Our idea is to make colorful homework ① chart that students can keep in their ② We will ③ it by giving the chart to the students. We will ask for ④ from the students and teachers.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When something is as good as possible or ideal this means it is

- a. bad b. normal c. perfect d. sad

2. Saleh's solutions were He could solve the problem.

- a. impractical b. practical c. negative d. useless

3. To make the word "exact" into an adverb we add

- a. -er b. -ing c. -ly d. -ment

4. To get the adjective of the verb create, we add the suffix -----
 a. -ful b. -ive c. -ence d. -tion
5. To get the noun from the verb draw, we add the suffix -----
 a. -able b. -y c. -ly d. -ing
6. We built a ----- of the house using cardboard.
 a. cause b. reason c. model d. screen
7. Our first ----- was made of paper and tape.
 a. prototype b. reason c. effect d. screen
8. I asked my friend for ----- on my drawing.
 a. sample b. comeback c. feedback d. pack back
9. I practice every day to ----- my reading.
 a. improve b. remove c. move d. prove
10. Learning to write is a slow -----
 a. race b. address c. process d. road
11. I read the question 3 times before I could ----- it.
 a. remind b. understand c. affect d. test

4 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الكتاب)

"A review about describing your group's design project."

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

- 1- What design project did you decide to do?
- 2-Who did the group make the new shopping bag for?
- 3-What did the group use to build their first model?
- 4-How did people feel about your design project when they tested it?

Review on Unit 5

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

problem-solver (n)	حلال المشكلات	solutions (n)	حلول
schedule (n)	الجدول الزمني / مواعيد	comfort (n)	راحة
stylish (adj)	أنيق / من الطراز الحديث	relationship (n)	علاقة
prototypes (n)	نماذج أولية	points of view	وجهات نظر / آراء
creativity (n)	الإبداع	ideation (n)	توليد الأفكار
agriculture (n)	الزراعة	buddy (n)	صديق / صاحب
quit (v-ed)	يترك / يستقيل	design (n)	تصميم
dedicated (adj)	مخلص / مكرس	real people (n)	أشخاص حقيقيين
trust (v-ed)	يثق	real feelings (n)	مشاعر حقيقية
process (n)	عملية (إنتاج خطوات)	practical (adj)	عملي
prototype (n)	نموذج أولي	perfect (adj)	مثالي
design thinking	التفكير الابتكاري	understand (v)	يفهم
make sense	يبدو منطقياً	brainstorm (v-ed)	يفكر و يجادل أفكار تجريبية



Language

قواعد لغوية

The imperative الأمر

Affirmative

أمر مثبت

Inf + باقي الجملة

Ex. Show me how to use it!

Ex. Tap the app to open it.

• لتكوين صيغة الأمر نبدأ الجملة بمصدر الفعل في الأمر المثبت. ونبدأ بـ (Never / Don't) في الأمر

Negative

أمر منفي

Don't + inf + باقي الجملة

Ex. Don't stop pressing.

Ex. Don't stay up late.

المنفي + مصدر الفعل



Notes

١. يمكن استخدام Always قبل الأمر المثبت.

٢. يمكن استخدام Never بدلاً من Don't في الأمر المنفي.

٣. يمكن استخدام Just / please لتقليل حدة الأمر.

٤. لا يتم استخدام الضمير You قبل الأمر إلا في حالة تأكيد الأمر.

٥. عند إعطاء الأمر بفعل يكون نبدأ بـ Be.

Speaking

Sequence Connectors أدوات الربط التسلسلي

Sequence Connectors help us organize the steps in a process.

تساعدنا أدوات الربط التسلسلي في تنظيم خطوات العملية:

First, / Firstly, / To begin with, أولا

نستخدم لبدء شرح الخطوة الأولى في أي عملية:

Ex. First, identify the problem by talking to users.

Next, / Then, / After that, ثم / بعد ذلك / بعد هذا

نستخدم لربط الخطوات المتتالية بعد البداية:

Ex. Then, brainstorm many different solutions.

Ex. After that, define the problem clearly.

Ex. Next, build a simple prototype to test.

Subsequently, / Following this, عقب ذلك / بعد ذلك مباشرة

نستخدم غالبا في السياقات الكتابية:

Ex. Subsequently, the mixture is left to cool.

Finally, / Lastly, / In conclusion, أخيرا / في الختام

نستخدم للإشارة إلى الخطوة الأخيرة أو لإنهاء الكلام:

Ex. Finally, test the prototype with real users.

Design thinking steps in order using sequence connectors

خطوات التفكير التصميمي بالترتيب باستخدام أدوات الربط التسلسلي

First, identify the problem by talking to users. **Then,** define the problem clearly. **Next,** brainstorm many different solutions. **After that,** build a simple prototype to test. **Finally,** test the prototype with real users.

Ask questions to keep the conversation active and clear:

• اطرح أسئلة للحفاظ على وضوح واستمرار المحادثة:

Question

- I think our project is going well.
اعتقد أن مشروعنا يسير بشكل جيد.
- We need to design the model.
نحتاج أن نصمم نموذج.
- We can build a simple prototype.
نستطيع أن نصنع نموذج بسيط.

Answer

- That's true. What's next?
هذا صحيح. ما التالي.
- Is it Okay if I draw the first sketch?
هل هذا جيد لو رسمت أول رسمة.
- Can you explain more?
هل يمكنك أن تشرح أكثر؟

Paragraphs & Emails

مهارات الكتابة ورسائل البريد الإلكتروني عن موضوعات وردت بالوحدة

Lessons 1 & 2

The design process begins with identifying the problem and understanding the user's needs through research. The next step involves brainstorming and generating a lot of creative ideas and possible solutions. These ideas are then developed into prototypes, which are tested and evaluated with users. Based on this feedback, the design is revised and improved. The final step is the applying of the finished and tested design into its final form and delivering the complete solution to the market or client.

Lessons 3 & 4

I strongly believe that people truly respect those who are honest. It is a very important quality everywhere, from school to work to family. When you are honest, people learn to trust you. They know you will tell the truth, even when it is difficult. This makes them see you as a strong and reliable person. Nobody can trust a liar. Without trust, relationships become weak and fearful.

Lessons 5 & 6

Our "Easy-Carry" Shopping Bag Project Our group designed a new shopping bag for elderly people. The goal was to make carrying groceries easier and more comfortable. First, we talked to grandparents to learn about their problems. Then, we sketched many ideas together. Our best idea was a bag with wide, soft handles and a light frame. We built a prototype from old cloth and tested it. The feedback was very positive, especially about the comfortable handles. I think our project was a success. Our final design solved a real problem. Next time, we could try to make it from stronger recycled material. I am proud of what we made.

Al-Azhar Test

Helping people is one of the most important things we can do. When you help someone, like a friend with homework or carrying groceries for a neighbor, you make their day better. This small act can also make you feel happy and proud inside. Helping doesn't require money; it just requires a kind heart and willingness to care for others. It shows that we are all connected and that no one has to face their problems alone.

Test on Unit 5

Solving a problem is like being a detective. First, you need to clearly understand what the problem is. Ask questions to learn all about it. Next, think of all the different ways you could fix it. Don't judge the ideas yet; just write them down. Then, choose the best idea from your list and make a plan to try it. After that, put your plan into action. Finally, see if your solution worked. If the problem is still there, don't give up! Just learn from what happened and try a different idea. The key is to stay calm and take one small step at a time.

Al Azhar

Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Mona and Habiba are talking about their school project.

Mona : What are you thinking about?

Habiba : ①

Mona : Our school project! ②?

Habiba : I want to make a plan to help weak students.

Mona : Can I help you?

Habiba : ③

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

creative - break - improve - caring - solutions

Design thinking is very important. Design thinking means ① about people and imagining better ② Anyone can be a designer-all you need is a ③ mind and a need to ④ the world around you.

3 Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

Egypt is a big Arab country. It is located in the north east of Africa. Egypt has a population of about 108 million people. They are famous for being kind and friendly. Egypt also has a very fine weather and a very long and great history. Its fine weather and its beautiful ancient monuments attract millions of tourists from all over the world. The Great pyramid in Giza is the most popular monument in the world. We all should be proud of Egypt.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What attracts tourists to Egypt?

.....

2. What is the most popular monument in the world?

.....

3. What is the weather in Egypt like?

.....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The Egyptians are people.

a. lazy

b. friendly

c. strange

d. negative

5. Egypt has a population of one hundred million.

- a. more b. less c. under d. about

4 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. In my point of, Egypt is the best country in the world.

- a. interview b. view c. opinion d. onion

2. To means to clearly state the problem you want to solve.

- a. define b. fine c. mine d. defame

3. I was as I didn't understand the question.

- a. relaxed b. calm c. good d. confused

4. My grandpa aged 82.

- a. die b. dies c. died d. dying

5. Her new outfit was very and comfortable.

- a. stylish b. bad c. sad d. uncomfortable

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. (Do) hesitate. Trust your abilities.

2. (Saving) your time.

3. (Ever) tell lies.

4. (Not study) hard and sleep well.

5. Don't (eats) unhealthy food.

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Helping People"

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test on Unit 5

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Reem and Malak are talking about a test.

Reem : Why do you look worried?

Malak : ①

Reem : ②?

Malak : Yes, I have an English test.

Reem : ③?

Malak : Because I don't like grammar.

Reem : Can I help you?

Malak : ④

Reem : Don't worry. You will do well.

Malak : ⑤

2 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

since - prototype - feedback - sense - come up with - come out

Our teacher said we could try a design. We started to ① new ideas. We built a ② using paper and glue. It looked simple, but it worked. The teacher gave us a good ③ Now everything starts to make ④

3 Read the following text then answer the questions:

I never forget my grandfather who used to do simple things to help others. Once, on a dark night, I saw him climbing up to the roof of his house which was near the sea shore with a candle in his hand. I asked him, "What are you going to do?" He replied, "I'm going to help others who may need help, just wait and you will see!"

I followed him to understand what he meant. I saw him put the candle inside a glass box and lift it to the top of the house. Then, I realized that he wanted to help the fishing boats to find their way to the shore when they see the light of the candle. Then, he advised me to be like the candle whose little light may be very useful for others. I still remember his words. "Help others to see happiness in their eyes and smiles on their faces".

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea of the passage is

a. diving in the sea

b. climbing the roof

c. how to be healthy

d. "A light to guide others"

- a. the writer

c. the writer's grandmother

- Why do you think we should help others?

What did the grandfather use to do?

- How was the candle's light useful for the fishing boats?

What lesson did the grandfather teach the narrator about helping others?

- We used _____ to solve the big problem.

a. feedback

a. sorts

a. -er



استمع إلى المفردات

المفردات الرئيسية

Key Vocabulary

emotional (adj)	عاطفي	spark (v ed)	يحفز / يثير
moral (n / adj)	درس / رسالة - اخلاقي	mentally (adv)	عقليا / ذهنيا
various (adj)	متعدد / متنوع	honestly (adv)	بأمانة / بصدق
point of view (n)	وجهة نظر	unfair (adj)	غير عادل
empathy (n)	التعاطف	recommendations (n)	توصيات
critically (adv)	بشكل ناقد	debate (n)	مناظرة
aware (adj)	واع / مدرك	stick (v stuck) with	يرتبط بالذهن / يظل في الذاكرة
conflict (n)	صراع / خلاف		

Vocabulary



المفردات الاضافية

character (n)	شخصية	nervous (adj)	عصبي
social events (n)	الأحداث الاجتماعية	boring (adj)	ممل
situations (n)	مواقف	valuable (adj)	قيم / ذو قيمة
lifestyle (n)	نمط أو أسلوب حياة	respectful (adj)	يتسم بالاحترام للآخرين
personality (n)	شخصية	understanding (adj)	متفهم
choice (n)	اختيار	thoughtful (adj)	مراعي لشعور الآخرين
imagination (n)	الخيال	emotionally (adv)	عاطفيا / وجدانيا
culture (n)	ثقافة	moreover (adv)	علاوة على ذلك
solution (n)	حل	actually (adv)	في الواقع
argument (n)	جدال	normally (adv)	عادة
awareness (n)	وعي / إدراك	shape (v d / n)	يشكل / شكل
react (v ed)	يتفاعل	explore (v d)	يستكشف
entertain (v ed)	يسلي	memorize (v d)	يحفظ
behavior (n)	سلوك / تصرف		

Definitions

various (adj.) متعدد/مختلف	different kinds or types ⁽¹⁾ ; many and not the same.	
moral (adj.) أخلاقي	(be) related to what is right or wrong in behavior ⁽²⁾ .	
point of view (n.) وجهة نظر	ways of thinking about something.	
empathy (n.) التعاطف	the ability ⁽³⁾ to understand and share someone else's feelings.	١. أصناف ٢. سلوك ٣. قدرة ٤. مدروس ٥. بالتساوي ٦. ذاكرة ٧. آراء ٨. رسمي
aware (adj.) واعي/مدرك	knowing or noticing something.	
spark (v. ed) يحفز أو يبدأ شيء	to start or cause something to happen.	
critically (adv.) بشكل نقدي	in a careful and thoughtful ⁽⁴⁾ way; not just accepting things as they are.	
honestly (adv.) بصدق/بأمانة	in an honest way / truly	
unfair (adj.) غير عادل	not right or fair. / not treating people equally ⁽⁵⁾ .	
stick with يعلق بالذاكرة	to remain in someone's memory ⁽⁶⁾ .	
debate (n.) مناظرة	an argument or a discussion expressing different opinions ⁽⁷⁾ .	
recommendations (n.) توصيات	official ⁽⁸⁾ suggestions about the best thing to do.	

Expressions & Prepositions

for fun	من أجل المتعة	without having to	دون الاضطرار لـ
face challenges	يواجه التحديات	speak up	يتحدث بصوت مرتفع
go through	يمرّ به (موقف أو تجربة)	(be) related to	مرتبط أو متصل بـ
make a decision	يتخذ قرار	grow mentally	ينمو عقليا
spark imagination	يحفز الخيال	win an argument	يفوز في الجدل
solve conflicts	يحلّ الصراعات	(be / become) aware of	يصبح واعيا بـ / مدركا لـ
agree / disagree with	يتفق / يختلف مع	increase awareness	يزيد من الوعي أو الإدراك



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
moral (n. / adj.)	خلفي	lesson		immoral	غير خلفي
various (adj.)	متنوع	varied		unique	فريد
spark (v. ed)	يلهم	start / stimulate		discourage	يثبط
honestly (adv.)	بأمانة	frankly		dishonestly	بعدم أمانة
unfair (adj.)	غير عادل	unjust		fair	عادل
aware (adj.)	واع	alert		unaware	غير واع
memorize	يتذكر	learn		forget	ينسى

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
dis-	تعطي عكس معنى الصفة	dishonest
-al	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	emotional
-ly	تحول الصفة إلى ظرف	critically
-able	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	enjoyable
-ment	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	argument
-ation	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	imagination

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
learn	يتعلم	learned / learnt	learned / learnt
teach	يعلم	taught	taught
grow	ينمو	grew	grown
become	يصبح / يصير	became	become
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
wear	يرتدي / يلبس	wore	worn

Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 allow + اسم / ضمير مفعول + to-inf.: يسمح ل... أن...

- إذا جاء اسم أو ضمير مفعول بعد الفعل (allow) فإنه يتبعه فعل بالمصدر مسبقاً بـ (to):

Ex. My father didn't allow me to drive his car.

- لكن لاحظ أنه يمكن أيضاً أن يأتي بعده اسم أو v-ing ليكون معناه (يسمح بـ):

Ex. They don't allow smoking here.

2 debate / argument:

• debate (n.) مناظرة

- تستخدم كلمة (debate) للتعبير عن مناقشة رسمية منظمة يعرض فيها كل طرف وجهة نظره بهدوء واحترام حول موضوع محدد ويدعم وجهة نظره بالحقائق:

Ex. The two teams had a friendly debate about healthy food.

Ex. The teacher asked us to have a debate about online learning.

• argument (n.) جدال

- تستخدم كلمة (argument) للتعبير عن مناقشة حامية أو جدال حاد يتسم بارتفاع الصوت وجدة المشاعر بين طرفين يحاول فيها كل طرف إثبات خطأ الطرف الثاني:

Ex. They had an argument about who should wash the dishes.

Ex. She had a big argument with her sister over toys.

3 explore / discover / invent:

• explore (v.) يستكشف

- يستخدم الفعل (explore) ليشير إلى البحث بشكل نشط أو السفر عبر منطقة ما للتعرف عليها بغرض الترفيه أو للتعليم:

Ex. We explored the forest to see which animals live there.

Ex. She likes to explore new cities when she travels.

• discover (v.) يكتشف

- يستخدم الفعل (discover) ليشير إلى العثور على شيء لأول مرة، وهذا الشيء كان موجوداً بالفعل ولكنه لم يكن معروفاً من قبل:

Ex. Columbus discovered America in 1492.

Ex. They discovered a new ancient tomb in Saqqara.

• invent (v.) يخترع

- يستخدم الفعل (invent) ليشير إلى صنع أو إنشاء أو تصميم شيء جديد، لم يكن موجوداً من قبل:

Ex. Alexander Graham Bell invented the telephone.

Ex. He invented a machine that cleans oceans.

4 at the end / in the end: في النهاية

- يستخدم التعبيرين بمعنى (في النهاية)، ولكن
(at the end) تستخدم للدلالة على المكان أو
النقطة - في نهاية

Ex. There's a post office **at the end of**
this street.

Ex. We finally finished the project **at**
the end of last month.

- أما (in the end) نستخدم للدلالة النتيجة أو
الخاتمة / في النهاية:

Ex. We argued for hours, but **in the**
end, we agreed on a solution.

Ex. The team faced many injuries,
but **in the end**, they won the
match.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The teacher did not allow us in the classroom.
a. eat b. to eat c. ate d. eats
- The school organized a/an about recycling.
a. argument b. arguments c. debates d. debate
- Tom had a/an with his sister about who should do the shopping.
a. argument b. debate c. lesson d. mental
- Astronauts space to learn about planets."
a. discover b. invent c. explore d. invite
- Thomas Edison worked hard to the electric light bulb.
a. invent b. explore c. discover d. drive

Reading

SB Page (86)

استمع إلى النص

Stories shape our Thinking

Reading stories can greatly **improve**⁽¹⁾ the way we think and understand the world around us. Through stories, we **enter**⁽²⁾ the minds of different **characters**⁽³⁾, **face**⁽⁴⁾ their **challenges**⁽⁵⁾, and see how they **respond**⁽⁶⁾ to **difficult situations**⁽⁷⁾. This **allows**⁽⁸⁾ us to **explore**⁽⁹⁾ **various**⁽¹⁰⁾ types of problems-emotional⁽¹¹⁾, social⁽¹²⁾, or even **moral**⁽¹³⁾ - without **having to**⁽¹⁴⁾ go through them ourselves. Stories also introduce us to different points of view, cultures, and lifestyles. As we read, we begin to develop **empathy**⁽¹⁵⁾ and learn that problems can have more than one **solution**⁽¹⁶⁾.



١. يحسن / يطور
٢. يدخل
٣. شخصيات
٤. يواجه
٥. التحديات
٦. يستجيب لـ
٧. مواقف
٨. يتيح / يسمح
٩. يستكشف
١٠. متعدد
١١. عاطفي
١٢. اجتماعي
١٣. أخلاقي
١٤. الاضطرار لـ
١٥. التعاطف
١٦. حل

Seeing how characters **solve conflicts**⁽¹⁷⁾ or **make decisions**⁽¹⁸⁾ helps us **think about**⁽¹⁹⁾ our own lives and think critically about our **choices**⁽²⁰⁾.

Moreover⁽²¹⁾, stories spark **our imagination**⁽²²⁾ and make learning more enjoyable. We often remember lessons better when they are part of a story. That's why many of us love reading stories—they **entertain**⁽²³⁾ us, teach us important life skills, and help us grow **mentally**⁽²⁴⁾ and **emotionally**⁽²⁵⁾. In the end, reading stories is not just fun; it's also a powerful way to become wiser and more **aware of**⁽²⁶⁾ the world.

١٧. يحل الصراعات
١٨. يتخذ قرارات
١٩. يفكر في
٢٠. خيارات
٢١. علاوة على ذلك
٢٢. خيالنا
٢٣. يسلي
٢٤. عقليا
٢٥. وجدانيا
٢٦. مدرك لـ

Reading Skill

مهاراة القراءة (الاجابة بالاسفل)

Answer the following questions:

1. What is the benefit of reading stories?
2. In your opinion, what is the most valuable lesson a person can learn from reading stories?
3. How does reading stories help people become more understanding of others?

The answers:
1. Reading stories helps our imagination grow. It teaches us about feelings, places, and ideas.
2. Stories teach us to care for others, be brave, and help people in need.
3. When we read about characters, we feel what they feel and learn why they act that way. This helps us understand real people better.



Audio Script



SB Page (88)

Omar : Hey Ali, you looked really calm during the class debate today. I thought you'd be nervous about **speaking up**⁽¹⁾.

Ali : Honestly, I was nervous at first. But I remembered a story I read last month that helped me.

Omar : Really? What was it?

Ali : It was a **narrative**⁽²⁾ story where the main character stayed calm and respectful even when people were being **unfair**⁽³⁾. **That stuck with me**⁽⁴⁾.

Omar : So how did that help you today?

Ali : Well, during the debate, someone strongly **disagreed with**⁽⁵⁾ me. **Normally**⁽⁶⁾, I might **get upset**⁽⁷⁾. But I took a deep breath and responded calmly.

Omar : That's smart. So reading that story **actually**⁽⁸⁾ helped you in real life.

Ali : Exactly. It taught me that staying respectful and calm can make your argument stronger. Stories can really teach you more than you expect.

Omar : I guess I need to read more! Do you have any recommendations?

١. الحديث بصوت عالي
٢. رواي / سردي
٣. غير عادل
٤. ظل عالقا في ذهني
٥. يختلف مع
٦. طبيعيا
٧. يشعر بالانزعاج
٨. في الواقع

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

1. Knowing or noticing something is being SB
a. asleep b. aware c. alive d. ashore
2. To think of things a careful and thoughtful way is to think SB
a. physically b. normally c. costly d. critically
3. To start or cause something to happen is to SB
a. spark b. control c. argue d. support
4. is related to what is right or wrong in behavior. SB
a. Debate b. Shape c. Moral d. Conflict
5. The ability to understand and share someone else's feelings is defined as SB
a. moral b. conflict c. social d. empathy
6. Different kinds or types; many and not the same means SB
a. various b. joined c. similar d. connected
7. The way you think about something is your point of
a. interview b. view c. opinion d. empathy
8. with is to remain in someone's memory .
a. Stick b. Start c. Lose d. Miss
9. are official suggestions about the best thing to do.
a. Abilities b. Skills c. Information d. Recommendations

Synonyms and Antonyms

10. The antonym for the word "honesty" is
a. truly b. dishonesty c. unjust d. unfair
11. He was aware of the problem so he solved it easily. The antonym for "aware" is
a. ignorant b. known c. realize d. remember
12. The word "unfair" means
a. just b. fair c. unjust d. right
13. He can memorize new vocabulary. The opposite of "memorize" is
a. remind b. get c. keep d. forget

Prefixes and Suffixes

14. To get the opposite of the word "aware", we add the prefix
a. in- b. un- c. ir- d. im-

15. The suffix "-al" turns the noun "emotion" into a/an
 a. adjective b. adverb c. noun d. preposition
16. To change the verb "argue" into a noun, we add the suffix
 a. -ment b. -tion c. -ness d. -ition
17. To get the antonym of the word "honest", we add the prefix
 a. in- b. im- c. ir- d. dis-

Guess the meaning

18. You must be of cars when you cross the street.
 a. tired b. aware c. happy d. scared
19. He enjoys a healthy because he eats well and exercises.
 a. perspective b. hairstyle c. introduction d. lifestyle
20. I enjoy events like birthday parties and weddings.
 a. rainy b. equal c. social d. illegal
21. Always be of other people's opinions.
 a. successful b. respectful c. powerful d. beautiful
22. Good friends should show you their when you're sad.
 a. empathy b. anger c. laughter d. speed
23. We play football after school just fun.
 a. on b. for c. to d. at
24. The store sells clothes in sizes, so everyone can find something to wear.
 a. various b. serious c. furious d. genius
25. This necklace is very to me because it is a gift from my grandmother.
 a. pretty b. new c. valuable d. expensive
26. The phone is not working, and, the screen is broken.
 a. moreover b. however c. therefore d. because
27. I love to tourist sites in the city and learn more about them.
 a. discover b. explore c. change d. invent

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

valuable - told - said - interesting - point - sparked

My teacher told us a story about two friends. She ①, "Seeing things from another person's ② of view helps us understand them." Later, we had a class debate about it. The story ③ new ideas in my mind. I realized listening to others is very ④, Now, I try to understand different views before I speak.



Language

قواعد لغوية

Reported speech (الكلام المنقول (المُبلَّغ للغير)

- هناك طريقتين لنقل الكلام من شخص لآخر:

الكلام المنقول	Reported speech	الكلام المباشر	Direct Speech
الكلام المنقول هو أن نذكر ما قيل ولكن نغير الكلمات التي قيلت لتناسب مع السياق الجديد للجملة:	الكلام المنقول هو أن نذكر ما قيل ولكن نغير الكلمات التي قيلت لتناسب مع السياق الجديد للجملة:	الكلام المباشر هو نص الكلام الذي قاله المتحدث دون تغيير ويوضع دائماً بين أقواس وذلك كالتالي:	الكلام المباشر هو نص الكلام الذي قاله المتحدث دون تغيير ويوضع دائماً بين أقواس وذلك كالتالي:
1- He said that he would be home the next morning.	1- "I'll be home tomorrow morning," he said.	2- She said that she wanted to visit her aunt.	2- "I want to visit my aunt," she said.

Reported statements (الجملة الخبرية المنقولة)

- عند تحويل الجملة الخبرية من كلام مباشر إلى كلام غير مباشر اتبع الآتي:

❶ يحول فعل القول كما يلي:

Direct	Reported	Direct	Reported
say	say	say to	tell
says	says	says to	tells
said	said	said to	told

❷ تحذف الأقواس وعلامات التنصيص ونربط بكلمة **that** ويمكن الاستغناء عنها.

❸ تغير ضمائر المتكلم، والمخاطب داخل الأقواس حسب السياق العام للجملة.

أما ضمائر الغائب مثل: (He / She / It) فتبقى دون تغيير:

- Manar said, "I do my homework at night." (Direct)
- = Manar said that she did her homework at night. (Reported)
- Hamza said, "I'll lend you some money." (Direct)
- = Hamza promised that he would lend me some money. (Reported))

4 تغيير الأزمنة كالآتي:

Direct	Reported
1- Present simple مضارع بسيط eat / eats	Past simple ماضى بسيط ate
2- Present continuous مضارع مستمر am / is / are eating	Past continuous ماضى مستمر was / were eating
3- Present perfect مضارع تام has / have eaten	Past perfect ماضى تام had eaten
4- Past simple ماضى بسيط ate	Past perfect ماضى تام had eaten
5- Past perfect ماضى تام had eaten	Past perfect ماضى تام had eaten

5 تغيير الأفعال الناقصة كما يلي:

Direct	Reported
will + inf.	would + inf.
can + inf.	could + inf.
has / have to + inf.	had to + inf.
must + inf. (الزام - نصيحة)	must / had to + inf.
mustn't + inf.	mustn't + inf.

- He said, "I **must go** home at once." (Direct)
- = He said that he **had to / must go** home at once. (Reported)
- He said, "Ahmed **can speak** French." (Direct)
- = He said that Ahmed **could speak** French. (Reported)

6 يتم تغيير أسماء الإشارة والكلمات الدالة على المكان والزمان كالآتي:

Direct	Reported	Direct	Reported
this	that	ago	before / earlier
yet	by then	now	then / at that time
these	those	tomorrow	the next day the following day the day after
here	there	next (week)	the next (week) the following (week) the (week) after

Unit 6 Why do We Like Stories?

today	that day
tonight	that night

yesterday	the day before the previous day
last (night)	the (night) before the previous (night) the last (night)

at the moment → at that moment
tomorrow morning → the following morning
last Sunday → the previous Sunday
come → go

- Ali said, "I **bought** a mobile **yesterday**." (Direct)
- = Ali said that he **had bought** a mobile the **previous day**. (Reported)
- He said to me, "I'll **mend** my roof **tomorrow**." (Direct)
- = He told me that he **would mend** his roof **the day after**. (Reported)



١ - لا تتغير الأزمنة والظروف وأسماء الإشارة داخل الأقواس في الحالات الآتية:

① إذا كان فعل القول في زمن المضارع أو المستقبل:

- He **says**, "I **am visiting** Luxor next month." (Direct)

= He **says** that he **is visiting** Luxor next month. (Reported)

② إذا كان الكلام المباشر عبارة عن حقائق لا تتغير (ويمكن أيضاً تغيير زمن الفعل في هذه الحالة):

- The teacher said to us, "The Nile **is** the longest river in the world." (Direct)

= The teacher told us that the Nile **is / was** the longest river in the world. (Reported)

③ إذا كان الكلام قد قيل حالاً ويبدل على ذلك كلمات وتعبيرات مثل:

just - just now - a minute ago - a short time ago - a moment ago

- He said just now, "I **have won** the cup." (Direct)

= He said just now that he **has won** the cup. (Reported)

Check your understanding ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Dad has told me that he me a car next year.
a. was buying b. will buy c. had bought d. bought
- He told me that he the robbers the night before.
a. had seen b. will see c. has seen d. have seen

3. She said that she her brother to the airport that day.
a. shall take b. was taking c. is taking d. will take
4. He said that he hadn't visited the zoo
a. tomorrow b. yesterday c. the week before d. last week
5. She said that she for two hours that day.
a. has waited b. have waited c. will have wait d. had waited
6. He said that he to the USA the week after.
a. will travel b. is traveling c. was traveling d. can travel

Exercises on Grammar

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. Sama Rody helped her understand the lessons.
a. said b. told c. says d. asks
2. Abdulrahman said his father would buy a bike for
a. he b. his c. him d. himself
3. "..... can help you, mom", said Ahmed.
a. I b. me c. my d. myself
4. Omar said that you really calm during the class debate today.
a. looks b. looked c. has looked d. will look
5. Ali told Omar that, during the debate, someone strongly disagreed with
a. me b. him c. his d. I
6. Omar said he he needed to read more.
a. guesses b. guessed c. will guess d. guess

Bit by Bit Exercises

7. He said that he his homework at that time.
a. was doing b. is doing c. will do d. had done
8. She told me that she to the cinema the night before.
a. had gone b. went c. has gone d. is going
9. He said that he home the following day.
a. goes b. had gone c. will go d. would go
10. He me that he was tired.
a. told b. wanted c. said d. asked
11. He that the meeting would be at three o'clock.
a. said to b. enquired c. said d. told
12. Tom said he to visit his friends that weekend.
a. is wanting b. wants c. wanted d. has wanted

3. She said that she her brother to the airport that day.
a. shall take b. was taking c. is taking d. will take
4. He said that he hadn't visited the zoo
a. tomorrow b. yesterday c. the week before d. last week
5. She said that she for two hours that day.
a. has waited b. have waited c. will have wait d. had waited
6. He said that he to the USA the week after.
a. will travel b. is traveling c. was traveling d. can travel

Exercises on Grammar

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. Sama Rody helped her understand the lessons.
a. said b. told c. says d. asks
2. Abdulrahman said his father would buy a bike for
a. he b. his c. him d. himself
3. "..... can help you, mom", said Ahmed.
a. I b. me c. my d. myself
4. Omar said that you really calm during the class debate today.
a. looks b. looked c. has looked d. will look
5. Ali told Omar that, during the debate, someone strongly disagreed with
a. me b. him c. his d. I
6. Omar said he he needed to read more.
a. guesses b. guessed c. will guess d. guess

Bit by Bit Exercises

7. He said that he his homework at that time.
a. was doing b. is doing c. will do d. had done
8. She told me that she to the cinema the night before.
a. had gone b. went c. has gone d. is going
9. He said that he home the following day.
a. goes b. had gone c. will go d. would go
10. He me that he was tired.
a. told b. wanted c. said d. asked
11. He that the meeting would be at three o'clock.
a. said to b. enquired c. said d. told
12. Tom said he to visit his friends that weekend.
a. is wanting b. wants c. wanted d. has wanted

Unit 6 Why do We Like Stories?

13. They said they there for a long time.
a. had lived b. live c. lives d. living
14. She that she had a very beautiful house.
a. said b. told c. said to d. asks
15. Hatim says that he the summer holiday in Alexandria this year.
a. has spent b. will spend c. would spend d. had spent
16. Adam said that he a report on the new project then.
a. has written b. will be writing c. was writing d. is writing
17. He told me that he me later because he was busy at that time.
a. calls b. had called c. would call d. will call
18. Alaa said that his father had had an accident
a. the week after b. next week c. last week d. the week before
19. He said that the team the match the previous day.
a. has lost b. would lose c. had lost d. have lost

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB Exercises

1. Sara said that she (will visit) her grandmother the next day.
2. Omar said that he (has played) football the day before .
3. My friend said that they (are going) to the park that day.
4. Malak said that she (can help) me with my project.

Bit by Bit Exercises

5. He said it (is) nice to see me that day.
6. She (say) they weren't watching a film that night.
7. She (said) me that George had finished the homework the day before.
8. My mother said she was busy (now).
9. Ahmed said that he (can't) find his pencil.
10. Mona (told) Ali, "I live in Cairo."
11. "I'm studying English now," he (told).

3 Find the mistake and correct it:

1. Ayman said Rodayna she could go shopping. (.....)
2. Dr. Salwa said I lived in Sohag two years before. (.....)
3. The students said they will go on a journey to Dahab in Sinai. (.....)
4. Hana said that she is studying science then. (.....)

Speaking

Ask and answer about the importance of reading stories:

• اسأل وأجب عن أسئلة حول أهمية قراءة القصص:

Question

Is reading stories useful?

هل قراءة القصص مفيدة؟

Why is reading stories important?

لماذا قراءة القصص مهمة؟

What do you enjoy most about stories?

ما أكثر ما تستمتع به في القصص؟

How is reading stories important in learning?

ما أهمية قراءة القصص في التعلم؟

How does reading stories develop imagination and personality?

كيف تُنمي قراءة القصص الخيال والشخصية؟

Answer

Yes, of course. It's very useful.

نعم، هي مفيدة جداً.

Because it improves the way we think and understand the world around us.

لأنها تحسن طريقة تفكيرنا وفهمنا للعالم من حولنا

I enjoy learning from characters' mistakes and discovering new ideas.

أستمتع بالتعلم من أخطاء الشخصيات واكتشاف أفكار جديدة.

It makes learning more enjoyable. We remember lessons better when they are part of a story.

يجعل التعلم أكثر متعة. نتذكر الدروس بشكل أفضل عندما تكون جزءاً من قصة.

It makes your mind creative and helps you understand yourself and others better.

يُحفّز عقلك على الإبداع ويساعدك على فهم نفسك والآخرين بشكل أفضل.

General Exercises

on Lessons 1&2

1 Finish the following dialog:

Sara and Omar are talking about reading stories

Sara : Hi, Omar! What are you doing?

Omar : Hi, Sara! ①

Sara : Oh, nice. ②?

Omar : Because they take me to new worlds.

Sara : Oh! How ③?

Omar : They make me imagine things I've never seen.

Sara : ④ this weekend.

Omar : ⑤! The librarian can help us choose good stories.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The story has a that teaches us to be kind.
a. game b. moral c. picture d. sound
2. From my, this plan sounds very good.
a. perspective b. imagination c. pollution d. decision
3. The main in the story is a brave girl.
a. experience b. entrance c. challenge d. character
4. This cigarette can a fire if you're not careful.
a. eat b. break c. hide d. spark
5., I don't like this boy.
a. Honestly b. Loudly c. Quickly d. Quietly
6. My grandfather's advice will with me for the rest of my life.
a. clean b. stick c. die d. respond
7. The class had a very good about school uniforms.
a. debate b. party c. game d. race
8. The two children had a over the toy plane.
a. party b. race c. nap d. conflict
9. Children use their to pretend they're astronauts.
a. pollution b. imagination c. exploration d. recommendation
10. Sometimes, my parents had and shouted angrily at each other.
a. debates b. picnics c. arguments d. vacations
11. I can this piece of clay into an animal or a cup.
a. shape b. break c. eat d. hide
12. Clowns people at the circus.
a. confuse b. ignore c. clean d. entertain
13. When I saw the huge snake, I by screaming.
a. slept b. reacted c. cooked d. developed
14. The teacher said it was to give me more time than the others.
a. untrue b. good c. right d. unfair
15. The movie was very and made everyone cry.
a. boring b. short c. funny d. emotional
16. You have a: you can stay home or go out with your friends.
a. situation b. plan c. problem d. choice
17. The new campaign aims to increase public of climate change.
a. interest b. fear c. awareness d. money

18. Tom that he was happy to see me.
a. said b. told c. tells d. say
19. Lily me that she had finished her homework.
a. said b. says c. tell d. told
20. Tom said he to visit his friends that weekend.
a. is wanting b. wants c. wanted d. has wanted
21. They said they there for a long time.
a. had lived b. live c. lives d. living
22. She me that her name was Hala and that she was a nurse.
a. asked b. told c. wanted d. said
23. She said that she as a nurse four years before.
a. would qualify b. has qualified c. qualifies d. had qualified
24. She that she had a very beautiful house
a. said b. told c. said to d. asks
25. Hatim says that he the summer holiday in Alexandria when he finishes exams.
a. has spent b. will spend c. would spend d. had spent
26. Mr. Farag said he his driving test the week before.
a. passes b. has passed c. would pass d. had passed
27. Hoda said that she a new dress the following day.
a. is buying b. would buy c. had bought d. was bought

3 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

various - moral - empathy - aware - critical - critically

Reading is very important for us. Reading ① stories can spark new ideas. It helps us become ② of other people's lives and feelings. We can learn a good ③ from a story. This helps us develop empathy for others. It is important to think ④ about what we read.

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. He said he (see) me later that week.
2. He said that he (own) that coffee shop 3. five years before.
3. My father (said) me that He was driving to the farm.
4. Ali said, "Sorry, I can't help (me) with your homework

استمع إلى المفردات



المفردات الرئيسية

Key Vocabulary

fiction (n)	قصص خيالية	conflict (n)	صراع
non-fiction (n)	قصص واقعية	solution (n)	الحل
folk stories (n)	قصص شعبية تقليدية	ambition (n)	طموح
adventure stories (n)	قصص مغامرات	determination (n)	عزم/ تصميم
comic stories (n)	قصص فكاهية	symbol (n)	رمز
historical stories (n)	تاريخي	courage (n)	شجاعة
fable (n)	خرافة/ أسطورة	strength (n)	قوة
setting (n)	إطار (مكان وزمان القصة)	honest (adj)	أمين/ شريف
characters (n)	الشخصيات	special (adj)	خاص

Vocabulary



المفردات الإضافية

elements (n)	عناصر	role (n)	دور
beak (n)	منقار	council (n)	مجلس
crow (n)	غراب	president (n)	رئيس
imaginary (adj)	خيالي	growth (n)	النمو
humour (n)	فكاهة/ دعابة	respect (n)	احترام
goal (n)	هدف	challenges (n)	التحديات
change (n)	تغيير	well-known (adj)	معروف/ مشهور
spaces (n)	مساحات	sequence (n)	تسلسل/ تتابع
leadership (n)	القيادة	leader (n)	قائد
bench (n)	مقعد خشبي طويل		



Definitions

setting (n.)	إطار	where and when the story happens.	ا.خيالي
characters (n.)	الشخصيات	people or animals in a story.	
conflict (n.)	صراع	the problem in the story.	
solution (n.)	الحل	how the problem ends.	
fiction (n.)	قصص مختلفة	stories made up with imaginary ⁽¹⁾ characters.	
non-fiction (n.)	قصص واقعية	true stories based on real events and characters.	

folk stories (n.)	قصص شعبية	traditional ⁽²⁾ stories with lessons.
adventure stories (n.)	قصص المغامرات	exciting journeys and brave characters.
comic stories (n.)	قصص كوميدية	funny stories full of humor.
historical stories (n.)	قصص تاريخية	based on real events from the past.
fables (n.)	الأساطير	Short tales that teach a moral often with talking animals.
ambition (n.)	طموح	a strong desire ⁽³⁾ to achieve something big
special (adj.)	خاص	valuable ⁽⁴⁾ in a different way
symbol (n.)	رمز	a sign ⁽⁵⁾ of something.
courage (n.)	شجاعة	bravery ⁽⁶⁾ to do something new or scary

٢. تقليدي
٣. رغبة
٤. قيم
٥. إشارة
٦. الشجاعة

Expressions & Prepositions

once upon a time	ذات مرة	lead to	يؤدي إلى
made-up stories	قصص مُخْتَلَقَة	believe in	يؤمن بـ
full of humour	مليء بالفكاهة	turn (sth.) into	يحول (شيء) إلى
based on	قائم على	lead change	يقود عملية التغيير
take turns	يتناوب الأدوار	take on a role	يتولى القيام بدور
make big changes	يحدث تغييرات كبيرة	show courage	يظهر الشجاعة
try something new	يجرب شيئاً جديداً	go wrong	يحدث بشكل خاطئ



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
special (adj.)	خاص	unique	فريد	common	عام
determination (n.)	عزم	resolution	قرار	hesitation	التردد
folk (adj.)	شعبي	popular	شعبية	unusual	غير شائع
imaginary (adj.)	خيالي	fictional	خائلي	real	حقيقي

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-er	تحول الفعل الى اسم	leader
-th	تحول الفعل الى اسم	growth
-ship	تأتي بمعنى آخر للاسم	leadership

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
fall down	يسقط	fell down	fallen down
run away	يهرب	ran away	run away
catch	يمسك	caught	caught
sing	يغني	sang	sung
teach	يدرس / يعلم	taught	taught
mean	يعني	meant	meant
know	يعرف / يعلم	knew	known
lead	يقود / يؤدي	led	led

Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 historical / historic

• historical (adj.)

تاريخي / قديم / متعلق بدراسة التاريخ

- تستخدم الصفة (historical) لوصف شيء تاريخي قديم، او لوصف شيء متعلق بدراسة التاريخ (مثل الكتب والقصص والأفلام):

Ex. My father has a historical book about the First World War.

Ex. We have a historical museum in our town. It was built in 1800.

• historic (adj.)

هام تاريخيا

- بينما تستخدم الصفة (historic) لوصف شيء له أهمية تاريخية حتى لو كان حديثا:

Ex. The two presidents had a historic meeting yesterday.

Ex. The first landing on the moon was a historic moment for humanity.

2 Personified animals with personal pronouns:

الحيوانات المشخصة والضمائر الشخصية:

- الحيوانات المشخصة هي الحيوانات المُجسَّدة كشخصيات في قصة او رواية - وللاشارة لهذه الحيوانات نستخدم الضمائر الشخصية التي تستخدم في الإشارة الى الإنسان، مثل (he / she / his / her)، وكذلك نستخدم معها ضمير الوصل (who) عندما يعود عليها:

Ex. The lion roared as he was chasing the buffalo.

Ex. Pussy is my cat; she loves her toys.

Ex. The horse, who saved the rider, was honored.

3) was chosen + job: تم اختياره

- بعد التعبير (was chosen) يأتي اسم الوظيفة أو المنصب الذي سيشغله الشخص المنتخب:

Ex. He **was chosen** president. تم اختياره كرئيس

Ex. The young **boy was chosen** team leader. تم اختياره كقائد للفريق

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- He's doing ----- research on 19th-century fashion.
a. historic b. historical c. history d. historian
- This is a ----- moment for our country!
a. historic b. historical c. history d. historian
- This is my dog Antar. ----- is very friendly.
a. It b. She c. He d. Him



Reading

SB Page (90)

استمع إلى النصوص



The Clever Fox

Once upon a time⁽¹⁾ in a faraway forest, there was a clever fox who lived in the forest. One day, he saw a crow⁽²⁾ with a piece of cheese in her beak⁽³⁾. The fox wanted the cheese very much.

He smiled and said, "Good morning, beautiful bird!" The crow looked down and listened. "Your voice must be as sweet as your looks," the fox continued, "Can you sing a song⁽⁴⁾ to help me feel happy?" The crow was happy and sang a song. As soon as she opened her beak, the cheese fell down. The fox quickly caught it and ran away⁽⁵⁾.

١. ذات مرة
٢. غراب
٣. منقار
٤. أغنية
٥. هرب

Read the story again. Then, write the sentence that shows each of the following:

- setting: -----
- characters: -----
- conflict: -----
- solution: -----

1. Once upon a time in a faraway forest, there was a clever fox who lived in the forest.
2. One day, he saw a crow with a piece of cheese in her beak.
3. As soon as she opened her beak, the cheese fell down.
4. The fox quickly caught the cheese and ran away.

The answers:



Before you read, discuss in pairs

1- Answer the following questions.

1. What makes someone a good leader in school?
2. Do you think students can make big changes in their communities? Why or why not?
3. What change would you like to see in your school next year??

2- Read the following text. When can small ideas lead to big changes.

The next year, Zeina **was chosen**⁽¹⁾ **president of the student council**⁽²⁾. She learned a lot from the garden project, especially about being a real **leader**⁽³⁾. It didn't mean doing everything alone. It meant **helping**⁽⁴⁾ others and being **honest**⁽⁵⁾ when things were hard.

Now, her **ambition**⁽⁶⁾ was bigger than just a garden. She wanted to help students believe they could change their school—and maybe the world.

"Everyone has something special to offer," she told new students. "When we work together with respect and **determination**⁽⁷⁾, we can solve any problem."

The garden continued to grow. Students added more plants, painted **benches**⁽⁸⁾, and created quiet spaces for reading. It became a **symbol**⁽⁹⁾ of what students could do together.

Zeina had learned that **growth**⁽¹⁰⁾ doesn't happen only in plants. It also happens in people -

especially when they **show courage**⁽¹¹⁾ to try something new and **strength**⁽¹²⁾ when things go wrong.

She knew she still had more to learn. But she also knew something very important: Small ideas can **lead to**⁽¹³⁾ big **changes**⁽¹⁴⁾ - when people **believe in**⁽¹⁵⁾ them.



١. تم اختياره
٢. رئيس مجلس الطلاب
٣. قائد
٤. مساعدة
٥. أمين
٦. طموح
٧. عزم/إصرار
٨. مقاعد
٩. رمز
١٠. نمو
١١. يظهر الشجاعة
١٢. القوة
١٣. يؤدي إلى
١٤. تغييرات
١٥. يؤمن بـ

Answer the following questions:

SB questions

1. What new role did Zeina take on at school?

١. ما الدور الجديد الذي تولته زينة في المدرسة؟

- Zeina became the president of the student council.

أصبحت زينة رئيسة مجلس الطلاب.

2. How did Zeina describe "real" leadership?

٢. كيف وصفت زينة القيادة "الحقيقية"؟

- She said it means helping others and being honest when things are hard.

قالت تعني مساعدة الآخرين والصدق في الأوقات الصعبة.

3. What was Zeina's new goal for the school?

٣. ما هو هدف زينة الجديد للمدرسة؟

- Her new goal was to help students believe they could change their school—and maybe the world.

كان هدفها الجديد مساعدة الطلاب على الإيمان بقدرتهم على تغيير مدرستهم - وربما العالم.

4. How did the garden continue to grow?

٤. كيف استمرت الحديقة في النمو؟

- Students added more plants, painted benches, and created quiet spaces for reading.

أضاف الطلاب المزيد من النباتات، وطلّوا المقاعد، وأنشأوا مساحات هادئة للقراءة.

5. What happens when a leader helps others feel strong and valuable?

٥. ماذا يحدث عندما يساعد القائد الآخرين على الشعور بالقوة والقيمة؟

- People feel they have something special to offer. When they work together with respect and determination, they can solve any problem.

يشعر الناس أن لديهم شيئاً مميزاً يقدمونه. عندما يعملون معاً باحترام وعزيمة، يمكنهم حل أي مشكلة.

6. What makes someone a good leader in school?

٦. ما الذي يجعل شخصاً ما قائداً جيداً في المدرسة؟

- A good leader helps others, is honest, listens to ideas, and encourages everyone to work together.

القائد الجيد يساعد الآخرين، ويكون صادقاً، ويستمع إلى الأفكار، ويشجع الجميع على العمل معاً.

7. Do you think students can make big changes in their communities? Why or why not?

٧. هل تعتقد أن الطلاب يستطيعون إحداث تغييرات كبيرة في مجتمعاتهم؟ لماذا أو لماذا لا؟

- Yes, they work together with determination, a small idea can grow into something that helps everyone, just like Zeina's garden.

نعم، عندما يعملون معاً بعزيمة، يمكن لفكرة صغيرة أن تتطور إلى شيء مفيد للجميع، تمامًا مثل حديقة زينة.

8. What change would you like to see in your school next year?

٨. ما التغيير الذي ترغب في رؤيته في مدرستك العام المقبل؟

- I would like to see a program where older students help younger ones with their reading.

أود أن أرى برنامجًا يساعد فيه الطلاب الأكبر سنًا الطلاب الأصغر سنًا على القراءة.

Critical thinking questions

9. Why do you think Zeina's leadership helped other students?

٩. لماذا تعتقد أن قيادة زينة ساعدت الطلاب الآخرين؟

- Because she didn't try to control everything. She helped made them feel that their ideas were valuable.

لأنها لم تحاول السيطرة على كل شيء. لقد جعلتهم يشعرون بقيمة أفكارهم.

10. What does the garden symbolize in the story, and how can that idea apply to real life?

١٠. ما الذي ترمز إليه الحديقة في القصة، وكيف يمكن تطبيق هذه الفكرة على أرض الواقع؟

- The garden is a symbol of what people can achieve when they work together.

الحديقة رمز لما يمكن للناس تحقيقه عندما يعملون معًا.

11. Do you think small ideas really can lead to big changes?

١١. هل تعتقد أن الأفكار الصغيرة يمكن أن تؤدي حقًا إلى تغييرات كبيرة؟

- Yes, absolutely. Big changes often start with a single small idea. If you have the determination to work on it and the courage to see it through, that small idea can inspire others and grow into something much larger.

نعم، بالتأكيد. غالبًا ما تبدأ التغييرات الكبيرة بفكرة صغيرة واحدة. إذا كان لديك العزم على العمل عليها والشجاعة لإنجازها، يمكن لهذه الفكرة الصغيرة أن تلهم الآخرين وتنمو إلى شيء أكبر بكثير.

Bit by Bit questions

1. What did Zeina learn from the garden project?

١. ماذا تعلمت زينة من مشروع الحديقة؟

- She learned how to be a good leader.

تعلمت كيف تكون قائدة جيدة.

2. What did she tell the new students?

٢. ماذا قالت للطلاب الجدد؟

- She told them that everyone is special and can help.

أخبرتهم أن الجميع مميزون ويمكنهم المساعدة.

3. What did the garden become a symbol of?

٣. ما الذي أصبحت الحديقة رمزًا له؟

- It became a symbol of what students can do together.

أصبحت رمزًا لما يمكن للطلاب فعله معًا.

4. Where does growth happen, according to Zeina?

٤. أين يحدث النمو، وفقًا لزيّنة؟

- Growth happens in plants and also in people.

يحدث النمو في النباتات وكذلك في البشر.

5. What did Zeina know about small ideas?

٥. ماذا تعرف زيّنة عن الأفكار الصغيرة؟

- She knew that small ideas can become big changes.

كانت تعلم أن الأفكار الصغيرة يمكن أن تُحدث تغييرات كبيرة.

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

1. The _____ of a story is where and when the story happens. SB
 a. ending b. character c. setting d. conflict
2. The people or animals in a story are its _____. SB
 a. characters b. writers c. covers d. symbols
3. The problem in a story is defined as its _____. SB
 a. setting b. courage c. ambition d. conflict
4. The _____ in a story is how the problem ends. SB
 a. leadership b. solution c. sequence d. change
5. _____ means stories made up with imaginary characters. SB
 a. Fiction b. Action c. Adventure d. Imagination
6. True stories that are based on real events and characters are defined as _____. SB
 a. non-event b. non-smoker c. non-fiction d. non-profit
7. _____ stories are traditional stories with lessons. SB
 a. Folk b. Fable c. Fiction d. Comic
8. _____ stories tell us about exciting journeys and brave characters. SB
 a. Comic b. Cartoon c. Conflict d. Adventure
9. _____ stories are funny stories that are full of humor. SB
 a. Historical b. Comic c. Historic d. Tragic
10. _____ stories are based on real events from the past. SB
 a. Historic b. Ambitious c. Critical d. Historical
11. Short tales that teach a moral often with talking animals are defined as _____. SB
 a. Fables b. dictionaries c. books d. Dragons
12. To have _____ is to have a strong desire to achieve something big. SB
 a. culture b. leadership c. ambition d. growth

Unit 6 Why do We Like Stories?

13. If something is _____, it's valuable in a different way. SB
 a. special b. comic c. famous d. imaginary
14. The word "_____" means a sign of something. SB
 a. humor b. change c. respect d. symbol
15. _____ is the bravery to do something new or scary. SB
 a. Council b. Courage c. Strength d. Element

Synonyms and Antonyms

16. Yesterday was a special day. The synonym of the word "special" is _____
 a. private b. common c. unique d. usual
17. Determination and patience are the key to success. The opposite of "Determination" is _____
 a. hesitation b. conversation c. presentation d. generation
18. This is an imaginary story. The word "imaginary" is opposite in meaning to _____
 a. ordinary b. comic c. historic d. real

Prefixes and Suffixes

19. To get the noun from the verb "lead", we add the _____ "er".
 a. prefix b. synonym c. suffix d. antonym
20. To change the verb "grow" into a noun, we add the suffix "_____"
 a. th b. ion c. er d. al

Guess the meaning

21. I enjoy reading _____ books about dragons and magic.
 a. fiction b. non-fiction c. science d. history
22. The library has a section for _____ books about real great and brave in our history.
 a. fiction b. fable c. imaginary d. non-fiction
23. I like it very much when my grandmother sings old _____ songs from her village.
 a. space b. modern c. folk d. comic
24. In this _____ story, the hero crosses a desert and climbs a mountain to find a hidden treasure.
 a. fable b. adventure c. scientific d. folk
25. This _____ book shows how people lived in Egypt long ago.
 a. funny b. scary c. historical d. future
26. The _____ of the story is a dark forest at night.
 a. setting b. ending c. problem d. hero
27. The main _____ in the story is between the hero and the bad man.
 a. friendship b. solution c. game d. conflict
28. A _____ is a short story that teaches a lesson, like "The Tortoise and the Hare."
 a. song b. fable c. recipe d. joke

29. The teacher her students to make their own decisions.
a. stopped b. ignored c. helped d. confused
30. The ending of a story, where the main problem is solved, is the
a. setting b. conflict c. character d. solution
31. Her is to become a doctor and help poor patients.
a. ambition b. fear c. hobby d. mistake
32. Today is a day because it's my birthday.
a. normal b. rainy c. special d. busy
33. The boy showed great to finish the race before the other boys.
a. humor b. determination c. setting d. beak
34. Even after failing the test, she showed great by studying harder and trying again.
a. strength b. fear c. anger d. tiredness
35. It takes a lot of to stand up for what you believe is right.
a. space b. council c. role d. courage

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

honest - decide - of - change - believe - from

Once upon a time, there was a teacher who was full ① humor. He liked to make his students laugh while learning. He told them to ② in themselves and their dreams. He was always ③ about the challenges. He said, "If you work hard, you can make a ④ in the world."

General Exercises **on Lessons 3 & 4**

1 Finish the following dialog:

Sara and Omar are talking about the elements of a story

Sara : Hi Omar! What are you doing?

Omar : Hi Sara! ①

Sara : ②

Omar : It's about a brave boy who saves his village.

Sara : That sounds fun. ③

Omar : Yes. The elements of a story are the setting, the characters, the conflict, and finally, the solution.

Sara : ④! Have a nice time.

Omar : ⑤

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main parts of a story, like the setting and characters, are called the story's
a. conflicts b. solutions c. elements d. settings
2. The bird used its to pick up seeds.
a. neck b. beak c. wing d. feather
3. The movie was full of and made everyone laugh.
a. humor b. conflict c. sadness d. fear
4. My main this year is to read ten books.
a. vision b. problem c. goal d. question
5. The in weather made us cancel the picnic.
a. height b. change c. growth d. solution
6. The library has many quiet where students can read and study alone.
a. beaks b. roles c. settings d. spaces
7. The ability to guide and inspire a team is an important part of
a. ambition b. leadership c. determination d. strength
8. We sat on a in the park to eat lunch.
a. bench b. beak c. council d. role
9. In the play, she took on the of a brave princess.
a. goal b. change c. role d. vision
10. The student made plans for the school party.
a. sequence b. bench c. beak d. council
11. The of the country gave a speech on TV.
a. role b. conflict c. president d. setting
12. The white dove is a of peace.
a. goal b. symbol c. picture d. ambition
13. We saw the of the plant as it got taller day after day.
a. growth b. conflict c. sequence d. solution
14. The team faced many and difficulties during the project.
a. goals b. elements c. benches d. challenges
15. The of events in the story was easy to follow.
a. sequence b. choice c. role d. symbol

16. We should show to our parents and teachers.
a. fear b. respect c. anger d. change
17. Once a time, there was a little girl who lived in the forest.
a. on b. for c. under d. upon
18. The comedian's show was full of and made everyone laugh.
a. honor b. colour c. humor d. tour
19. The movie was based a true story from history.
a. in b. on c. up d. from
20. The two friends decided to turns telling the story.
a. take b. do c. make d. have
21. We can all a change in our community by helping others.
a. show b. make c. do d. go
22. Eating too much sugar can to health problems.
a. prevent b. cure c. cause d. lead

3 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN words on the following:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الكتاب)

"The importance of reading"

1. The first step is to identify the problem.

2. The second step is to define the problem.

3. The third step is to analyze the problem.

4. The fourth step is to develop a solution.

5. The fifth step is to implement the solution.

6. The sixth step is to evaluate the solution.

7. The seventh step is to monitor the solution.

8. The eighth step is to maintain the solution.

9. The ninth step is to improve the solution.

10. The tenth step is to document the solution.

Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات
المفردات الرئيسية



point of view (n.)	وجهة نظر	calm (adj.)	هادئ
conflict (n.)	صراع	greedy (adj.)	طماع
stream (n.)	مجرى مائي / جدول	aware (adj.)	واعي / مدرك
bridge (n.)	جسر / كوبري	critically (adv.)	بشكل نقدي
bone (n.)	عظمة	respond (v. ed)	يرد / يستجيب
mouth (n.)	فم	bark (v. ed)	يبح
various (adj.)	متعدد / مختلف		

Vocabulary



المفردات الإضافية

classmate (n.)	زميل في الفصل	lucky (adj.)	محموظ
shadow (n.)	ظل	tasty (adj.)	لذيذ الطعم
tail (n.)	الذيل	deep (adj.)	عميق
moral (n.)	رسالة / درس أخلاقي	sparkling (adj.)	متلألئ
solution (n.)	حل	wooden (adj.)	خشبي
choice (n.)	خيار / اختيار	remind (v. ed)	يذكر
action (n.)	فعل / حدث	expect (v. ed)	يتوقع
connections (n.)	علاقات	wag (v. ged)	يهز (ذيله أو رأسه)

Expressions & Prepositions

a life lesson	درس في الحياة	take a turn	ياخذ دور
in your opinion	في رأيك	pass the turn to	يمرل أو ينقل الدور لـ
related to	مرتبط أو متعلق بـ		



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
tasty (adj.)	لذيذ	delicious		tasteless	بلا طعم
conflict (n.)	صراع	problem		solution	الحل

aware (adj.)	مدرك	alert	unaware	غير مدرك
various (adj.)	متعدد	varied	unique	فريد من نوعه
respond (v. ed)	يستجيب	reply / react	ignore	يتجاهل
calm (adj.)	هادئ	quiet	anxious	قلق
greedy (adj.)	طماع	mean	generous	كريم

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
retell	يعيد سرد	retold	retold
read	يقرا	read	read
think	يعيد سرد	thought	thought

Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 let + مفعول به + inf. : يسمح ل/يتيح ل

- بعد الفعل (let) نستخدم مفعول به متبوعا بفعل في المصدر بدون (to):

Ex. Reading stories lets us understand others' points of view.

Ex. My father didn't let me drive his car.

2 tasty / tasteful:

• tasty (adj.) = delicious:

لذيذ الطعم - لوصف طعام او مشروب

Ex. This pizza is very tasty.

Ex. She made a tasty cake for the party.

• tasteful (adj.) = stylish:

حسن الذوق / جميل - لوصف الأشياء مثل الملابس أو الديكور أو السلوك أو الفن

Ex. His suit is simple but tasteful.

Ex. The room was decorated in a tasteful way.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Let me you with those bags.

a. help

b. helping

c. to help

d. helped

2. We enjoyed a meal at the new restaurant.

a. tasteful

b. stylish

c. polite

d. tasty

3. Her outfit matched the formal event perfectly.

a. tasty

b. tasteful

c. tasteless

d. tasted

Reading

SB Page (94)

استمع إلى النص

The Power of Stories

- Sarah** : I have asked my teacher why we enjoy stories so much.
- Amal** : What did she say?
- Sarah** : She says that stories help us see the world from **various**⁽¹⁾ **points of view**⁽²⁾.
- Amal** : That's **true**⁽³⁾. I read that stories often teach **a moral**⁽⁴⁾ or **a life lesson**⁽⁵⁾.
- Sarah** : Yes! My older brother has told me that every good story has **conflicts**⁽⁶⁾ and a clear **solution**⁽⁷⁾.
- Amal** : My friend says that reading stories helps people think more **critically**⁽⁸⁾ about **choices**⁽⁹⁾ and **actions**⁽¹⁰⁾.
- Sarah** : I agree. One of our **classmates**⁽¹¹⁾ has **mentioned**⁽¹²⁾ that stories let us understand someone else's point of view, even if we've never lived like they have.
- Amal** : **Exactly**⁽¹³⁾. Our teacher **reminds**⁽¹⁴⁾ us that even fun or **fictional**⁽¹⁵⁾ stories can carry **deep messages**⁽¹⁶⁾.
- Sarah** : She also explains that stories are **powerful**⁽¹⁷⁾ because they stay with us and help us **grow**⁽¹⁸⁾.

١. متعدد
٢. وجهات نظر
٣. حقيقي
٤. درس في الحياة
٥. درس اخلاقي
٦. صراعات
٧. حلول
٨. بشكل نقدي
٩. خيارات
١٠. افعال / أحداث
١١. زملاء الفصل
١٢. ذكر
١٣. بالضبط
١٤. يذكر
١٥. خيالي
١٦. رسائل عميقة
١٧. قوي
١٨. ينمو

Reading Skill

مهارة القراءة (الاجابة بالاسفل)

Answer the following questions:

1. What did Sarah's teacher say about why we enjoy stories?
2. In your opinion, how can stories help us understand different point of view?
3. Do you think that conflicts and solutions are important in a story? Why or why not?

Answers:

1. She said that stories helped us see the world from various points of view.
2. Stories can show how the characters think and feel. When we read, we can see the world through another person's eyes. This helps us understand other ideas and feelings.
3. Yes, they are important. A conflict makes the story interesting because we want to know what will happen. A solution makes the story feel complete and gives us a lesson or a happy ending.

The dog and his shadow



SB Page (96)

One **sunny**⁽¹⁾ afternoon, a hungry dog was **lucky**⁽²⁾ to find a tasty bone. He **proudly**⁽³⁾ carried it in his **mouth**⁽⁴⁾, **tail wagging**⁽⁵⁾ as he was walking across a **wooden bridge**⁽⁶⁾ over a **sparkling stream**⁽⁷⁾. As he was walking, he looked down into the water and saw another dog in the water carrying a **bone**⁽⁸⁾ in its mouth.

The bone seemed bigger. Being **greedy**⁽¹⁰⁾, he wanted the other bone. He **barked**⁽⁹⁾ to **frighten**⁽¹⁰⁾ the other dog. The bone **fell into**⁽¹¹⁾ the stream. The dog was sad when he **discovered**⁽¹²⁾ that it was himself not another dog or bone.

١. مشمس
٢. محظوظ
٣. بفخر
٤. فمه
٥. هزازذيله
٦. جسر خشبي
٧. جدول مائي متلألئ
٨. عظمة
٩. نبج
١٠. يخيف
١١. سقط في
١٢. اكتشف

Writing Practice

مهارة الكتابة

Write your story of about (110 words). Make sure you follow the story writing tips.

You can use:

- Once upon a time, there was
- One day, something strange happened
- Finally, everything changed

Once upon a time, there was a small boy named Omar. He loved to explore the park near his home. One day, something strange happened - he found a shiny key under a big tree. Omar wondered what it could open. He searched everywhere until he saw a small locked box hidden in the bushes. When he used the key, the box opened and inside was a note that said, "Always believe in yourself." Omar smiled and felt happy. Finally, everything changed - from that day, he felt more confident and tried new things without fear.

Answers:

General Exercises

on Lessons 5&6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Synonyms & Antonyms

1. She made a tasty meal. The word "tasty" has the same meaning as
a. obvious b. delicious c. dangerous d. furious
2. The girl wasn't aware of the snake in front of her. The word "aware" is a synonym for
a. ignorant b. clever c. pleased d. alert
3. The greedy boy took all the chocolate for himself. The word "greedy" is opposite in meaning to
a. generous b. delicious c. anxious d. serious

4. From my point of view, they will win the game. "Point of view" means
 a. culture b. conflict c. opinion d. suggestion
5. I said "hello", but she didn't respond. The word "respond" here means
 a. decide b. react c. ignore d. bark

Guess the meaning

6. The story is told from your own, so we only know what you see and think.
 a. conflict b. stream c. point of view d. moral
7. The dog looked down into the clear and saw his own picture on the water.
 a. stream b. bridge c. mouth d. bone
8. The main problem in the story is the dog's with another dog over a bone.
 a. solution b. moral c. friendship d. conflict
9. The over the river was old and made of wood.
 a. shadow b. bridge c. stream d. bone
10. The dog had a big, tasty in his mouth.
 a. bone b. mouth c. bridge d. stream
11. The little girl opened her to eat the apple.
 a. eyes b. hands c. mouth d. ears
12. We saw animals at the zoo: lions, monkeys, and birds.
 a. wooden b. various c. moral d. tasty
13. The lake was very with no waves on the water's surface.
 a. furious b. greedy c. various d. calm
14. The boy wanted to take the other boy's toys as well as his own.
 a. polite b. generous c. greedy d. kind
15. The thief was not that the police were following him.
 a. greedy b. aware c. calm d. relaxing
16. When I asked a question, the teacher with a smile.
 a. responded b. reminded c. wagged d. barked
17. The dog started to loudly at the other dog he saw in the water.
 a. bark b. swim c. write d. expect
18. My best sits next to me in class.
 a. teacher b. character c. classmate d. leader

19. The dog saw his own moving behind him as it walked in the sun.
a. pillow b. shadow c. plate d. stick
20. The of the story is that being greedy can cause you to lose what you already have.
a. conflict b. solution c. character d. moral
21. The to the problem was to borrow some money from a friend.
a. solution b. conflict c. moral d. action
22. I had a between chicken and fish, and I chose fish.
a. character b. choice c. solution d. solution
23. The cake was so that I ate two pieces!
a. calm b. wooden c. tasty d. tasteful
24. The water in the river shone like diamonds.
a. sparkling b. feeding c. growing d. fishing
25. The chair was old; it broke when I sat down on it.
a. sparkling b. tasty c. hard d. wooden
26. This song me of my childhood when I was at primary school.
a. forgets b. reminds c. breaks d. remembers
27. We to see rain today because the sky is gray.
a. wag b. dream c. expect d. bark
28. The dog began to its tail happily when he saw the bone.
a. wag b. bark c. respond d. remind
29. In your, what is the best season of the year?
a. dream b. opinion c. morning d. park
30. This quiz is related the story of the dog and the bone.
a. in b. on c. for d. to

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

for - respecting - to - lesson - adventure - take

One day, I played a board game with my friends. The game was related ① solving puzzles. I had to wait and ② my turn. At that time, I felt a little bored, but I learned to be patient. It was a life ③ about waiting and ④ others' turns. In the end, we all enjoyed playing together.

3 Read the following text then answer the questions

Trees are vital for life on Earth. They produce oxygen, which humans and animals need to breathe. Trees also absorb carbon dioxide, a gas that causes climate change. Their roots hold soil in place, preventing landslides and erosion. Birds build nests in tree branches, and insects live in their bark. People use wood to build houses, make paper, and create furniture. Fruit trees give us food like apples and oranges. In cities, trees cool the air and provide shade. Without trees, the Earth would be hotter, dirtier, and less healthy. Protecting forests and planting new trees helps keep our planet safe for everyone.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c , or d:

1. What do trees produce that we breathe?
 a. Carbon dioxide b. Oxygen c. Smoke d. Water
2. How do tree roots help the environment?
 a. They make the air hotter b. They scare away animals
 c. They absorb sunlight d. They hold soil in place

B. Answer the following questions

3. Why are trees important for fighting climate change?

4. Name two things trees provide for animals.

5. How do trees help people in cities?

6. What can we do to protect trees?

4 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN words on the following:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الكتاب)

"A review of a short story you have read."

Review on Unit 6

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

emotional (adj)	عاطفي	spark (v- ed)	يحفّز / يثير
moral (n / adj)	درس / رسالة - اخلاقي	mentally (adv)	عقليا / ذهنيا
various (adj)	متعدد / متنوع	honestly (adv)	بأمانة / بصدق
point of view (n)	وجهة نظر	unfair (adj)	غير عادل
empathy (n)	التعاطف	recommendations (n)	توصيات
critically (adv)	بشكل ناقد	debate (n)	مناظرة
aware (adj)	واع / مدرك	stick (v- stuck) with	يرتبط بالذهن / يظل في الذاكرة
conflict (n)	صراع / خلاف	conflict (n)	صراع
fiction (n)	قصص خيالية	solution (n)	الحل
non-fiction (n)	قصص واقعية	ambition (n)	طموح
folk stories (n)	قصص شعبية تقليدية	determination (n)	عزم / تصميم
adventure stories (n)	قصص مغامرات	symbol (n)	رمز
comic stories (n)	قصص فكاهية	courage (n)	شجاعة
historical stories (n)	تاريخي	strength (n)	قوة
fable (n)	خرافة / أسطورة	honest (adj)	أمين / شريف
setting (n)	إطار (مكان وزمان القصة)	special (adj)	خاص
characters (n)	الشخصيات	calm (adj.)	هادئ
point of view (n.)	وجهة نظر	greedy (adj.)	طماع
conflict (n.)	صراع	aware (adj.)	واعي / مدرك
stream (n.)	مجرى مائي / جدول	critically (adv.)	بشكل نقدي
bridge (n.)	جسر / كوبري	respond (v. ed)	يرد / يستجيب
bone (n.)	عظمة	bark (v. ed)	ينبح
mouth (n.)	فم		
various (adj.)	متعدد / مختلف		



Language

قواعد لغوية

Reported speech (الكلام المنقول (المُبْلَغُ لِلغَيْرِ)

- هناك طريقتين لنقل الكلام من شخص لآخر:

Direct Speech	الكلام المباشر	Reported speech	الكلام المنقول
	الكلام المباشر هو نص الكلام الذي قاله المتحدث دون تغيير ويوضع دائماً بين أقواس وذلك كالتالي:		الكلام المنقول هو أن نذكر ما قيل ولكن نغير الكلمات التي قيلت لتتناسب مع السياق الجديد للجملة:
1- "I'll be home tomorrow morning," he said.		1- He said that he would be home the next morning.	
2- "I want to visit my aunt," she said.		2- She said that she wanted to visit her aunt.	

Reported statements (الجملة الخبرية المنقولة)

- عند تحويل الجملة الخبرية من كلام مباشر إلى كلام غير مباشر اتبع الآتي:

① يحول فعل القول كما يلي:

Direct	Reported	Direct	Reported
say	say	say to	tell
says	says	says to	tells
said	said	said to	told

② تحذف الأقواس وعلامات التنصيص ونربط بكلمة **that** ويمكن الاستغناء عنها.

③ تغير ضمائر المتكلم، والمخاطب داخل الأقواس حسب السياق العام للجملة.

أما ضمائر الغائب مثل: (He / She / It) فتبقى دون تغيير:

- Manar said, "I do my homework at night." (Direct)
- = Manar said that she did her homework at night. (Reported)
- Hamza said, "I'll lend you some money." (Direct)
- = Hamza promised that he would lend me some money. (Reported)

4 تتغير الأزمنة كالآتي:

Direct	Reported
1- Present simple مضارع بسيط eat / eats	Past simple ماضي بسيط ate
2- Present continuous مضارع مستمر am / is / are eating	Past continuous ماضي مستمر was / were eating
3- Present perfect مضارع تام has / have eaten	Past perfect ماضي تام had eaten
4- Past simple ماضي بسيط ate	Past perfect ماضي تام had eaten
5- Past perfect ماضي تام had eaten	Past perfect ماضي تام had eaten

5 تتغير الأفعال الناقصة كما يلي:

Direct	Reported
will + inf.	would + inf.
can + inf.	could + inf.
has / have to + inf.	had to + inf.
must + inf. (الزام - نصيحة)	must / had to + inf.
mustn't + inf.	mustn't + inf.

- He said, "I **must** go home at once." (Direct)
- = He said that he **had to / must** go home at once. (Reported)
- He said, "Ahmed **can** speak French." (Direct)
- = He said that Ahmed **could** speak French. (Reported)

6 يتم تغيير أسماء الإشارة والكلمات الدالة على المكان والزمان كالتالي:

Direct	Reported
this	that
yet	by then
these	those
here	there

Direct	Reported
ago	before / earlier
now	then / at that time
tomorrow	the next day the following day the day after
next (week)	the next (week) the following (week) the (week) after

today	that day
tonight	that night

yesterday	the day before the previous day
last (night)	the (night) before the previous (night) the last (night)

at the moment → at that moment
tomorrow morning → the following morning
last Sunday → the previous Sunday
come → go

- Ali said, "I **bought** a mobile **yesterday**." (Direct)
- = Ali said that he **had bought** a mobile the **previous day**. (Reported)
- He said to me, "I'll **mend** my roof **tomorrow**." (Direct)
- = He told me that he **would mend** his roof **the day after**. (Reported)



- لا تتغير الأزمنة والظروف وأسماء الإشارة داخل الأقواس في الحالات الآتية:

① إذا كان فعل القول في زمن المضارع أو المستقبل:

- He **says**, "I **am visiting** Luxor next month." (Direct)
- = He **says** that he **is visiting** Luxor next month. (Reported)

② إذا كان الكلام المباشر عبارة عن حقائق لا تتغير (ويمكن أيضا تغيير زمن الفعل في هذه الحالة):

- The teacher said to us, "The Nile **is** the longest river in the world." (Direct)
- = The teacher told us that the Nile **is / was** the longest river in the world. (Reported)

③ إذا كان الكلام قد قيل حالاً ويدل على ذلك كلمات وتعابير مثل:

just - just now - a minute ago - a short time ago - a moment ago

- He said just now, "I **have won** the cup." (Direct)
- = He said just now that he **has won** the cup. (Reported)

Speaking

Ask and answer about the importance of reading stories:

• اسأل وأجب عن أسئلة حول أهمية قراءة القصص:

Question

Is reading stories useful?

هل قراءة القصص مفيدة؟

Why is reading stories important?

لماذا قراءة القصص مهمة؟

What do you enjoy most about stories?

ما أكثر ما تستمتع به في القصص؟

How is reading stories important in learning?

ما أهمية قراءة القصص في التعلم؟

How does reading stories develop imagination and personality?

كيف تُنمّي قراءة القصص الخيال والشخصية؟

Answer

Yes, of course. It's very useful.

نعم، هي مفيدة جداً.

Because it improves the way we think and understand the world around us.

لأنها تحسن طريقة تفكيرنا وفهمنا للعالم من حولنا

I enjoy learning from characters' mistakes and discovering new ideas.

أستمتع بالتعلم من أخطاء الشخصيات واكتشاف أفكار جديدة.

It makes learning more enjoyable. We remember lessons better when they are part of a story.

يجعل التعلم أكثر متعة. نتذكر الدروس بشكل أفضل عندما تكون جزءاً من قصة.

It makes your mind creative and helps you understand yourself and others better.

يُحفّز عقلك على الإبداع ويساعدك على فهم نفسك والآخرين بشكل أفضل.

Paragraphs & Emails

مكتبة إلكترونية ورسائل بريد إلكتروني عن موضوعات وكتب بالوحدة

Lessons 3 & 4

Sara loved stories. Every day after school, she went to the public library. She read books about animals, space, and faraway lands. One day, her teacher said, "Sara, you read so much! Your writing is getting better." Sara smiled. She knew reading was not just fun, it was important. Books helped her imagine new worlds and understand people better. They gave her knowledge she could use in school and life. Sara told her friends, "Reading is like opening a door to many adventures." Soon, they started reading too. Together, they discovered that reading could change the way they think and see the world.

Lessons 5 & 6

I read a short story called The Lion and the Mouse. It was very interesting and easy to understand. The story is about a small mouse who helps a big lion. At first, the lion laughs at the mouse, but later, the mouse saves the lion from a net. I liked the story because it shows very much. The moral is to be kind and never think someone is too small to help. The characters were simple and clear. The events happened in a good order, and the ending was happy. I would recommend this story to you. It teaches a life lesson and makes you think about helping others.

Al-Azhar Test

I just read a fantastic Arabic book; "The Days" by Taha Hussein. It tells his life story—how he became blind as a child but never gave up. He worked hard to learn, even when it was difficult. The book shows how strong people can be. Hussein grew up to be a great writer and teacher in Egypt. His journey teaches us about courage and hope. It inspired me.

Test on Unit 6

Naguib Mahfouz was a famous Egyptian writer. He was born in Cairo in 1911. He loved reading and writing from a young age. He wrote many novels and short stories about Egyptian life, history, and people. In 1988, he was the first Arab writer to win the Nobel Prize for Literature. His books were translated into many languages, so people around the world could read them. Mahfouz's stories showed important social and moral ideas. He continued writing until old age. He died in 2006, but his work still inspires many readers today.

Al Azhar Exercises

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Ahmed and Ali are talking about reading

Ali : Hi Ahmed, do you like reading books?

Ahmed : ① Reading is very important.

Ali : ②?

Ahmed : Because reading gives us knowledge and new ideas.

Ali : Can reading also help us in school?

Ahmed : Of course! Reading improves our language and makes us better in class.

Ali : What about stories? Are they useful too?

Ahmed : ③ and show us different points of view.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

we - emotional - various - us - knowledge - moral

Reading is very important in our lives. Books and stories give us ① and ideas. Some stories are ② and can touch our hearts. Others teach a clear ③ that helps us in daily life. Reading also shows ④ different points of view, so we understand people better. Finally, reading makes us wiser and kinder.

3 Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

Bees are amazing insects that are very important for our world. They are known for making honey, but their main job is pollination. When a bee flies from flower to flower to collect nectar, it carries pollen with it. This pollen helps new plants grow. Many of our favorite foods, like apples, almonds, and coffee, exist because of bees. **They** live in groups called colonies and work together to find food and take care of their young. Without bees, many plants would not be able to grow, and our food supply would be in danger.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main job of bees, besides making honey?

2. How do bees help new plants grow?

3. Why are bees so important to our food supply?

Unit 6 Why do We Like Stories?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. What is a group of bees called?
- a. A flock b. A herd c. A colony d. A swarm
5. The underlined word "They" refers to
- a. bees b. people c. plants d. insects

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My teacher's fantastic style of teaching my interest in studying English.
- a. flooded b. broke c. decided d. sparked
2. I felt a real for my best friend who lost his new mobile phone.
- a. empathy b. happiness c. laughter d. speed
3. Ali that he was happy to see me again.
- a. said b. told c. tells d. say
4. Ahmed said he to share his sandwiches with me.
- a. is wanting b. wants c. wanted d. has wanted

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets:

1. Salem (told) me, "I live in Tanta."
2. "I'm doing my homework now," she (told).
3. My mother told me that she was doing the housework (now).

6 Write a paragraph of SIX (6) sentences on:

"A book you have read."

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test on Unit 6

1 Finish the following dialog:

Sami and Nora are talking about stories they have read

Sami: Nora, what's the best story you've read?

Nora: I loved "The Tortoise and the Hare"! ①

Sami: I loved "The Lion and the Mouse." ② even small friends can help.

Nora: ③

Sami: When the mouse freed the lion! What about you?

Nora: When the tortoise ④

Sami: What lesson did you learn?

Nora: ⑤ And you?

Sami: Kindness matters, no matter how small you are!

2 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

awareness - studied - for - humor - sparked - at

When I was young, my grandfather told me stories that were full of ① and made me laugh. ② the same time, my grandfather's stories ③ my imagination and increased my ④ about right and wrong. I recommend you to read such stories to learn and enjoy.

3 Read the following text then answer the questions:

Sports are an important part of life for many people. They are not only fun but also good for our health. Playing sports gives us energy, makes our bodies strong, and helps us stay active. For example, football improves teamwork, while swimming helps the whole body stay fit.

Sports also teach us life lessons. They show us the value of perseverance when we keep trying, even if we lose. They also teach leadership, cooperation, and respect for others. Watching sports can also bring people together, as fans cheer for their teams.

Finally, sports are not just games. They are a symbol of unity, health, and joy. Teachers and doctors often recommend doing sports regularly because they help us stay both physically and mentally healthy.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Sports are good for our

a. sleep

b. health

c. homework

d. cooking

Unit 6 Why do We Like Stories?

2. Playing football can help us learn

- a. drawing b. singing c. reading d. teamwork

B. Answer the following questions

3. Why are sports important for health?

.....

4. What life lessons can sports teach us?

.....

5. Which sport do you enjoy most? Why?

.....

6. How can sports bring people together?

.....

4 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. The story has a that teaches us to be patient and never give up.

- a. book b. moral c. stream d. setting

2. The children had a very good about climate change during the science lesson.

- a. debate b. party c. game d. race

3. In this story, the hero enters the burning house and saves his children.

- a. fable b. adventure c. scientific d. folk

4. The of the story is a poor farmhouse in a small village.

- a. setting b. ending c. problem d. hero

5. The taxi driver wanted to take more money than other drivers do.

- a. polite b. generous c. greedy d. kind

6. I sent her four emails, but she hasn't to any of them.

- a. responded b. reminded c. wagged d. barked

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. They said that they (go) to the cinema the night before.

2. Lisa (said) me she was travelling to Paris that afternoon.

3. The teacher said the exam (start) at 8 a.m. the next day.

4. Ahmed said he (can) swim when he was five.

5. My friend said he (will) visit me the following week.

6 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"A famous writer you like"

Blank lined paper with horizontal ruling lines.



1. The

S. 112

Review (B)

Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

grades (n)	درجات	method (n)	طريقة
daily (adv)	يوميًا	proud (adj)	فخور
spend (v)	يقضي	confident (adj)	واثق
tired (adj)	متعب	progress (n)	تقدم
balancing (v)	يوازن	check (v-ed)	يفحص
screen time (n)	وقت الشاشة	plan (v-ed)	يخطط
weekday (n)	يوم من أيام الأسبوع	suggest (v-ed)	يقترح
weekend (n)	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	decide (v-d)	يقرر
habits (n)	عادات	drop (v-ped)	تقل
goal (n)	هدف	improve (v-d)	يجسّن
schedule (n)	جدول مواعيد	reduce (v-d)	يقلل
focused (adj)	منتهبه	when completed (phr)	عندما تكتمل
stress (n)	توتر	tasks (n)	مهام



Audio Script

SB Page (100)

استمع إلى النص



"Sarah **spends**⁽¹⁾ six hours daily on her phone watching videos and playing games. Her **grades**⁽²⁾ have **dropped**⁽³⁾, and she feels tired often. Her teacher suggests setting **limits**⁽⁴⁾ and balancing **screen time**⁽⁵⁾ with reading and sports. Sarah decides to use her phone only for one hour on weekdays and two hours on **weekends**⁽⁶⁾. She plans to join the school library and play basketball after school."

١. تقضي
٢. درجات
٣. انخفضت
٤. حدود
٥. وقت الشاشة
٦. العطلات

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Sarah spends on her phone daily?
a. 4 minutes b. 6 hours c. 60 minutes d. 10 hours
- What does Sarah's teacher suggest?
a. Using her phone only for one hour b. Stop using technology
c. Set limits and balance activities d. Play more games
- What activities does Sarah plan to do?
a. Only watch movies b. Join the library and play basketball
c. Buy new games till feeling tired d. Sleep more and eat less

2 Finish the following dialog.

Two friends, Sandy and Basma, are discussing their school's new technology project.

Sandy : Hi Basma, I heard you're working on a technology project with your group.

Basma : ①

Sandy : That sounds interesting! What exactly are you creating?

Basma : ②

Sandy : ③ ?

Basma : We're designing eco-friendly fertilizers for modern agriculture.

Sandy : Wow, that's really practical! But I noticed you're always on your phone. Isn't that a distraction?

Basma : ④

Sandy : A schedule? ⑤ ?

Basma : Yes, it's important because it would help me stay more focused.

3 Read and complete the text with words from the following list.

dedicated - while - must - balance - focused - modern - mustn't

Modern students need to maintain a healthy balance between technology use and physical activities. When students are ① on their studies, they perform better academically. Many ② teachers use ③ technology in classrooms. Students ④ understand that excessive screen time can harm their mental health. Parents should encourage children to read ⑤ playing educational games. Finding the right solution requires aware effort from everyone involved.

4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions below:

Today's teenagers are growing up in a world controlled by screens and digital technology. While this modern technology offers many benefits, it also presents significant challenges. Students spend hours scrolling through social media, often losing focus on their studies and physical activities.

Experts warn that too much screen time can negatively impact mental health and sleep routines. Many teenagers spend so much time on their phones or computers that they forget to take part in real-life activities around them. This can cause health problems and lower their school results.

However, technology also provides opportunities for learning and creativity. Students can access huge amounts of information instantly, collaborate with students around the world, and develop valuable digital skills. The key is learning to control technology rather than letting it control you.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?
 - a. Technology should be banned in schools completely.
 - b. Digital technology has both positive and negative effects on teenagers.
 - c. Parents should control all their children's online activities.
 - d. Students should only use traditional learning methods.
2. According to the passage, what do experts warn about excessive screen time?
 - a. It improves mental health and sleep routines.
 - b. It can negatively impact mental health and sleep routines.
 - c. It has no effect on students' academic performance.
 - d. It helps students focus better on their studies.

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What opportunities does technology provide for students according to the passage?

4. How might teenagers feel when they spend too much time on screens? Why?

5. Summarize the programs that schools are implementing to help students.

6. What do you think will happen if students don't learn to control their technology use?



Audio Script SB Page (101)

استمع إلى النص



"Ahmed wants to **improve**⁽¹⁾ his study **habits**⁽²⁾. He thinks carefully about his **goals**⁽³⁾ and creates a weekly **schedule**⁽⁴⁾. He plans to study math for two hours, read English books for one hour, and exercise for thirty minutes **daily**⁽⁵⁾. Ahmed believes good **planning**⁽⁶⁾ helps him **stay focused**⁽⁷⁾ and **reduces stress**⁽⁸⁾. He writes down his **tasks**⁽⁹⁾ and checks them when completed. **This method**⁽¹⁰⁾ makes him feel proud and **confident**⁽¹¹⁾ about his **progress**⁽¹²⁾."

١. يحسن
٢. عادات
٣. أهداف
٤. جدول
٥. يوميا
٦. التخطيط
٧. يبقى منتهبه
٨. يقلل التوتر
٩. مهام
١٠. هذه الطريقة
١١. واثق
١٢. تقدم

1 Listen to the audio then put (T) True or (F) False:

1. Ahmed wants to improve his study habits. ()
2. Ahmed studies math for three hours daily. ()
3. Ahmed believes good planning increases his stress. ()
4. Ahmed writes down his tasks and checks them off. ()
5. Ahmed feels proud and confident about his progress. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The _____ of this new app helps students organize their homework efficiently.
a. screen b. schedule c. sprint d. solution
2. Students who show great _____ can overcome difficult challenges.
a. determination b. irresponsibility c. dishonesty d. greed
3. The opposite of "fair" is "_____".
a. confident b. unfair c. honest d. practical
4. The suffix "-ful" in "helpful" means "_____".
a. without b. full of c. not d. together
5. Many _____ believe that technology can improve education.
a. experts b. projects c. notifications d. perspectives

B

a. must

b. can

c. shouldn't

d. mustn't



1. Students _____ (must) take regular breaks while studying.

2. Although technology is helpful, students ----- (**can**) become too dependent on it.

3. The teacher said that we ----- (should) finish the project by Friday.

4. ----- **(Although)** playing educational games, students can learn new skills.

5. The principal _____ (**recommendation**) that we reduce screen time.



"A Short Story: The Day I Learned to Balance Technology and Life"

1. The first step in the process of developing a new product is to identify a market need. This involves conducting market research to determine what consumers want and need. Once a need is identified, the next step is to develop a concept for a product that meets this need. This concept should be based on the market research and should be feasible, desirable, and profitable. The third step is to develop a business plan for the product. This plan should outline the costs of production, the pricing strategy, and the marketing strategy. The fourth step is to secure financing for the product. This can be done through a variety of sources, including banks, venture capitalists, and crowdfunding. The fifth and final step is to launch the product and monitor its performance. This involves tracking sales, customer feedback, and market trends to ensure that the product is successful and profitable.

R

Review on Unit 1

(Communication with Family and Friends)

Lessons ① & ②

هوية شخصية	محبوب
شخصية	واثق
قوة/طاقة/قدرة	مضغوط نفسياً - متوتر
نقطة ضعف	غريب
معتقد/اعتقاد	الواقعية
القوة/القدرة على التحمل	أسلوب محدد/طريقة معينة
اكتشاف الذات	وسائل التواصل الإجتماعي
احترام الذات	تحد
ثقة بالنفس	تجربة
نقاط قوة	معرض العلوم
النمو	رأي سلبي
فردية/شخصية (تميز)	ملهمة/مشجع
لا مثيل/فريد	صبور
دعم/يدعم	راسخ/ثابت
قيمة/يقدر	يشجع
العمل الجاد/الشاق	يستكشف
الطيبة/اللطيف	يشكل/يكون
فضول/حب الاستطلاع	يعتقد
اختلافات	يصف
شخصية	يؤثر/تأثير
جراح قلب	يتعجب/يتساءل
امراض القلب	يحتفل
مشاكل في القلب	يذكر
سمة/صفة	يذكر/يشير إلى
بسيط (اجتماعياً)	

1. Write the word:

_____	where someone comes from
_____	who a person is
_____	have a high opinion of someone or something
_____	learning more about who you are

2. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
personal	_____	_____
stressed	_____	_____
popular	_____	_____
strange	_____	_____
strength	_____	_____
kindness	_____	_____
value	_____	_____
support	_____	_____

3. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

-ence / self / -th / -ing / -y / -ed / dis- / -ness	
_____ covery	discover _____
_____ -respect	grow _____
confid _____	listen _____
differ _____	fixed _____
kind _____	



1 Complete the following dialogue:

Two students are talking about their role model.

Hana : Can I ask you a question?

Ganat : ①

Hana : ② ?

Ganat : My role model is Dr. Magi Yacoub.

Hana : ③

Ganat : Because he is very kind and always helps sick people.

Hana : How do you feel towards him?

Ganat : ④ What about you?

Hana : ⑤

Ganat : You should be proud of your father.

2 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. means learning more about who you are.

- a. Self-esteem b. Self-discovery c. Self-respect d. Self study

2. helps you overcome life's challenges.

- a. Weakness b. Strength c. Street d. Kindness

3. My father was one of a kind. He was

- a. unique b. usual c. kind d. common

4. The antonym of the word "strength" is

- a. power b. kindness c. sadness d. weakness

5. To get the noun of the word "kind" we add the suffix

- a. -ness b. -ence c. -ly d. -ment

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The Park (visited) by many people lately.
2. The visitors have (leave) the museum.
3. Have you (never) been to Aswan?
4. I have spoken English (in) 1992.
5. The homework (do) yet.

4 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets:

1. I have never seen a more exciting film (ever)
2. Ibrahim returned home a short time ago. (just)
3. I haven't visited Aswan before. (never)
4. They arrived home a few minutes ago. (have just)
5. Omnia visited Aswan and came back. (been) 

5 Find the mistakes in the following and correct them:

1. The movie have been watched. (.....)
2. She has supported by her friends. (.....)
3. It's the most exciting film I have never seen. (.....)
4. Medhat study English since he was a child. (.....)
5. Salwa hasn't visited Aswan for.  (.....)

Lessons 3 & 4

شوي	سكرة/جاكيت
واثق	خصلات شعر مجمدة
فضولي / يحب الاستطلاع	الراحة
أمين / صادق	دفتر الرسم
محلن / لا يدعو للتفاؤل	ملعب / فناء
فخور	مزيف
جدير بالاهتمام / يستحق العناء	اسمنت / خرسانة
يعذل / يضبط	مرسوم يدوياً
قوة / مصدر قوة	مبدع
قيم	رمادي (كثيب / عديم الحياة)
صدق / أمانة	عقل / ذهن
لحظة المرأة	طالب
الجمال	بخلاف / على عكس
خريطة تحديد الهوية	فائدة / منفعة
تحدي	مرتبك
ملصقات ملونة	يقدم
لوحة/صورة لوجه انسان	يشمل / يتضمن
صف	يخلق / ينشئ
إعجاب / موافقة	يصاب بهلع مفاجئ
اجتماعي / منفتح	يدرك فجأة / ينفتح في ذهن فجاءه
مثالي	يلاحظ
مدرسة إعدادي	يبدو
واجب/تكليف	يتخيل
الصف الثالث الإعدادي	يهتم / يكثرث

1. Write the word:

	interested in discovering new things
	the beliefs and principles that guide how we live
	changing something a little to make it better
	feeling sure about your abilities, qualities, or decisions
	good enough to deserve the time, effort, or money
	feeling good about success
	something that makes you feel sad
	always telling the truth

2. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
adjust		
outgoing		
panicked		
creative		
gray		
honest		

3. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

-ful / -ed / un- / -ive	
like	surpris
color	creat

**1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

than - curious - threw - then - collected - gray

Zeina was a new student at a preparatory school. She was always ① and liked to notice everything around her. The playground was large but empty and ② The ground was all concrete. Students ③ their trash on the ground. Since ④, she has decided to make a difference.

2 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When you are, this means you are interested in discovering new things.
a. lazy b. asleep c. curious d. strong
2. When you are, this means you are feeling sure about your abilities.
a. curious b. confident c. strong d. abroad
3. Nour stood in front of the mirror, her clothes.
a. adjusting b. eating c. cutting d. damaging
4. After failing the exam, she stayed and studied harder.
a. fat b. stupid c. weak d. strong.
5. My teacher gave me a when I did well.
a. thumbs-up b. backup c. buildup d. breakup
6. "Adjust and change" are
a. adjectives b. adverbs c. synonyms d. antonyms
7. "Fit in" is the opposite of ".....".
a. blend in b. dress in c. stand for d. stand out
8. To get the opposite of the adjective "like" we add the prefix
a. dis- b. un- c. im- d. lr-

lessons (5) & (6)

غائب	احترام الذات
شجاع	عدل/إنصاف
جذا/للغاية	قوة/صلابة
اللطيف / الطيبه	الأمانة
اكتشاف الذات	داعم/مساند
المسؤولية	وائق
زميل الدراسة / العمل	يلاحظ/يدرك
الأفعال	هوية شخصية
الاختيارات اليومية	تحديات / صعوبات
مهمة / وظيفة	إدراك / فهم
حيوات الناس	التواصل البصري
قيمة/ يقدر	لغة الجسد
تغيير/ يغير	نقاط ضعف
يتقبل	نصيحة
يواجه	احترام/يحترم
يدعم	ثقة/يثق
ينسخ/يقلد	خاص/مميز
يكمل/ينهي	إيجابي
تماقا/بالضبط	حقيقي
يطور/يحسن	مقبول
	مهتم/عطوف

1. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
positive		
supportive		
notice		
accept		
teach		

2. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

-ness / -ive / -ence / -al / -ly-y	
discover	fair
support	differ
person	exact
kind	

Lessons

Lessons 5 - 6

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

trust - shape - fairness - parts - shaped - parts

I stand for kindness, honesty, and responsibility. These values have ① my personal identity. Respect and caring have helped me build ② with others. I value ③ in my daily choices. These values are strong ④ of my identity.

2 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The teacher asked us to the changes on the board.
a. play b. forget c. notice d. sleep
- My best friend is very, he always helps me when I have problems.
a. supportive b. angry c. selfish d. lazy
- People with never allow others to treat them badly.
a. fear b. self-respect c. laziness d. anger
- The referee should treat all players with
a. laziness b. hate c. anger d. fairness
- To form the opposite of the word "cover" we add the prefix
a. dis- b. im- c. in- d. ir-
- To change the word "exact" into an adverb, we add the suffix
a. -ness b. -er c. -ly d. -ive.
- "Positive" and "Hopeful" are
a. verbs b. synonyms c. antonyms d. nouns.
- The opposite of the word "teach" is
a. learn b. educate c. kill d. eat.

Test on Unit 1

1 Complete the following dialogue:

A tourist asks the way to the Egyptian Museum.

Tourist : Good morning. Can I ask for help?

Amr : Sure. ①

Tourist : ②

Amr : You can take the metro.

Tourist : Is it OK if ③

Amr : The taxi is OK, but ④

Tourist : OK. I'll take the metro then.

Amr : Welcome to Egypt.

Tourist : ⑤

Amr : Have a nice stay.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

care - caring - playground - depressing - trash - depressed

Haneen is a student in Prep 3. She is a ① girl who loves making a difference. She realized that the ② was dirty and full of ③ No one seemed to ④

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

In today's world, learning and technology go hand in hand. Technology has become a helpful friend in the journey of learning.

Let us first say "what is learning?". Learning is like an adventure where we discover new things every day. It happens through steps of understanding, remembering and using new information or skills: whether it's reading a book, solving a problem or trying something for the first time, so learning is a part of our everyday life. Technology makes learning even more exciting. Computers, tablets, and other devices bring lessons and information to life with colourful pictures, fun videos and interesting games. These tools help us explore subjects

in different ways, making learning a joyful experience.

Technology helps us learn quickly from home. If we find something difficult, we can replay a video until we understand. It is like having a patient teacher who is always ready to help us when we need. This makes learning like an exciting journey full of discoveries.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea of the text is

- | | |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| a. learning and playing. | b. learning and technology. |
| c. learning and skills. | d. learning and teachers |

2. Learning is a / an

- | | | | |
|----------|------------|------------|----------|
| a. story | b. picture | b. journey | b. dream |
|----------|------------|------------|----------|

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What are the steps of learning something?

.....

4. Infer from the text how technology can affect learning.

.....

5. Summarize the last paragraph in one sentence

.....

6. What do you think learning in the future will be like?

.....

4 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. When you are something, this means you are changing it a little to make it better.

- | | | | |
|-------------|------------|--------------|---------------|
| a. deleting | b. cutting | c. adjusting | b. polluting. |
|-------------|------------|--------------|---------------|

2. So much homework usually makes students feel

- | | | | |
|-------------|------------|--------|---------|
| a. stressed | b. relaxed | c. bad | b. lazy |
|-------------|------------|--------|---------|

3. We add the suffix "....." to change the verb "discover" into a noun.

- | | | | |
|--------|----------|----------|-------|
| a. -ly | b. -ment | c. -ness | b. -y |
|--------|----------|----------|-------|

4. To change the word "color" into an adjective We add

- | | | | |
|--------|--------|---------|----------|
| a. -ly | b. -er | c. -ful | b. -able |
|--------|--------|---------|----------|

5. The means the beliefs and principles that guide how we live.

- | | | | |
|----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| a. veins | b. planes | c. values | b. plants |
|----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|

6:

R

Review on Unit 2

(Communication with
Family and Friends)

Lessons ① & ②

رسالة نصية	يتواصل
أمين/مخلص	تواصل
مسافة/بعد	سوء اتصال
متوتر	اشقاء
مكثب	اتصال
عضو	يسبىء فهم
هادئ	محترم
ذو معنى	مساند/داعم
جاد / خطير	رابطة
صراع / خلاف	علاقة
ثقة	قريب
يسامح	إرسال الرسائل النصية
مراع لشعور الآخرين	يحل/يسوي
يوميا	يخلق/ينشئ
يقدم	يؤثر على
يساعد/يدعم/يساند	يشتمل على
يقوي	نبرة الصوت
يهتم	صوت بشرى
يحل	تعبير الوجه
يتجاهل	لغة الجسد
يجادل	بسيط
يتجنب	ابتسامه

1. Write the word:

failure to understand correctly

a relationship or link between people

a strong connection between people

brothers and sisters

showing care and regard for others

giving help or encouragement

to share thoughts, feelings or ideas

to find a solution to a problem

2. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
forward		
connection		
upset		
honest		
calm		
late		
serious		

3. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

-ly / mis- / -ful	
understand	respect
communication	polite

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My brother and I often by phone since we live far apart.
a. communicate b. see c. listen d. write
2. There was a, so we both went to different restaurants.
a. good talk b. miscommunication
c. chat d. communication
3. Although are raised in the same family, they are sometimes different.
a. parents b. friends c. siblings d. teachers
4. He said he didn't mean to hurt my feelings, so I think it was a
a. good idea b. long story
c. misunderstanding d. new plan
5. It is important to be when you talk to your elders.
a. loud b. rude c. respectful d. tired
6. My friends are always and help me when I'm sad.
a. angry b. supportive c. busy d. quiet
7. The happy memories helped create a strong between us.
a. rope b. bond c. wall d. box
8. She is a very friend; we tell each other everything.
a. far away b. serious c. close d. tired
9. We the problem by talking about it calmly.
a. started b. resolved c. ignored d. made bigger
10. Good is important for a strong family.
a. communication b. silence c. fighting d. guessing
11. I want a answer, not a long and complicated one.
a. difficult b. simple c. quiet d. fast
12. His angry made me feel like he was upset.
a. tone b. story c. song d. color
13. It's important to be and tell the truth.
a. silly b. quiet c. honest d. loud
14. A text message is sent on a
a. book b. phone c. TV d. chair
15. When I am stressed, I feel
a. relaxed b. worried c. happy d. hungry
16. She was because she lost her toy
a. upset b. happy c. serious d. hungry

17. Your aunt happy if you had called her.
 a. should be b. would have been c. would be d. will be
18. If they had tried harder, they the gold medal.
 a. are winning b. would have won c. would win d. will win
19. We would have come if we invited.
 a. are b. were c. had been d. will be
20. If he the bus, he wouldn't have been late.
 a. catches b. caught c. had caught d. will catch
21. You would have passed if you for the test.
 a. study b. studied c. had studied d. will study
22. If it raining, we would have gone out.
 a. stops b. stopped c. had stopped d. will stop
23. They would have bought the flat if they enough money.
 a. have b. had c. had had d. will have
24. If Aliaa earlier, she would have met the manager.
 a. arrives b. arrived c. had arrived d. will arrive
25. They wouldn't have crashed if they carefully.
 a. drive b. drove c. had driven d. will drive
26. If I to the party, I would have seen you.
 a. go b. went c. had gone d. will go

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- We (arrive) on time if the bus had come early.
- You would have seen the movie if you (come) with us.
- He (buy) the car if he had saved enough money.
- She would have been happy if you (have visited) her.
- They (eat) dinner if they had been hungry.
- I (travel) abroad if I had gotten a visa.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

distance - miscommunication - bond - expressions - tone - relationship

Good communication is important for a close ① Siblings should talk in a respectful and honest way to avoid ② Using simple words and a calm ③ helps. Texting is easy, but without facial ④ or body language, messages can be misunderstood. A smile or supportive text message can make a big difference.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

With our busy lives, it's hard to stay in touch with people. Texting is a great way to communicate quickly, but it has limits. We might send a text message to our family, but it doesn't include the warmth of a person's voice. We should not let distance create a problem in our connection. It is important to make time for each other, even for a short call. Being thoughtful about how we communicate shows we care. This helps us to strengthen our relationships daily. A strong family bond and supportive relationships are what make us happy.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. According to the passage, what is the problem of texting?

- a. It is too slow.
- b. It can't be used to talk to family.
- c. It doesn't include the warmth of a person's voice.
- d. It is too expensive.

2. What does the passage say makes people happy?

- a. Having a busy life.
- b. A strong family bond and supportive relationships.
- c. Sending a lot of text messages.
- d. Never having to make time for a phone call.

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why is it important to make time for each other, even for a short call?

4. How can being thoughtful about communication help our relationships?

5. What is a good way to communicate that the passage suggests?

6. What can happen if we let distance become a problem in our relationships?

lessons 3 & 4

صمت	محادثة
صامت	حديث
بعيد	أمين/مخلص
مبادرة	تصرف
مخرج	مشتت
تشيت	رحلة
محبط	كافتريا
ذو معنى	أحياء
إشارة	استاذة/سيدة
عرض	الضحك
صريح	تقاليد
تعليق	نظام
تصميم/اصرار	مخرج
متمكن	غير مريح
تحدي	مجلس الطلاب
شجاعة	الشخصية الفردية (تميز)
يعيد الاتصال	موهبة
يبحث	أدوات
يستحق	مميز/فريد
شوكة	يدفع
عبر	يختفي
مؤخرا/حديثا	يفتقد/يفوت
توتر	يصلح
جدال	يوميء بالموافقة
طبق	يصيح
بهدوء	يرج/يهتز

Unit (2) Communication with Family and Friends

1. Write the word:

	a movement or action that shows emotion
	feeling annoyed and upset
	having purpose or deep importance
	the absence of sound
	to build a relationship again after distance
	something that stops you paying attention.
	plan or suggestion for others to consider
	Looking for information about something
	Not giving up until achieving something
	The ability to do something different or when you are not afraid
	Given or used by more than one person
	To be worthy of something because of what you did
	A natural ability to do something well

2. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
meaningful		
disappear		

3. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

-ful / un- / dis-	
appear	comfortable
honest	meaning

Lessons



Lessons 3 - 4

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Amy and Tom are talking about their science project

Amy : Hey Tom, we need to start our science project ①

Tom : Yeah! I was thinking we could research volcanoes. It sounds fun!

Amy : ②, but it seems like a big challenge. The teacher said it needs to be different from last year's projects.

Tom : True. Maybe we can add a model that actually erupts?

Hana : ③! But we'll need to work hard. Lately, I've been so tired with other homework.

Tom : If we stay focused and avoid distractions, ④

Amy : Okay! First, we'll research, then build the model.

Tom : Exactly! And if we get stressed, ⑤

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

silent - challenge - meaningful - noticed - tired - bond

Ali felt frustrated with his studies. The heavy workload gave him stress, and he often felt ① His friend ② and made a kind offer. He offered to help. With determination, Ali accepted the ③ They researched together, using the right tools. At first, it was awkward, but soon, their teamwork felt ④ Ali learned that asking for help takes courage. He felt empowered and realized he deserved support.

3 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. After a long day, I felt very

- a. happy b. tired c. excited d. loud

2. She spoke so as not to wake the baby.

- a. angrily b. softly c. quickly d. brightly

3. The meeting was because no one knew what to say.
a. fun b. awkward c. easy d. short
4. He showed great when he kept trying after failing.
a. fear b. determination c. silence d. distraction
5. Lately, I have been feeling a lot of at work. I need to rest.
a. joy b. stress c. laughter d. energy
6. A small, like a smile, can make someone's day better.
a. argument b. gesture c. fork d. council
7. They had a/an about where to eat dinner.
a. agreement b. argument c. tradition d. proposal
8. It takes to speak in front of a crowd.
a. silence b. courage c. distraction d. plate
9. The room was completely after the teacher asked a difficult question.
a. noisy b. silent c. bright d. crowded
10. She felt when her computer stopped working before the deadline.
a. happy b. frustrated c. calm d. funny
11. His to start a new club was approved by the school.
a. argument b. proposal c. distraction d. fork
12. Learning a new language is a fun but a tough
a. tradition b. challenge c. plate d. laughter
13. She gave a answer instead of lying.
a. funny b. frank c. heavy d. soft

Lessons 5 & 6

بصراحة	مخرج
يعيد بناء	إيماءة/ إشارة
بأمانة	محبط
حسنا	ذو معنى
ابن/ بنت العم/ الخال	مناسب/ صحيح
سيء/ قاس	أمين
زميل/ صاحب	يتواصل
قتال/ شجار	يعيد التواصل
مشاعر	قريب/ مقرب
شجاعة	وجها لوجه
	يحل

1. Write the word:

	feeling upset due to a difficulty
	sign or action that shows feeling or intent
	to build a relationship again
	emotionally uncomfortable or strange
	full of importance or feeling

2. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
close		
strong		
supportive		
courage		
true		

Unit 2 Communication with Family and Friends

3. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

-ive / re- / -ly	
honest	build
absolute	connect
support	

Lessons



Lessons 5 - 6

1 Complete the following dialogue:

There was a misunderstanding between Sarah and Tom

Sarah : Tom, are you okay? You haven't called me back.

Tom : ① I saw your face and it looked like you were angry.

Sarah : Oh, no, I was just tired. ②

Tom : ③ We are so close, I didn't want to hurt our bond.

Sarah : We need to be more honest with each other. It's the proper way to talk.

Tom : You're right. ④

Sarah : I agree. Let's make sure we communicate openly from now on.

Tom : ⑤ Our relationship is too important.

2 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I think everything will be after we talk about it.

- a. bad b. alright c. sad d. funny

2. It's better to talk about your rather than keeping them inside.

- a. subjects b. clothes c. feelings d. dreams

3. It is important to be with people to have a good friendship.

- a. nervous b. honest c. greedy d. angry

4. My brother and I are very and we tell each other everything.

- a. far away b. strong c. close d. different

5. It's easier to fix problems when you talk

- a. on the phone b. loudly c. online d. face-to-face

6. A strong between friends is good.

- a. bond b. fight c. game d. song

7. I want to with my old friend.

- a. forget b. reconnect c. hide d. cry

8. Let's this problem together.

- a. ignore b. resolve c. lose d. break

9. We should talk about our feelings.

- a. secretly b. openly c. angrily d. cowardly

10. Sometimes brothers over toys.

- a. fight b. laugh c. dance d. sing

11. We need to trust after a mistake.

- a. forget b. rebuild c. hide d. break

12. It's okay to share your with friends.

- a. toys b. feelings c. money d. clothes

13. It takes to say sorry.

- a. courage b. time c. food d. sleep

14. Math can be but I will try.

- a. easy b. tough c. fun d. boring

Test on Unit 2

1 Complete the following dialogue:

There was a misunderstanding between Alex and Emma

Alex: : Hey, Emma. I'm sorry if I upset you at the family dinner.

Emma: : 1 ?

Alex: : No, not at all! I had a bad day at work, and I didn't want to talk about it.

Emma: : 2 It's hard to have a proper chat over text.

Alex: : I know. This whole miscommunication was just a silly mistake.

3 ?

Emma: : Absolutely. 4

Alex: : Let's make sure we 5

Emma: : Yes. And let's try to resolve things like this quickly, so we can rebuild our trust.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

honest - bond - misunderstanding - tone - communication - member

Miscommunication happens when people misunderstand each other. Voice 1 and body language help in 2 but texting sometimes causes problems. A late or serious text message can make someone upset. Being 3 and respectful avoids this. Siblings with a close 4 talk openly, even when stressed. A simple smile or calm voice strengthens their relationship.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My sister and I had a tough week," Sara said to her friend. "We had a big miscommunication, and things got mixed up. I totally get that texting isn't the best way to communicate important things. It's so easy to misunderstand each other."

"I totally agree," replied Leo. "It's hard to be truly honest when you can't see someone's face. Sometimes a simple thing can turn into a big deal. It's always better to talk face-to-face."

"Right!" Sara said. "We needed to reconnect and resolve our fight. We sat down and talked openly. We were respectful and supportive of each other. I'm so glad we did. Our bond is so important to me."

"That's good to hear," Leo smiled. "It's good to have a close relationship with your siblings. It's important to find a proper way to talk so you can rebuild trust."

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- What does the passage say about texting?
 - Text messages are too slow.
 - It is easy to misunderstand each other.
 - Texting is only for friends, not family.
 - It costs too much money to send a text.
- Sara and her sister to fix their miscommunication.
 - wrote each other long letters
 - stopped talking to each other
 - talked face-to-face in a respectful way
 - asked Leo to help them

B. Answer the following questions:

- Why does the passage say it's better to talk face-to-face instead of texting?

.....

- What did Sara and her sister do to reconnect and resolve their fight?

.....

- What does Leo say is important to have with your siblings?

.....

- According to the passage, what is important to find so you can rebuild trust?

.....

4 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

- To is to build a relationship again.

a. ignore	b. deserve	c. reconnect	d. misunderstand
-----------	------------	--------------	------------------
- Mona is very upset about her uncle's death. Upset is the antonym of

a. honest	b. annoyed	c. pleased	d. sincere
-----------	------------	------------	------------
- A is a movement or action that shows emotion.

a. tone	b. gesture	c. bond	d. sibling
---------	------------	---------	------------

Unit 2 Communication with Family and Friends

4. There was a strong between him and his mother.
a. distraction b. gesture c. silence d. bond
5. Being a good guy means you are a good and kind person. A guy is another word for a
a. girl b. man c. dog d. cat
6. The basket was with apples.
a. empty b. filled c. broken d. happy

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If you (tell) me the truth, I wouldn't have been angry.
2. We (miss) our flight if we hadn't hurried.
3. If she (check) her email, she would have seen the message.
4. I would have felt better if I (rest).
5. If they (invite) us, we would have gone with them.

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN words on the following

"A situation of misunderstanding inside your family "

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

R

Review on Unit 3 (Artificial Intelligence)

lessons 1 & 2

مُسَوِّدَة	الذكاء الاصطناعي
نَمْط	مهمة / عمل
يُنْهَضِم	إنسان آلي (روبوت)
مَرَض	مُتَقَدِّم / مُتَطَوِّر
ذَاتِي الْقِيَادَة	سَلُوك
عَالَمِي	أَسَاسِي
التَّغْيِير المُنَاحِي	أَمْر
خَطَا	الخَوَازِمِيَّة
مَجَال	قَصِيدَة
وَسَائِل النُّقْل / مَوَاصِلَات	إِنْسَان / بَشَر
بِدُون سَائِق	حَد
يُسْتَبَدَل	شُعُور / عَاطِفَة
يَقْلَل	اِبْتِكَار / إِبْدَاع
خِدْمَة الْعَمَلَاء	مُبْدَع
التَّعْلِيم	يُؤَلِّف / يَنْتِج
مِنْ صَنْع الْإِنْسَان	يُدْعَم / يَشْغَل
الرَّعَايَة الصَّحِيَّة	اِفْتِرَاضِي
عَمَل / تِجَارَة	بَرْنَامِج / يَبْرِمِج
يَشْخِص	عَمَلِيَّة جِرَاحِيَّة
يَحْسِن / يَعْزِز	دَوَاء
يَحُول / يَغْيِر	تَكْنُولُوجِيَا
تَحَد	آلَة
كِفَاءَة الطَّاقَة	مَكْنَسَة كَهْرِبَائِيَّة
يَبْرِمِج / يَجْعَلُهُ أَوْتَمَاتِيكِي	يُحَسِّن
يَقْدَم / يَعْرِض	مَرِيض
فَعَال / كَفَاء	بَدِيل
التَّعْلِم الشَّخْصِي / المَخْصَص	فَائِدَة

1. Write the word:

	feelings like happiness, sadness, anger, or fear
	the way someone or something acts or responds
	very modern, developed, or complex; not basic
	the point where something stops or cannot go further
	jobs or actions that need to be done
	people; men, women, and children
	invention and improvement
	create or produce
	producing or using unusual ideas

2. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
expensive		
important		
smart		
basic		
incredible		
modern		

3. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

-ment / -ence / -ness / -ly	
tru _____	differ _____
happi _____	replace _____
sad _____	

Lessons

Lessons 1 - 2

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Mandal and Ali are talking about AI.

Mandal : Hi Ali. I read that computers can make stories and videos. Is that true?

Ali : ① It can write short stories and create fun videos.

Mandal : ② ?

Ali : You tell it what you want like "a story about a friendly robot". Then it makes it.

Mandal : ③

Ali : Yes, it can design simple games or help build them.

Mandal : But how can it be smart?

Ali : ④

Mandal : Can it think by itself?

Ali : ⑤ It only helps humans invent new things.

2 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The word "....." means the way someone or something acts or responds.

- a. innovation b. limit c. education d. behavior

2. To get the noun from the verb "replace", we add the suffix

- a. -ness b. -ity c. -ion d. -ment

3. Robots can tasks that are too dangerous for humans.

- a. do b. make c. go d. solve

4. The hospital uses technology to help sick people. It is very modern.

- a. basic b. common c. advanced d. traditional

5. The teacher asked the student to a paragraph about his favorite hobby.

- a. compose b. act c. program d. replace

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Electric cars will (drive) in the future.
2. New apps will (develop) to help students learn.
3. Will the computers be (update) tonight?
4. Do you think AI will be able to (replacing) humans?
5. My brother (paint) his room next weekend.

4 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets:

1. The mechanic will fix the car tonight. (be)
2. The engineer will solve the problem. (by)
3. The picture will be drawn by the artist. (draw)
4. Yes, dinner will be served at 7 p.m. tonight. (Will)
5. Our books will be collected next Monday. (The teacher)

5 Find the mistakes in the following and correct them:

1. The letters will be wrote by the secretary. (-----)
2. My mom will be baked a cake for my birthday. (-----)
3. Will the party cancel because of the rain? (-----)
4. The lesson not be explained by the teacher next Monday. (-----)
5. Robots often need humans help or program them. (-----)

Lessons 3 & 4

مدرس آلي/يعمل بالذكاء الاصطناعي	تماق/كلينا
محفز	بذور
مفاجئ/مدهش	تربة
لامع	المجتمع المحلي
مرتبك	نبات
مخصص	بلطف
فوراً/على الفور	فرد/عضو
تقييم	يعتبر
مفيد	يغش
رعاية/اهتمام	خطة
اتصال/صلة	تأخير
مبادرة	رابط/صلة
تبرع	فشل
أمين/صادق	نظام ري
منزعج	ببطء
محبط/خائب الأمل	فخور
مناخ	رد فعل
يلاحظ	يشرح
يجري بحثاً	يفتقد
تطبيق	يتسم
موقع تعليمي	يعود/يرجع
ممطر	يموت
خاص	يحل
إضافي	يقرر
تدريب على القواعد	يحمي
ممتع	يشجع
حقيقي	يبتكر/يجدد
بحلول الوقت/عندما	يناسب

1. Write the word:

	to change something to make it the way you want
	a link between people, things or ideas
	without any delay
	feeling unsure or puzzled
	to see or become aware of something
	taking action without waiting for others
	money or gifts given to help a project
	to stop doing something because it's too hard
	feeling sad when something doesn't work out
	the usual weather in a place

2. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
surprising		
different		
disappointed		
unsure		
local		
special		

3. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

-ion / -ful / -ly / un- / -ing	
help	connect
surpris	donat
instant	replace
complete	determinat
kind	sure

Lessons

Lessons 3 - 4

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

disappointed - make - determination - initiative - take

My friend's team lost the game. He was feeling very ❶ I wanted to help, so I asked him what happened. He said they didn't have enough practice. I advised him to ❷ action, so he took the ❸ to talk to the coach, and they made a new plan to improve. His honesty was helpful, and it showed his strong ❹

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The new learning app allows you to your lessons based on your interests.
a. customize b. donate c. quit d. notice
- "....." means feeling unsure or puzzled.
a. Honest b. Disappointed c. Confused d. Determined
- The antonym of the word "online" is
a. connected b. linked c. offline d. tied
- It is important to care plants by giving them water and sunlight.
a. on b. in c. at d. for
- When you a problem, try to stay calm and think of a solution.
a. face b. quit c. make d. spend
- To is to see or become aware of something.
a. notice b. quit c. donate d. customize
- To get the antonym of "sure", we add the prefix
a. in- b. un- c. ir- d. im-
- Don't be if you make a mistake; just try again.
a. motivated b. shiny c. helpful d. upset

Lessons 5 & 6

يتخيل	مثير
يعتقد	بالثبات
يتذكر	على الرغم من
يساعد	قوى
مسرور	خطر
استخدام	حقيقة
طائرة بدون طيار	تسليم
معلومات	دواء
قاعدة	قلق
يحمي	يكتشف
يتعرف على	يشارك
	إبداع

1. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
exciting		
powerful		

2. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

-ful / -ly / -ity	
definite	power
safe	creativ

Lessons

Lessons 5 - 6

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

do - on - assist - powerful - in

Even though some people worry, I believe robots will definitely **do** us in the future. They will **assist** jobs that are dangerous for humans. For example, they can help doctors in surgeries, put out fires, or explore deep oceans. We can imagine them helping **in** different ways, like driving cars safely or teaching students in schools. This technology is **powerful** and very exciting!

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- is important for writing stories and making art.
a. Initiative b. Donation c. Creativity d. Connection
- Do you that robots will be teachers in the future?
a. assist b. believe c. forget d. remember
- I heard a great new app for learning languages.
a. off b. with c. out d. about
- If you study hard, you will sure get a good grade.
a. in b. with c. for d. out
- Can you what life will be like in 100 years?
a. believe b. imagine c. hear d. recognize
- To get the adjective of the word "power", we add the suffix to the word "power".
a. -ful b. -ive c. -ly d. -ity
- The trip was exciting. The antonym of "exciting" is
a. wonderful b. fantastic c. boring d. amazing
- What of music do you like to listen to?
a. kind b. power c. way d. job

Test on Unit 3

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Karim wants to join the Faculty of Engineering.

Salma: Hi Karim! What will you do after you finish school?

Karim: ① I want to study engineering.

Salma: That's great! ②

Karim: I will choose engineering because I will help build new roads and bridges.

Salma: Will you work in Egypt after you graduate?

Karim: ③ I will work here to help my country.

Salma: How will you travel to work?

Karim: ④

Salma: ⑤

Karim: My family will help me achieve my goals. They will always support me.

Salma: Good luck!

2 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

useful - get - tool - projects - write

My laptop is a very helpful device. It's a powerful ① for my schoolwork and my hobbies. Even though I'm not with my friends, I can still use it to talk to them and work on ② together. It's a ③ device that helps me stay connected and ④ things done.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

In the future, many things will change. People will use more technology in their daily lives. For example, many people will work from home and will not need to travel to offices. Students will study online using computers and tablets. They will not carry heavy books to school.

Cities will become smarter and cleaner. There will be more parks and fewer cars. People will ride bicycles or will use electric buses. The air will be fresher and the environment will be healthier.

However, some things will not change. People will still love their families

and friends. They will still enjoy playing sports, listening to music, and eating delicious food. The future will be different, but it will also be wonderful.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The main idea of the passage is
 a. Technology advances b. Change and tradition
 c. No more schools d. Only bad changes
- People will travel in future cities using
 a. gasoline cars b. bicycles and electric buses
 c. flying cars d. only walking

B. Answer the following questions:

- What will students use to study instead of heavy books?

- Summarize how daily life will be different in the future.

- Why will the environment be healthier in the future?

- What else do you think will change in the future?

4 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

- "....." mean jobs or actions that need to be done.
 a. Humans b. Tasks c. Emotions d. Feelings
- It is important to think carefully before you decisions that affect your future.
 a. do b. get c. make d. learn
- We add the suffix to "instant" to get its adverb.
 a. -ful b. -ir c. -ily d. -ly
- To is to stop doing something because it's too hard.
 a. notice b. customize c. quit d. research
- I asked my friend for on the story I wrote.
 a. feedback b. link c. plan d. tool
- The teacher's method is powerful. "....." is similar in meaning to "powerful".
 a. Weak b. Effective c. Powerless d. Helpless

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Will the homework (been) finished on time?
2. The windows will (clean) by the workers.
3. My brother (fix) the computer tomorrow.
4. The story will be told to the children (with) their grandpa.
5. A new hospital will be (build) next year.

6 Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words

to your friend Dalia to tell her about the benefits of Artificial intelligence. Your name is Rania. Your email is rania796@yahoo.com. Your friend's email is dalia643@gmail.com

New Message				
To		Cc	Bcc	
From				
Subject				
..... 				

Review on Unit 4 (Screen Time)

Lessons ① & ②

وقت الشاشة	متساو
مراهق	كمية / مقدار
خبير	مذهل / رائع
ترفيه / تسلية	مشروع
جسدي / بدني	مركز
عقلي / نفسي	بحكمة
آثار جانبية	مهندس
مدينة ذكية	زعيم / قائد
عادات ذكية	إجمالي / كلي
العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة	تقريبًا
المونوريل (القطار الأحادي)	مشتت
متطور / حديث للغاية	شخصية / هوية
مواطن ذكي	يؤثر على
مصمم	يشمل / يتضمن
إلهاء / تشتيت	يستريح
توازن / يوازن	يركز
يتصفح (يمرر الشاشة)	يتجنب
نشاط	يحد / يقلل
وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	يوصي / ينصح بـ
مهارة	يتمكن من / يدير
صداع	ينجز / يحقق
مشكلة / متاعب	يسبب / يؤدي إلى
علاوة على ذلك / بالإضافة إلى ذلك	يكذب
متوتر / مضغوط	

1. Write the word:

	related to the body
	fun activities like games or watching TV
	a person who knows a lot about something
	to keep things equal or in the right amount
	helpful for learning or work
	the time spent looking at a screen
	uses technology
	not easily distracted
	something new and advanced
	something that takes attention away

2. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
same		
useful		
important		
modern		
amazing		

3. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

-ful / -ment / -ion / -ly	
entertain	mental
use	wise
help	distract
physical	

Lessons



Lessons 1 - 2

1 Complete the following dialogue:

The teacher is explaining the side effects of too much screen time.

Teacher : Good morning, class. Today we will talk about screen time.

Sara : ① ----- ?

Teacher : It means the total time you spend using devices like phones, TVs, or computers.

Sara : Is too much screen time dangerous?

Teacher : ② -----

Sara : What are its side effects?

Teacher : ③ -----

Sara : ④ ----- ?

Teacher : Yes, it can affect sleep. Using devices late at night makes sleep difficult.

Sara : So, ⑤ -----

2 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. To ----- is to keep things equal or in the right amount.

- a. scroll b. focus c. balance d. limit

2. You can ----- down the page to read the rest of the story.

- a. rest b. scroll c. focus d. affect

3. Marwan needs to be more ----- on his schoolwork to improve his grades.

- a. useful b. distracted c. focused d. stressed

4. The modern city has many tall buildings. "-----" is an antonym of "modern".

- a. cutting-edge b. ancient c. advanced d. new

5. My uncle is a/an ----- in computer programming. He knows a lot about it.

- a. teenager b. designer c. expert d. leader

6. To get the noun from the verb "entertain", we add the suffix

a. -ment

b. -ion

c. -tion

d. -ity

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Merna (can't) swim very well because she practices every day.
2. (After) he is very rich, he lives in a small house.
3. You (should) eat so much candy. It's bad for your teeth.
4. My brother loves watching movies (because) I enjoy playing football.
5. You (can) look both ways before crossing the street. It's a safety rule.

4 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets:

1. It's a good idea to eat more fruits. (should)
2. The city is beautiful. It is very crowded. (but)
3. You are not allowed to use your phone here. (mustn't)
4. He studied hard. He failed the exam. (Even though)
5. Noha is able to speak three languages. (can)

5 Find the mistakes in the following and correct them:

1. On one hand, social media helps us stay connected. At the other hand, it can be a big distraction. (.....)
2. You shouldn't watch that new film. It's really good. (.....)
3. I'm sorry, but I can help you with this project right now. I'm too busy. (.....)
4. You must take photos inside the museum. It's forbidden. (.....)
5. I like the new teacher, because I find her classes a bit difficult. (.....)

lessons 3 & 4

ملون	مصدوم
ضار	إشعار / تنبيه
مواد كيميائية	يومية / دفتر يوميات
قمامة / نفايات	متوتر / مضغوط
هدف مشترك	نجاح
سائح	مسؤولية عالمية
مفيد / رائع	صديق للبيئة
طاقة شمسية	طريقة
طبيعة	أسمدة طبيعية
جيل	قيادة
يفحص / يتحقق	يدرك
يأمل	يتصرف
يعتقد	يلوم
يحسن	يُخضب
يقرر	تقرير
يراسل نصيًا	اتصال بالإنترنت
يخطط	كاتب
يحيط	قريب
يقلل	خطأ
يقبل	عمل شاق
يرشد	خس

1. Write the word:

	a person who guides or is in charge of a group
	being responsible for both successes and mistakes
	not harmful to nature
	caring for the Earth and future generations
	to say that someone is responsible for a mistake
	materials used to help plants grow

2. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
online		
shocked		
turn off		
stressed		
beautiful		
responsible		

3. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

-ity / -ed / -ly	
stress _____	responsibil _____
final _____	

Lessons



Lessons 3 - 4

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

global responsibility - off - purpose - up - hard work

We decided to make a change in our nearby park. We picked ① _____ all the trash that surrounded the area. It was our shared ② _____ to care for our

nature. Little by little, we saw a glorious result from our We felt a to keep our planet clean for the next generation.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You shouldn't others for your own mistakes.
 a. care b. fertilize c. realize d. blame
2. I will a plan to improve my screen time habits.
 a. make b. do c. dry d. care
3. A/ An is a person who guides or is in charge of a group.
 a. leader b. expert c. engineer d. tourist
4. The antonym of "stressed" is
 a. nervous b. anxious c. relaxed d. upset
5. We should use products to protect our planet.
 a. harmful b. chemical c. global d. eco-friendly
6. To change the adjective "responsible" for a noun, we add the suffix
 a. -ment b. -ion c. -ity d. -ive
7. Keep your phone during meals to talk to your family.
 a. off b. out c. away d. up
8. "....." are materials we used to help plants grow.
 a. Natural fertilizers b. Leadership
 c. Global responsibility d. Harmful chemicals

Lessons 5 & 6

نادرًا	مُحدد
ثقافة	بالضبط
حديثًا	مؤقت (عداد للوقت)
تاريخ	مُزعج
يشتهر	مشهور
يتبع	ناجح
يُخمن	تكنولوجي
يطور	هدف
	المتحف المصري الكبير

1. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
careful		
rarely		

2. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

-ful / -ical	
success	technolog

Lessons Lessons 5 - 6

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

boring - technology - annoying - connected - successful

The Grand Egyptian Museum is very famous. It is ① to old Egyptian culture and history. Recently, I visited it. It has amazing ② which

helps you learn. It is not ③ at all. I didn't guess it would be so interesting. It was a ④ trip where I learned exactly how people lived long ago.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I a timer for the cake so it wouldn't burn in the oven.
 a. follow b. get c. set d. achieve
2. Laila needs to her homework done before she goes out.
 a. give b. make c. get d. do
3. With hard work and focus, you can your goals.
 a. do b. achieve c. make d. bake
4. My grandpa is working to a new eco-friendly fertilizer.
 a. balance b. guess c. distract d. develop
5. I try to study in a quiet room so nothing can me.
 a. distract b. help c. win d. lose
6. This restaurant is for its delicious pizza.
 a. annoying b. famous c. funny d. careful
7. The antonym of "careful" is
 a. careless b. useful c. cautious d. helpful
8. To form the adjective from the noun "technology", we add the suffix
 a. -ive b. -ful c. -ical d. -ed

Test on Unit 4

1 Complete the following dialogue:

A new student, Sara, is asking her classmate, Ali, about the rules at their school.

Sara : Hi Ali. Can you tell me about the school rules?

Ali : ① We must wear a uniform every day.

Sara : ②?

Ali : Oh, you mustn't use your phone in class. It's strictly forbidden.

Sara : I see. What about eating in class?

Ali : ③ You can only eat in the cafeteria.

Sara : Okay. ④?

Ali : No, you can't wear hats inside the building. You must take them off.

Sara : ⑤ Ali,

Ali : No problem! If you have any more questions, you can always ask me.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

cutting - edge - habits - famous - leader - projects

Our company is becoming smart. The manager who is a great ① is working with a team of engineers to create a ② new system. They are also talking to workers about developing smart ③ to use technology wisely. They want to make sure everyone benefits from these ④

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

The people of a small village had a shared purpose: to bring light to their homes. An engineer proposed a cutting-edge solution—solar energy. This eco-friendly method would not harm their beautiful nature.

The village leader didn't blame anyone for past mistakes. Instead, he encouraged everyone to behave responsibly. They worked together with hard work and hope. Little by little, they installed the solar panels.

The success of the project was amazing. The village was now connected to a clean power source. This achievement was a lesson in global responsibility.

They showed that caring for the Earth is a duty we all must accept for future generations.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The main idea of the passage is
 a. using solar energy in a village b. a leader blaming villagers
 c. studying village nature d. the cost of solar panels
- The shared purpose of the people in the village is to
 a. harm the beautiful nature b. bring light to their homes
 c. bring water to their homes d. care for the Earth

B. Answer the following questions:

- What was the cutting-edge solution proposed by the engineer?

- How did the people in the village behave?

- Summarize what the village did and what they achieved.

- What might the village decide to do next after the success of their solar project?



Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

- The word means being responsible for both successes and mistakes.
 a. Natural fertilizers b. Leadership
 c. Global responsibility d. Harmful chemicals
- "....." is something new and advanced.
 a. Old b. Ancient c. Modern d. Traditional
- He turned off his phone to avoid any
 a. distractions b. entertainment c. habits d. limits
- Mariam success through determination and practice.
 a. blamed b. behaved c. achieved d. charged
- The word "shocked" is similar in meaning to
 a. unsurprised b. calm c. relaxed d. surprised
- To get the adverb from the word "wise", we add the suffix
 a. -ly b. -ful c. -ness d. -ive

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Salma wants to buy new clothes, (also) she has no money.
2. I (can) lift this heavy box. It's too heavy for me.
3. You (should) watch too much TV. It's not good for your eyes.
4. (Because) I had an umbrella, I got wet in the rain.
5. You (shouldn't) have a ticket to enter the cinema.

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

“Screen time habits”

This image shows a single sheet of white paper with horizontal dashed lines, typical of primary-ruled notebook paper. The lines are evenly spaced and run across the width of the page. There is no handwriting or other markings on the paper.

Review on Unit 5 (Design Thinking)

Lessons ① & ②

يحدّد	حلّال المشكلات
يعرّف	الجدول الزمني / مواعيد
يخمن	أنيق / من الطراز الحديث
يشارك / يتضمّن	نماذج أولية
نموذج	الإبداع
غريب جدًا / غير معتاد	حلّول
يسمّي	راحة
يُنشئ	علاقة
يتفاعل	وجهات نظر / آراء
يُنظّم	توليد الأفكار
يحلّ	رغبة
يقدر	عملي
يذكر	فضول
يختبر	وزن
يتحسن	أمان
يجري حوار	قدرة
يقوم بعملية عصف ذهني	زّي
	يحكم

1. Write the word:

	brainstorming or coming up with ideas
	ability to make new ideas.
	a way of looking at something.
	a simple model of a design.
	a list of planned activities.
	a way to solve a problem.
	effective or suitable
	a process of solving complex problems
	very unusual

2. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
possible		
solution		
hard		
different		
seful		
stylish		
practical		
fancy		

3. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

im- / proto- / -er	
type	design
possible	

Lessons



Lessons 1 - 2

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A good leader is a great problem who can fix difficult situations.
 a. maker b. designer c. solver d. saver
2. Her new dress is very It looks great on her.
 a. stylish b. boring c. active d. dirty
3. The company made a/an of the new phone to test it out.
 a. thinker b. solution c. example d. prototype
4. From my of view, the red car looks faster than the blue one.
 a. opinion b. point c. challenge d. solution
5. My brother is so ; he can build amazing things with small blocks.
 a. creative b. boring c. stupid d. quick
6. Art classes help children develop their
 a. noise b. speed c. creativity d. hunger
7. To find the best for the problem, they asked the math teacher for help.
 a. creativity b. solution c. prototype d. mistake
8. thinking helps people create better products for others.
 a. Paint b. Build c. Draw d. Design
9. The new park has many flowers. You must visit it.
 a. narrative b. creative c. attractive d. active
10. The team held a/an meeting to think of new ideas for the project.
 a. ideation b. solution c. pollution d. situation

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

unusual - practical - fashionable - First - comfort - Finally

My friends and I want to start a new project. ①, we need to brainstorm ideas for a new product. We need a ② plan. The product should be ③ and offer great ④ To stay on track, we will make a work plan. It's important to have a good working relationship.

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. (Finally), we went to the playground. Then, we left for the house.
2. Put on your socks and shoes, and (first), get dressed for school.
3. Put on your coat, then (went) outside to play.
4. The alarm clock rang. (Before), I woke up.
5. First, (washed) your hands. Then you can have a cookie.
6. Open your book, then (wrote) your name on the first page.
7. Do your homework, then brush your teeth, and (first) go to bed.
8. Please, (closed) the door behind you.
9. Hey! (Doesn't) eat the food on the table.
10. First, we went to the park. (than) we visited the museum. Finally, we went home..

Lessons 3 & 4

الزراعة	نمو
صديق\صاحب	يدرك
يترك / يستقيل	تحدُّ
تصميم	يتظاهر
مخلص / مكرس	الوافدون الجدد
اشخاص حقيقيين	مثالي
يثق	مرتبك
مشاعر حقيقية	حدود
لافتات	متوتر
صادق	فن
لوحات / رسومات	متحمس
يلاحظ	قائد
فن / رسم	واثق
يلهم	يكشف
حلول	فضولي
يسقي	يقرر

1. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
relaxed		
real		
impact		
strengths		
dedicated		
quit		

2. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

-ful / -y / -ly / -th	
grow _____	care _____
hones _____	close _____

Lessons **Lessons 3 - 4**

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Sara and Omar are talking about their hobbies and spare time.

Sara : Hi Omar, what do you usually do after school?

Omar : I usually play football. It's my favorite hobby.

Sara : ① _____ ?

Omar : I play football three times a week with my friends.

Sara : That sounds fun. ② _____

Omar : ③ _____ ?

Sara : I draw in the evenings. It helps me relax.

Omar : That's nice. ④ _____

Sara : Yes, my family likes my drawings a lot.

Omar : I think you should keep going. ⑤ _____

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My father works in _____, growing fruits and vegetables on his farm.

- a. industry b. technology c. business d. agriculture

2. My friend was sad and wanted to _____ the game, but I encouraged him to keep going.

- a. win b. quit c. cheer d. play

3. She is a/an _____ teacher who works very hard with students.

- a. dedicated b. protected
c. debated d. disappointed

4. My friend Ali is so loyal; I can him to always help me if I have a problem.
 a. believe b. doubt c. trust d. ignore
5. My biggest is that I am not very good at running fast.
 a. strength b. weakness c. hobby d. skill
6. Her biggest is her ability to learn new things quickly.
 a. weakness b. problem c. fear d. strength
7. He spends his money so he can save for the future.
 a. quickly b. slowly c. wisely d. foolishly
8. You should be about your mistakes so you can learn from them.
 a. honest b. careless c. lazy d. crazy
9. My older brother is my gym; we go to the gym together every day.
 a. enemy b. astronaut c. tradition d. buddy
10. There are to how much time I spend on social media.
 a. reasons b. limits c. types d. boxes

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

grew - impact - growth - confused - grow - support

Newcomers in a school often feel ① because everything is new. The way teachers and classmates welcome them can have a big ② A kind word is like water from a gardener that helps plants ③ Just as plants need care for people also need ④ to feel safe and strong.

Lessons 5 & 6

نموذج	عملي
يحسن	عملية (إنتاج خطوات)
مفيد	مثالي
يختبر	نموذج أولي
ملون	يفهم
يبتكر	التفكير الابتكاري
مخطط للتذكير	يفكر و يجادل أفكار تجريبية
يطبع	يبدو منطقياً
مكتب	مستخدم
يغير	ملاحظات
تغذية راجعة	مبدع
يصلح	بسيط

1. Write the word:

	a series of steps or actions taken to achieve something.
	as good as possible; ideal.
	logically correct; easy to understand.
	to invent or think of an idea or plan.

2. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
simple		
colorful		
perfect		
fix		

3. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

-ly / -ing / -ive / -ful	
draw _____	creat _____
use _____	exact _____

Lessons



Lessons 5 - 6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Baking a cake is a long _____ that takes several steps.
a. process b. result c. product d. plan
- Your new idea does not _____ sense to me. Can you explain it again?
a. do b. get c. make d. have
- A person who is _____ can think of many new and original ideas.
a. lazy b. creative c. heavy d. weak
- The cake was _____; it tasted great and looked beautiful.
a. ugly b. wrong c. bad d. perfect
- In class, the teacher taught us _____ thinking to solve problems in new ways.
a. drawing b. guessing c. design d. asking
- Let's all sit down and _____ ideas for our class project.
a. brainstorm b. forget c. stop d. hide
- The engineer made a _____ of the new car before building the real one.
a. song b. photo c. story d. prototype
- We need to _____ up with a good plan for the school trip.
a. fall b. come c. fight d. run
- Gifts and presents should be _____ things people can use every day.
a. practical b. expensive c. heavy d. colorful
- Please explain the lesson again so someone can _____ it better.
a. copy b. forget c. understand d. miss

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Design thinking is a way of solving problems. It's a special way of thinking that helps people create new and useful ideas. The main goal is to understand what people need and then find a good solution.

This process has five main steps. First, you need to understand the problem from another person's point of view. You ask questions to find out what they really need. Then, you think of many ideas, a process called ideation or brainstorming. Next, you create a simple version of your idea, called a prototype. You test this prototype to see if it works. Finally, you use the feedback to make your idea better. This simple process helps people become better problem-solvers and designers.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What is the main goal of design thinking?

- a. To sell a new product.
- b. To understand people's needs and find solutions.
- c. To build a new house.
- d. To make a lot of money.

2. What is a "prototype"?

- a. A final product ready to sell.
- b. A very difficult problem.
- c. A simple version of an idea to test it.
- d. A list of new ideas

B. Answer the following questions:

3. In your own words, what is the most important part of design thinking?

4. Can you think of a problem you have had that you could solve using this process?

5. Why is it important to understand a problem from another person's point of view?

6. Why is it a good idea to create a simple prototype before making a final product?

3 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN words on the following

"The time you spend online"

Test on Unit 5

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Omar and Salma are talking about the importance of time management

Omar : I have too much homework, and I don't know how to manage my time.

Salma : ①.....?

Omar : No, I don't. I just start working without a plan.

Salma : You should make a simple schedule.

Omar : ②.....

Salma : No. It's easy. Write your tasks in order, then do them step by step.

Omar : That makes sense. But sometimes I get distracted by my phone.

Salma : ③.....?

Omar : I check social media too much.

Salma : You should keep your phone away when studying.

Omar : ④.....

Salma : Yes, and you can also take short breaks to rest.

Omar : ⑤.....

Salma : You're welcome. Have a nice day.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

to - creative - with - creative - design - technique

Brainstorming and ideation are key to solving problems. This ①..... is about thinking of many different ideas, big and small, without judging them. It helps you be ②..... By sharing thoughts freely in a group, you can come up ③..... a better ④..... that you might not have found alone.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Today, many people spend hours every day on social media. They use it to chat with friends, share photos, and watch videos. While social media can be

fun and helpful, too much use can cause problems. Spending many hours online may make people less active, less focused on school or work, and more tired. Some even feel stressed when they see too many posts or try to get "likes."

The overuse of social media can also affect health. People may forget to exercise, eat, or sleep on time. They may spend less time with family and friends in real life. To stay healthy, it is important to set limits. Doing other activities like reading, sports, or walking outside can help balance life. Using social media wisely means enjoying it without letting it control us.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What is the main idea of the text?
 - a. Social media is always bad.
 - b. Social media can be useful if used wisely.
 - c. Social media should be banned.
 - d. Social media is only for children.
2. What may happen if people spend too much time online?
 - a. They become more active.
 - b. They feel less tired.
 - c. They forget to sleep or exercise.
 - d. They focus better

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why do many people enjoy social media?

4. What problems can too much use cause?

5. How can social media affect health?

6. What activities can help balance between social media and other activities?

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- means brainstorming or coming up with ideas.
a. Relation b. Ideation
c. Determination d. Situation
- To get the adjective from the verb "create", we add the suffix
a. ion b. able c. ness d. ive
- This bag is small but very It is easy to use every day.
a. practical b. funny c. hungry d. dangerous
- To be is to be attractive in a fashionable way.
a. creative b. crazy c. stylish d. active
- Farmers work in to grow food, fruit, and vegetables
a. medicine b. electronics c. agriculture d. industry
- Actually, I my friends and always ask them for advice.
a. trust b. grow c. copy d. blame

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. First, _____ (mixing) the flour and eggs, then add the milk.
2. Please, _____ (Went) to the store and get some milk.
3. _____ (Not open) the door, it's very cold outside.
4. First, read the question, _____ (than) write the answer.
5. Listen to the teacher and _____ (follows) the instructions.

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN words on the following

" People respect the honest"

A series of horizontal lines for handwriting practice, consisting of a solid top line, a dashed midline, and a solid bottom line. There are four such sets of lines stacked vertically.

R

Review on Unit 6

Why do We Like Stories?

Lessons ① & ②

عاطفي	يحفز / يثير
درس / رسالة - اخلاقي	عقليا / ذهنيا
متعدد / متنوع	بامانة / بصدق
وجهة نظر	غير عادل
التعاطف	توصيات
بشكل ناقد	مناظرة
واع / مدرك	يعلق بالذهن / يظل في الذاكرة
صراع / خلاف	

1. Write the word:

	different kinds or types; many and not the same.
	(be) related to what is right or wrong in behavior.
	ways of thinking about something.
	the ability to understand and share someone else's feelings.
	knowing or noticing something.
	to start or cause something to happen.
	in a careful and thoughtful way; not just accepting things as they are.
	in an honest way / truly
	not right or fair. / not treating people equally.
	to remain in someone's memory.
	an argument or a discussion expressing different opinions.
	official suggestions about the best thing to do.

2. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
moral		
various		
spark		
honestly		
unfair		
aware		
memorize		

3. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

-able / -ment / dis- / -ly / -ation / -al	
_____ honest	enjoy _____
emotion _____	argu _____
critical _____	imagin _____

Lessons



Lessons 1 - 2

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Funny stories can _____ children's imagination and make them think creatively.

- a. end b. spark c. hide d. solve

2. The _____ of "The Boy Who Cried Wolf" is about honesty.

- a. beginning b. character c. picture d. moral

3. The sad ending of the story was so _____ that it made the readers cry.

- a. emotional b. funny c. happy d. exciting

4. There was a _____ between the two boys, but they solved it.

- a. garden b. park c. conflict d. holiday

5. It was unfair that I had to pay more money than others. The opposite of "unfair" is
 a. easy b. difficult c. clever d. fair
6. You have the of soup or salad. Which one would you like to have?
 a. decision b. choice c. problem d. mistake
7. To achieve your goals, you must be strong enough to challenges and not give up.
 a. run b. hide c. give d. face
8. They said they Paris the year before.
 a. had visited b. visit c. are visiting d. will visit
9. She she was happy to see me again.
 a. told b. say c. said d. tell
10. She told me that I tired and that I had to see a doctor.
 a. look b. looked c. will look d. looking

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. She said she (is) baking cookies at that time.
2. They said they (are) at the park an hour before.
3. Ahmed said he (go) to the public library the next day.
4. She told her friend she (can) ride a bicycle when she was five.
5. Mom noted she (has watered) the plants two hours before.
6. My friend said that she (is having) her dinner then.
7. My brother (said) me that his new school has a big library.
8. The coach said that the team (is practicing) every day the week before.
9. Ali said that he (has watched) that movie the previous month.
10. My sister said that she (finishes) her big project the next day.

Lessons 3 & 4

قصص خيالية	صراع
قصص واقعية	الحل
قصص شعبية تقليدية	طموح
قصص مغامرات	علم/تصميم
قصص فكاهية	رمز
تاريخي	شجاعة
خرافة/أسطورة	قوة
إطار (مكان وزمان القصة)	أمين/شريف
الشخصيات	خاص

1. Write the word:

	where and when the story happens.
	people or animals in a story.
	the problem in the story.
	how the problem ends.
	stories made up with imaginary characters.
	true stories based on real events and characters.
	traditional stories with lessons.
	exciting journeys and brave characters.
	funny stories full of humor.
	based on real events from the past.
	Short tales that teach a moral often with talking animals.
	a strong desire to achieve something big
	valuable in a different way
	a sign of something.
	bravery to do something new or scary

2. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
special		
determination		
folk		
imaginary		

3. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

-er / -ship / -th	
lead _____	leader _____
grow _____	

Lessons

Lessons 3 - 4
1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I like to read to escape to other worlds and meet people who don't exist in real life.

- a. textbooks b. nonfiction c. fiction d. newspapers

2. The story of the dog and the bone is a that teaches us a moral lesson at the end.

- a. fable b. recipe c. report d. letter

3. We went on a real today when we got lost in the forest.

- a. character b. homework c. ambition d. adventure

4. The of the play was a dark street in a big city at night.

- a. table b. setting c. window d. beak

5. The movie had funny like a talking robot and a dancing cat.

- a. characters b. snacks c. tickets d. lights

6. We found a to the puzzle by working together.

- a. question b. mistake c. solution d. mess

7. His great was to climb Mount Everest one day.

- a. solution b. ambition c. character d. memory

8. She showed great when she spoke in front of the whole school.

- a. dream b. sleep c. fear d. courage

9. The man lifted a very heavy rock to show his amazing

- a. speed b. colour c. strength d. focus

10. The eagle's powerful can tear meat into small pieces for its babies.

- a. beak b. eye c. tail d. feather

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Ali and Omar are talking about reading

Ali : Hi Omar! What are you reading today?

Omar : Hi! ① about a brave boy.

Ali : ②?

Omar : Yes, I think stories help us a lot. They can shape the way we think.

Ali : ③?

Omar : They show us different choices, and we learn from them.

Ali : Can they also help us solve problems?

Omar : Of course! Through them, we learn ④

Ali : ⑤ Stories also help us understand other points of view.

Lessons 5 & 6

وجهة نظر	هادئ
صراع	طماع
مجرى مائي/جدول	واعي/مدرك
جسر/كوبري	بشكل نقدي
عظمة	يرد/يستجيب
فم	ينبح
متعدد/مختلف	

1. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
tasty		
conflict		
aware		
various		
respond		
calm		
greedy		

Lessons



Lessons 5 - 6

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The old stone connected the two sides of the river, making it easy for us to cross.
 a. road b. tunnel c. bridge d. path
2. The teacher asked us to share our points of about the story.
 a. view b. shadow c. sight d. character
3. The boy tried to take all the toys for himself, leaving none for his sisters.
 a. generous b. kind c. shy d. greedy
4. A clear of water ran through the small village.
 a. bridge b. stream c. mountain d. bark
5. When the teacher asked a question, Sara was the first to
 a. respond b. inspire c. wag d. bridge
6. The dog began to loudly when he saw a stranger.
 a. sing b. whisper c. bark d. cry
7. I could see my own on the ground behind me in the morning sun.
 a. light b. shadow c. path d. stream
8. The soup was so that I ate the whole bowl in a minute.
 a. tasteless b. hard c. sour d. tasty
9. The happy puppy began to his tail excitedly when he saw his owner.
 a. bark b. jump c. wag d. hide
10. We had to turns playing the new video game so everyone could have a chance.
 a. take b. play c. share d. run

conflict - for - aware - pass - take - to

There are various things we can do to stay calm when we feel stressed. First, it's important to be ❶ _____ of what is causing the ❷ _____. Then, we can find a solution related ❸ _____ the problem. If we are in a group, we can ❹ _____ the turn to another person and take a moment to breathe.

"The boy cried wolf "

[illegible]

Test on Unit 6

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ali and Omar are talking about reading

Ali : Hi Omar, do you like reading?

Omar : ① Reading is very important.

Ali : ② ?

Omar : Because it helps us learn new things and new words.

Ali : ③

Omar : Yes, they can show us what is right and wrong.

Ali : ④ ?

Omar : Of course! Reading makes us smarter, calmer, and gives us ideas.

Ali : ⑤

2 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

fiction - at - sparking - imaginary - on - speaking

Fiction is a type of story that is made up, not based ① real events. When you read ②, you enter an ③ world with made-up characters and settings. These stories are great for ④ your imagination. They can be full of humor, adventure, and often teach you a moral or a life lesson in a fun way.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Have you ever watched ants? They are small, but they can teach us many lessons. Ants work together as a team. If one ant finds food, it tells the others. Soon, many ants carry the food back to their home. They can carry things much bigger than their own bodies. Ants are also very organized. They walk in a line and follow a clear path. If something blocks their way, they do not give up. They find another path and keep moving. From ants, we can learn about teamwork, hard work, and never giving up. Next time you see ants, watch closely. They may be tiny, but their actions are big. Ants show us that even small creatures can make a big difference in the world.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What lesson can we learn from ants?
 - a. To be lazy
 - b. To work together
 - c. To give up quickly
 - d. To walk alone
2. What do ants do if something blocks their path?
 - a. Stop forever
 - b. Fight the block
 - c. Find another way
 - d. Sleep

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why do ants walk in a line?

4. How do ants show teamwork?

5. What does the story say about small creatures?

6. In your opinion, what is the most important lesson we can learn from ants?

4 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. ----- stories are stories that are based on real events from the past.
 - a. Adventure
 - b. Historical
 - c. Comic
 - d. Fictional
2. You must be aware of the knife. The antonym of the word "aware" is -----
 - a. unclear
 - b. unlocked
 - c. unhappy
 - d. unaware
3. We add the suffix "-----" to the word "emotion" to change it into an adjective.
 - a. al
 - b. ion
 - c. ly
 - d. ness
4. The ----- of a story is where and when it happens.
 - a. character
 - b. solution
 - c. setting
 - d. conflict
5. I have prepared a/an ----- place in our garden for reading.
 - a. general
 - b. interested
 - c. boring
 - d. special
6. A white dove is often used as a/an ----- of peace.
 - a. bird
 - b. symbol
 - c. insect
 - d. colour

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. She told (I) that she was sleeping at that time.
2. He said that they (finish) repairing the drone the night before.
3. She said that she (has written) a new short story the month before.
4. He says that he (be) an engineer and works in a factory.
5. He told us that he was studying (now)

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A review of comic story you have read"

adjective

to

General Tests on the First Term

امتحانات عامة على الفصل الدراسي الأول

Test 1

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Sama and Reem are talking about stories.

Sama : How do you spend your free time?

Reem : I like reading stories.

Sama : ①

Reem : I like reading English ones.

Sama : ②

Reem : Because I want to improve my English.

Sama : What's your favourite story?

Reem : ③

Sama : Is it very exciting?

Reem : ④

Sama : Can I borrow it, please?

Reem : ⑤

2 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

machine - system - advanced - tasks - invent - be invented

Many people think robots and AI are the same, but they are different. A robot is a ① that can move and do ② Some robots are simple, like a machine in a factory. Others are more ③, like robot dogs. More robots will ④ in the future.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

If someone asked you to name a famous trip to the moon, you would probably say the Apollo 11 trip in 1969. But did you know that when Apollo 17 went there in 1972, there had been five more trips to the moon? There have been no trips since 1972. We all know Neil Armstrong was the first person to walk on the

moon, but who was the last person? He was Eugene Cernan. He was on a 12-day trip on Apollo 17, which brought the largest moon rock to Earth! When Neil Armstrong walked on the moon, he said it was "one small step for a man, but one giant leap for mankind." When Eugene Cernan left the moon, he said, "We shall return with peace and hope." So why were trips to the moon stopped? It was too expensive. But today, as technology improves, there are plans to send spacecraft to the moon again.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What does the underlined word "name" mean?
 a. speak b. mention c. order d. travel
2. Trips to the moon stopped because they
 a. were too expensive b. weren't useful
 c. cost a lot of damage b. brought a lot of damage

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the passage?

4. What did Eugene Cernan do during his trip?

5. When was the first trip to the moon?

6. Who was the first person to walk on the moon?

4 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. AI will many new chances for everyone.
 a. harm b. create c. damage d. break
2. Her new outfit was very and comfortable.
 a. stylish b. bad c. torn d. sad
3. A/An means a series of steps or actions taken to achieve something.
 a. story b. chart c. operation d. process
4. To get the opposite of "practical" we add the prefix
 a. dis- b. in- c. ir- d. im-

5. To means to build a relationship again.
 a. reread b. unconnect c. rewrite d. reconnect
6. time means the total time a person spends looking at screens.
 a. Bed b. Screen c. Study d. Free

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If I (went), I would have met her.
2. I (live) in Zagazig for 10 years. Now I live in Cairo.
3. Never (smoking)! It's harmful.
4. He (told) that he played tennis.
5. Driverless cars will (use) everywhere.

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"Communication"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 2

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Jana and Malak are talking about pet animals.

Jana : Hi! Do you like pet animals?

Malak : ①

Jana : What pet would you like to have?

Malak : ②

Jana : ③?

Malak : I will call it Pussy.

Jana : Can you look after it well?

Malak : ④

Jana : ⑤?

Malak : With me in my bedroom.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

courage - misunderstanding - talked - courageous - had talked - feelings

Staying close to others needs good communication and a strong connection.

If we ① face to face, we could avoid ② because we would have been honest about our ③ It takes ④ to say sorry or share true feelings.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

When firefighters turn up to put out a fire, traditionally people expect them to be men. However, underneath the protective clothing, helmet and suit, there are more and more women. One such woman is Kath Webb, who joined the fire service in 2008 and is now in charge of a team of firefighters at her local station. When she became Crew Manager following a promotion, she was the first female to do so in the whole of her region.

One reason for the increase in female firefighters is a change in the job requirements. There is more emphasis on communication skills nowadays, with

fire officers spending a large part of their day educating the community about fire prevention. "We visit residents and explain how to prevent fires in the first place," says Kath, "and this is something women excel at."

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When firefighters turn up, traditionally people expect them to be
 a. women b. kids c. men d. boys
2. Kath Webb joined the fire service in
 a. 2008 b. 2006 c. 2007 d. 2009

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the passage?

4. What do women excel at?

5. What does the underlined word "educating" mean?

6. Summarize the second paragraph.

4 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. I have three: two brothers and a sister.
 a. parents b. cousins c. siblings d. piblings
2. To means to see or become aware of something.
 a. notice b. sleep c. ignore d. face
3. We need to check the train before we leave.
 a. Plan b. Schedule c. Map d. Tree
4. The opposite of the word "trust" is
 a. faith b. belief c. hope d. doubt
5. To change the word "close" into an adverb we add the suffix
 a. -ly b. -ed c. -ing d. -est
6. A is a sign of something.
 a. plane b. train c. symbol d. street

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Sara said that she would visit her grandfather (tomorrow).
2. The new library (build) next year.
3. If she had studied harder, she (pass) the exam.
4. Mesk (punish) since she was late.
5. I have lived here (for) 2010.



6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"The values you stand for"

Test 3

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Amir and Hany are talking about where to spend their holiday.

Amir : Do you have any plans for the weekend?

Hany : ①

Amir : I have a good idea. ②

Hany : ③?

Amir : We can enjoy the beautiful sea view of the Alexandria Sea.

Hany : ④?

Amir : We can meet at your home.

Hany : How can we go there?

Amir : ⑤

2 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

too - study - journal - notifications - also - information

This week, I made a new rule for social media. I'll only use my phone for one hour after school. I will turn off social media ① and put my phone away when I ② Before bedtime, I will read a book or write in my ③! I ④ plan to spend more time outside and meet my friends in person.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

The ancient Egyptians were clever people. They built pyramids and temples. They treated patients and gave them medicine. They discovered the source of the Nile. They built dams, as well.

Nowadays, the Egyptians practise modern sciences. They develop the country in different fields. They work in deserts and turn them into green land. They have found out ways of fighting diseases. Egyptian scientists have become famous all over the world, so many governments encourage them to work more and more.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- You can visit if you want to know about the ancient Egyptians.
a. lands b. temples c. the Nile d. diseases
- The Egyptian scientists are by many governments.
a. encouraged b. discovered c. treated d. punished

B. Answer the following questions:

- What is the main idea of the text?
.....

- How were the ancient Egyptians good builders?
.....

- What does the underlined word "them" refer to?
.....

- Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.
.....

4 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

- The word means the point where something stops or cannot go further.
a. advanced b. limits c. tasks d. feelings
- The word refers to a person who knows a lot about something.
a. expert b. expire c. experience d. expand
- To form the adverb of the word "mental" we add
a. -ment b. -ly c. -ness d. -ful
- The opposite of the word "quit" is
a. noisy b. stop c. prevent d. continue
- People trust you. The word "trust" here is a/an
a. noun b. verb c. adjective d. adverb
- The synonym of "practical" is
a. impractical b. unsuited c. workable d. theoretical

5 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets:

1. I didn't see your friend Sarah, so I didn't give her the book.

(If)

2. The boy has made many mistakes.

(Many)

3. Have you visited Aswan before?

(been)

4. Ola said "I am doing my homework now."

(that)

5. Don't waste your time playing online.

(Never)

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"How to Balance Technology and life"

Test 4

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Samira and Salma are talking about a problem in the playground.

Samira : Oh! Our playground is full of rubbish, Salma.

Salma : Yes. It's too bad and dull.

Samira : What can we do, Salma?

Salma : ①

Samira : ②?

Salma : Yes, we can ask them to help. We need everyone's help.

Samira : ③?

Salma : ④ We 'll need paintbrushes and seeds.

Samira : This will be our great project.

Salma : ⑤

2 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

benefits - digital - scroll - challenges - scrolling - normal

Today's teenagers are growing up in a world controlled by screens and
 ① technology. While this modern technology offers many
 ②, it also presents significant ③ Students spend
 hours ④ through social media.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Hurghada is the beautiful city in Egypt. It is on the Red Sea. Many tourists visit Hurghada every year. The weather is warm and sunny. People love swimming and diving in the sea. There are many colourful fish.

There are also big hotels and nice restaurants. Visitors can eat fresh seafood and enjoy the sea. Some people go on boat trips to see dolphins. Others like riding camels in the desert.

At night, Hurghada is exciting. There are many shops, cafés, and music shows. People can buy souvenirs for their families. Hurghada is a great place for a holiday. It is fun and relaxing especially at night.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea of the text is about
 a. Alexandria b. Cairo c. Hurghada d. Luxor
2. Hurghada is on the
 a. Nile b. Red Sea c. Dead Sea d. Black Sea

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What activities can tourists do in Hurghada?

4. Where do tourists ride camels?

5. Summarize the third paragraph in one sentence.

6. What do you think will happen if Hurghada has more tourists?

4 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. Students who show great can overcome difficult challenges.
 a. dishonesty b. determination c. irresponsibility d. speed
2. Young people should be of how technology is important.
 a. lazy b. fool c. aware d. careless
3. The ability to understand and share someone else's feelings is defined as
 a. poverty b. empathy c. cruelty d. sadness
4. The prefix "dis-" in "disappointed" means "....."
 a. again b. very c. together d. not
5. She felt when she couldn't understand the advanced mathematics.
 a. curious b. confused c. creative d. confident
6. To make the word "color" into an adjective we add the suffix
 a. -ly b. -er c. -ful d. -ing

Test 5

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Shahd is asking her father some questions

Shahd : Hello! Dad. Can I ask you some questions?

Dad : ①

Shahd : How long have you worked at the bank?

Dad : ②

Shahd : Do you like working there?

Dad : ③

Shahd : ④

Dad : We have lived in Cairo since you were a child.

Shahd : ⑤

Dad : No. I want you to be a doctor.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

stop - However - continue - but - stress - confidence

Many teachers are in danger. Many teachers believe that AI tools can support students ① and reduce ② When students receive feedback, they feel more motivated to ③ learning. ④, some parents worry that technology might replace human connection in education.

3 Read the following text then answer the questions:

Children have helped adults with their daily jobs for hundreds of years. For example, children help parents who are farmers on their farm. They often feed the family's animals or pick vegetables from the fields. Many children have never used tap water. They have walked to a well to get water every day since they were quite small. If a fisherman has a son, his son will probably also go out on his fishing boat.

It is hard for these families to survive without their children's help. When they grow up, they have already learnt important skills that they need in everyday life like teamwork skills. Moreover, taking tasks teaches them to take on responsibility. It can actually create special moments between children and adults.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea of the passage is

a. picking vegetables

b. having a big family

c. being helpful

d. working on farms

2. The underlined word "survive" means to

a. die

d. quit

c. disappear

d. live

B. Answer the following questions

3. What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to?

4. How can children help on their parents' farms.

5. Do you help around at home? How?

6. What do children learn from adults?

4 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. Too much _____ time can affect sleep and mood.
a. bed b. screen c. free d. spare
2. Young People are the _____ of Egypt.
a. past b. now c. present d. future
3. The opposite of the word "modern" is - _____.
a. new b. recent c. old d. bad
4. To form an adjective from the word "meaning" we add _____.
a. -ful b. -er c. -ly d. -ment
5. To _____ means to share thoughts, feelings, or ideas.
a. sleep b. communicate c. collect d. look
6. Muhammed and Mesk are _____.
a. siblings b. sisters c. brothers d. birds

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Have you finished your sandwich _____ (just)? You are too fast!
2. The school _____ (build) since 2005.
3. _____ (But) he is rich, he isn't happy.
4. Don't _____ (is) afraid of cats. They're cute.
5. She _____ (say) that she loved reading stories.

6 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"The importance of communication"

Test 6

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Mona is talking to Mr. Ahmed about a problem.

Mona : Excuse me, can I ask you some questions?

Mr. Ahmed : Certainly ①

Mona : I want to help people who don't have enough food.

Mr. Ahmed : ②

Mona : ③

Mr. Ahmed : You can use posters so people will donate.

Mona : What else can I do?

Mr. Ahmed : ④

Mona : Can you help me?

Mr. Ahmed : ⑤

2 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

When - quickly - shaping - While - wonders - wanders

Egypt is a country where the past meets the future. ① it is famous for the pyramids, it is now making new ② It's changing ③ with the help of modern technology. Young Egyptians are ④ the future through technology and social media.

3 Read the following text then answer the questions:

There was a lorry carrying a lion to the zoo but it escaped, so all people were frightened e.g. the boys who were playing with a ball, ran to their houses. At the same time, there was a young lady watering the plants but she wasn't frightened and gave it some water while the butcher was terrified and left his shop. The two women stopped shopping and went back home to be near their children. At once, the policeman used his radio to ask for help. Meanwhile, the photographer who was watching the lion, climbed a tree and took a picture. After a while, the police came and caught the lion.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the
 a. lorry b. tree c. lion d. line
- The lion was caught by the
 a. butcher b. young lady c. baker d. police

B. Answer the following questions

- What is the main idea of the text?

- Why did the two women stop shopping?

- What did the photographer do on seeing the lion?

- What was carrying the lion when it escaped?

4 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

- The suffix "-ful" in "helpful" means "".
 a. without b. full of c. not d. together
- The opposite of "fair" is "".
 a. confident b. honest c. practical d. unfair
- The story his interest in studying history.
 a. sparked b. called c. prevented d. stopped
- Young people are the of Egypt.
 a. past b. yesterday c. future d. today
- The synonym of the word "stressed" is
 a. worried b. happy c. calm d. relaxed
- A is a person who guides or is in charge of a group.
 a. runner b. killer c. leader d. rider

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Nader will (traveled) to London next week.
2. If I had done my homework, the teacher (not be) angry
3. The museum (been visited) by many tourists.
4. This project will (be finish) next Friday.
5. He said that he (play) tennis then.

6 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"AI benefits"

Test 7

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Tamer is talking to Khaled.

Tamer : Where're you going, Khaled?

Khaled : ①

Tamer : Are you traveling somewhere?

Khaled : ②

Tamer : Where is your brother coming from?

Khaled : ③

Tamer : ④ ?

Khaled : The train arrives at 6 o'clock.

Tamer : Can I come with you?

Khaled : ⑤

2 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

weakness - self-discovery - unique - stressed - strength - calm

Every should improve themselves every day. Sometimes, I feel ① from social media to change how I act or dress. But I remind myself that being real is more important than being popular. Through ②, I've found more confidence. I now know that being ③ doesn't mean being strange -it means being real. And with ④ and self-respect, I can grow into the person I want to be.

3 Read the following text then answer the questions:

Nearly everything we do in the modern world is controlled by computers. Computers are far more efficient than human beings and they have very good memories and can store huge amounts of information. In addition to that, computers can do calculations in a fraction of time and can do many of things we do, but faster and more accurately. That is why computers are widely used nowadays. Computers are used in many fields such as the field of health, arts and science.

In the field of health, we use them a lot in medicine nowadays. With the help of computers, doctors can keep patients' records on a computer and any information about the patient can be got quickly and easily, besides working out what is wrong with a patient or the best treatment to give him or her.

In the field of science, computers are widely used in science, maths, history and literature. You tell the computer which subject you are interested in and it supplies you with information in seconds.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The best title of the passage is
 a. The disadvantages of the computers
 b. computers are useless
 c. computers endanger the world
 d. the importance of the computers
2. Computers can store amounts of information.
 a. few b. little c. great d. a few

B. Answer the following questions

3. What does the underlined word "them" refer to?

4. Why are computers more efficient than human beings?

5. Summarize the second paragraph in one sentence.

6. Do you think computers will control the world one day ? Why / Why not?

4 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. People usually those who do something useful like scientists.
 a. hate b. dislike c. value d. lose
2. is failure to understand correctly.
 a. Understanding b. Success c. Misunderstanding d. Gaining
3. The machine is very This means it's very modern, developed, or complex; not basic.
 a. old b. traditional c. advanced d. ancient
4. We can form the adjective from the verb "help" by adding the suffix
 a. -ful b. -ence c. -ive d. -ed
5. The antonym of the adjective "disappointed" is
 a. frustrated b. upset c. hopeful d. helpful
6. When we add the suffix "-ive" to the word create, it turns into a / an
 a. adjective b. adverb c. noun d. verb

1950

- 6** Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

This image shows a single sheet of white paper with horizontal ruling lines. The lines are evenly spaced and run across the width of the page. There are no margins, text, or other markings on the paper.

Test 8

1 Finish the following dialogue:

"Ola is talking with her friend, Jana, about their hobbies".

Ola : Hi Jana. How do you like to spend your time?

Jana : Hi Ola ①

Ola : ②?

Jana : Because reading gives me a lot of information. What about you?

Ola : ③

Jana : ④?

Ola : I like to travel to cities at the sea or villages with green places.

Jana : I hope we can travel together one day.

Ola : ⑤

Jana : See you tomorrow at school.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

curiosity - improve - stylish - designers - view - safety

I want to be a designer one day. Great designers don't just draw pictures or make ① objects, they explore ideas from different points of ② and test simple models called prototypes. Creativity, listening, and ③ are important skills in design. ④ think about the function of things and how people interact with them.

3 Read the following text then answer the questions:

How old will you be in 2030? Do you think life will be different then? Do you think you will have the skills that help you to face life challenges? To be ready for the future, you have to improve your skills like computing skills, problem solving communication and self-learning.

You should be ready physically for work and life by eating healthy food, doing exercises and having enough sleep at night. Your body needs food, exercise and sleep. It is also necessary to be ready by working hard to succeed and get the knowledge which helps you to enjoy your life. It is also necessary to be open to different cultures

and accept different points of view. They might be better than your own opinion. A successful person should be flexible. In addition, technology controls our life. That is why we should improve our technical skills. Once you have improved all these skills, you will be prepared for future jobs as well as future life.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A successful person has to be
 a. physically strong b. hardworking
 c. flexible d. all of them
2. will help you to enjoy your life..
 a. Knowledge b. Challenges c. Competitions d. Contests

B. Answer the following questions

3. What does the underlined word "they" refer it?

.....

4. What does your body need to be ready for life and work?

.....

5. What skills do you think are needed for future jobs?

.....

6. Why should you improve your technical skills?

.....

4 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. is learning more about who you are.
 a. Selfish b. Self-discovery c. Self-care d. Self-invent
2. A is a strong connection between people.
 a. band b. pond c. round d. bond
3. is the point where something stops or cannot go further
 a. Limit b. Trash c. Blame d. Leader
4. To is to keep things equal or in the right amount.
 a. change b. balance c. care d. connect
5. The word "cutting-edge" is similar in meaning to.....
 a. old b. ancient c. advanced d. traditional
6. The synonym for the word "unsure" is
 a. particular b. certain c. true d. puzzled

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

7. If he had driven carefully, he _____ (avoid) the accident.
8. The exam papers _____ (will check) by the teacher
9. You shouldn't _____ (making) noise.
10. Don't _____ (being) afraid of cats they are cute.
11. Sara said that she _____ (will visit) her grandmother the next day.

6 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A good leader"

[illegible]

Test 9

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Soha and Sama are chatting about a program shown on TV.

Soha : Did you watch last Friday program about space travel?

Sama : ①

Soha : ②?

Sama : Because I have no interest in space travel.

Soha : ③?

Sama : I am interested in sports.

Soha : Which sport do you like best?

Sama : ④

Soha : Where do you practice it?

Sama : ⑤

2 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

physically - powerful - mentally - aware - entertain - shape

Stories spark our imagination and make learning more enjoyable. We often remember lessons better when they are part of a story. That's why many of us love reading stories—they ① us, teach us important life skills, and help us grow ② and emotionally. In the end, reading stories is not just fun; it's also a ③ way to become wiser and more ④ of the world. ourselves.

3 Read the following text then answer the questions:

Reading is my hobby. I read storybooks, magazines and newspapers. This hobby started when I was a little boy. My parents used to read fairy tales and other stories to me. I started reading with simple ABC books. Soon I could read simple fairy tales and other stories. Reading enables me to learn about so many things that I would not know before. I learned about how people lived in olden days of magic and mystery. I learned about the world, space travel, human achievements, gigantic whales, tiny viruses and other fascinating things about our world.

The wonderful thing about reading is that I do not have to learn things the hard way. For example, I do not have to go deep into the jungle to learn about the tiger. I can read all about it in a book. Books provide the reader with so much information and facts. They have certainly helped me in my daily life. It is indeed a good hobby.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. To know about dangerous animals without having to go to a jungle, you can
 a. read about them in a book or on the internet
 b. go there to see them yourself
 c. write as many books as you can about them
 d. tell your family and friends about them
2. Reading is an interesting In addition to helping the person to know many things.
 a. problem b. invention c. hobby d. game

B. Answer the following questions

3. What does the underlined word olden mean?

4. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?

5. Summarize the first paragraph of the passage.

6. How can we benefit from reading to plan for our future life?

4 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. My friend is from Japan, so I'm learning a lot about their
 a. timer b. history c. screen d. report
2. To get the adjective form the noun "success", we add the suffix
 a. -ly b. -ful c. -ing d. -ed
3. To be means giving help or encouragement.
 a. discourage b. afraid c. supportive d. ancient
4. A/An is a person who knows a lot about something.
 a. experiment b. experience c. expert d. exhibit
5. The app is useful for learning or work. The antonym of useful is
 a. helpful b. helpless c. aware d. good
6. My solution is different from yours. The synonym of solution is
 a. problem b. answer c. comfort d. question

Test 10

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Ahmed and Ali are talking about their favorite hobbies.

Ahmed : What do you do in your free time, Ali?

Ali : I often read.

Ahmed : Wonderful ①

Ali : I love reading short stories, ②

Ahmed : I have only one hobby, ③

Ali : Fishing ! Oh good for you . I may give it a try sometimes.

Ahmed : ④

Ali : OK. I will wait for your call.

Ahmed : ⑤

2 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

curiosity - surgery - medicine - worth - disease - surgeon

Dr. Magdi Yacoub was born in Egypt in 1935. When he was young, he enjoyed reading about science and ① When his father's sister died from heart ② His search for answers led him to become a heart ③ By following his ④ Magdi discovered his true purpose: to save lives. His story shows that sometimes our goal comes from a question or a problem we want to solve.

3 Read the following text then answer the questions:

My name is Tarek. I do well in school, and people think I am smart because of it. But it's not true. In fact, three years ago, I had some hard time in school. I used to watch video games and wasted most of my time playing and chatting with my friends. However, I decided to get serious about school and made a few changes. First, I decided I would become interested in whatever I learn. Then I started to work hard every day and never **forgot** any of my school work. I said to myself I would never, never be a loser. Finally, I made school more important than my friends and fun. After making these changes, I became an active student in classroom discussions. Then my test scores began to be higher. I still remember the first time that someone tried

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- B. Answer the following questions**

- 4** Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

- 105

1.

-

"People respect the honest"

106

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Jana is talking with her Mom about robots.

Mom : What are you reading?

Jana : ①

Mom : Robots! ②

Jana : A robot is a machine that can move and do tasks.

Mom : Do you think robots can do all human work?

Jana : ③

Mom : That's interesting!

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

road - respond - way - challenges - minds

Reading stories can greatly improve the ① we think and understand. Through stories, we enter the ② of different characters, face their ③ and see how they ④ to difficult situations.

3 Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

We live in the age of the computer. Computers are used in all fields of life. They are used in scientific and practical fields to give exact, quick results for operations that used to take a long time to be done.

Beginning with your electronic watch and your personal calculator and ending with the rockets, life has become much easier than before. These inventions help us live a comfortable life and make our houses and cities better places to live in. What's more, travelling from one place to another has become enjoyable and comfortable.

The radio, the television and the internet have connected the world and made it a small village. Modern inventions save time, effort and money to make life easier, more comfortable and enjoyable. No one knows what may happen afterwards.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why are computers useful?

.....

2. How has the world become a small village?

.....

3. How has travelling from one place to another changed?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Computers are _____ used in modern life.

- a. rarely b. not c. no longer d. widely

5. Life has become much easier than before because of using _____

- a. modern inventions b. many fields c. operations d. practical fields

4 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. Different kinds or types; many and not the same means _____

- a. similar b. same c. like d. various

2. She has always been _____ about technology. She always wants to learn more.

- a. frustrated b. curious c. disappointed d. confusing

3. His _____ helped him overcome many difficulties.

- a. distraction b. strength c. emotion d. donation

4. His _____ grew after he scored three goals in the final match.

- a. confidence b. sadness c. kindness d. stress

5. I _____ hard work. It shapes our future.

- a. vein b. vain c. value d. hate

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. We _____ (lived) in Cairo since 2005.

2. The project _____ (deleted) tomorrow.

3. She _____ (told) she was ill.

4. If we had studied, we _____ (can) have passed our exams.

5. The book _____ (write) yet.

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Short story you read"

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Hala is talking to Abeer about an interesting book.

Abeer : Hello, Hala. What are you doing?

Hala : ①

Abeer : ② ?

Hala : It is called Artificial Intelligence.

Abeer : Is it interesting?

Hala : ③

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

habit - learning - tasks- healthcare - self-discovery - self-driving

Artificial Intelligence is transforming our world, offering incredible benefits across many fields. Today, AI powers ①, such as diagnosing diseases; education, such as personalized ②; and business, such as automating ③ It enhances transportation with ④ cars and improves customer service. It also reduces human errors.

3 Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

Ali's father is a poor, clever fisherman who lives with his family in a simple house by the sea. Ali always goes fishing with his father. Once, he took their small boat and decided to go fishing by himself as his father was ill. Ali spent all the day at sea but he couldn't catch any fish. He began to feel sad and disappointed. However, he finally took off his clothes to have a swim and return home. Unfortunately, his small wallet fell into water with all his money in it. Ali jumped quickly into water to look for his wallet but he couldn't find it. Instead, he could catch a huge fish. He carried it on his boat and went home. His father was happy with him, but Ali was still sad. Ali's mother started to cut the fish to make food for the family. Suddenly, she found her son's wallet inside the fish. She happily called her son and told him that the fish brought the wallet back for him.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why did Ali go fishing alone?

.....

2. When did Ali begin to feel sad and disappointed?

3. Do you think the story ended happily? why?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Before returning home, Ali lost his

- a. boat b. wallet c. clothes d. shoes

5. Ali's father isn't a fisherman.

- a. poor b. clever c. good d. rich

4 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. So much homework usually makes students feel

- a. stressed b. relaxed c. happy d. excited

2. The visitors have

- a. just been left b. left just been
c. just been left d. been just left

3. Showing care and regard for others means you are

- a. respectful b. bored c. confused d. funny

4. If I studied hard, I'd have passed the exam

- a. have b. had c. was d. will

5. are jobs or actions that need to be done.

- a. Asks b. Conflicts c. Tasks d. Streams

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Abdulrahman said his father would buy a bike for (his).

2. I (studied) English since I was six.

3. If she had left early, she (will) have catch the train

4. You (should) post photos without asking.

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"A robot teacher"

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Hossam is asking Ali about his father's job.

Hossam : What's your father's job, Ali?

Ali : ①

Hossam : ② ?

Ali : He works in a prep school.

Hossam : What does he teach?

Ali : ③

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

ignore - leaders - problem - focus - distractions - time

If we spend too much time scrolling or gaming, we lose energy and ① That's why managing screen ② is so important. Young people like us are the future engineers, designers, and ③ of Egypt. By building strong habits now - like turning off ④ and using technology for learning- we get ready to build a better country.

3 Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

Education is the most important thing in our life. First of all, education gives us the ability to read and write. It helps us to understand the world around us. If people are well educated, they can know their duties and rights quite well. With the help of education, we can develop new ways for a better life. A good education is extremely essential for everyone to learn and succeed in life. Everyone has the right to a good education to achieve their goals in life. Everyone has their own dreams of being somebody important in the community. Parents also dream that their kids will have good professions like doctors, engineers, officers, or any other important professions. They always have high hopes for their children. Education doesn't only offer a good job, but also helps to understand life through a different point of view. All our goals can be achieved through education. Education improves the quality of life.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to?

.....

2. How do parents like their kids to be?

3. Do you agree with the writer that Good education is important for everyone?
Why/ why not?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The passage is mainly about

- a. life b. education c. professions d. universe

5. Education gives us the ability to with others.

- a. dream b. know c. communicate d. understand

4 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. Please, your prototype.

- a. modify b. to modify c. modifying d. modifies

2. My friend said that they to the park that day.

- a. are going b. were going c. will go d. have gone

3. helps you overcome life's challenges.

- a. Weakness b. Laziness c. Fear d. Strength

4. are feelings like happiness, sadness, anger, or fear.

- a. Emotions b. Actions c. Questions d. Confused

5. means not easily distracted

- a. Ignored b. Distracted c. Focused d. Interested

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. You (shouldn't) use a strong password.

2. The museum (has visited) by many tourists.

3. Our essays will (return) next week.

4. A: Excuse me. I want to use your eraser. B: Of course, you (can't) use it.

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Artificial Intelligence"